



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



*Eduo T 918.69.148*



3 2044 097 054 886

HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY



THE ESSEX INSTITUTE  
TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION

GIFT OF  
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON  
OF NEW YORK

JANUARY 25, 1924

A

FIRST LATIN BOOK;

OR

PROGRESSIVE LESSONS

IN

READING AND WRITING LATIN.

BY E. A. ANDREWS, LL.D.

Ordinis haec virtus erit et venus, aut ego fallor,  
Ut jam nunc dicat jam nunc debentia dici,  
Pluraque differat, et praesens in tempus omittat.—*Hon.*

TWENTY-THIRD EDITION.

BOSTON:

PUBLISHED BY CROCKER AND BREWSTER,  
52 Washington Street.

1869.

*Eduo T 918.69. 148*

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
GIFT OF  
**GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON**  
**JANUARY 25, 1924**

---

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1848,  
BY CROCKER AND PREWSTER,  
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Massachusetts.

---

~~~~~  
Stereotyped by C. Davison & Co.,  
33 Gold street, N. Y.

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

---

In preparing this work for a new edition, no essential alteration has been made in its original plan, but every part has been carefully revised, and such additions have every where been made, as the perfecting of its plan seemed to require. The syntax, in particular, has been enlarged by the addition of such subordinate principles and special remarks, as appeared to be most necessary for the student in the commencement of his Latin course.

For the purpose of rendering the work more extensively useful, the derivation of the words in the Vocabulary has in most cases been given, and an Appendix has been added, containing a full account of Latin pronunciation, according to the usage in the English universities, and in most of the Colleges of this country. The student will also find in the Appendix a condensed view of the irregularities in the gender and genitive of nouns of the third declension, and also of the principal anomalies in the formation of particular cases in that declension.

The following extracts from the preface to the first edition will show the general plan of the work.

"The object of this book is, to connect the leading principles of the Latin language with exercises in reading and writing designed for their illustration. It is divided into lessons of convenient length, containing principles to be observed or forms to be imitated. To these are subjoined questions and exercises; the former to assist the student in preparing his lessons, the latter to show the practical application of such principles and forms, and to fix them more firmly in the memory.

"The lessons are arranged with careful reference to their natural order, and in such a manner as not to anticipate, in the earlier lessons, those subjects which belong to later parts of the work. Hence the forms of words are first exhibited, and their construction is subsequently explained.

"In the declension of nouns and adjectives, the principles of classification and comparison have been brought to aid the pupil's memory, and at the same time, to save no inconsiderable portion of the time usually

spent in the daily and hourly repetition of the paradigms. For this purpose, those cases in each number which are alike, have been classed together.

"The lessons on the formation of the nominative singular from the root, supply a defect in most Latin Grammars in common use, and present a concise view of a subject of considerable practical importance.

"The united declension of nouns and adjectives, as exemplified in the exercises under the latter, is another feature of the present work, of great importance in rendering the pupil practically familiar with the agreement of those parts of speech under all their variations of form and declension.

"In the conjugation of verbs also, the principles of classification and comparison have been regarded, in so arranging the tenses of each mood, that those parts which are derived from the same root should stand together: while by presenting under each tense a comparative view of the four conjugations, their resemblances and differences will be fixed indelibly in the memory. By means of this arrangement the pupil may in a few weeks acquire a more familiar acquaintance with the peculiar form of each of the conjugations and of the distinctions between them, than is usually obtained by years of study when the ordinary arrangement is observed.

"*Sum* is commonly the first verb to which the student of the Latin language is introduced, but on account of its irregularities, its early introduction tends to perplex his mind in regard to the regular forms of Latin verbs. To avoid this inconvenience, it is not exhibited in the present work, until the pupil has had opportunity to become familiar with the active voice of all the conjugations of regular verbs; after which he will more readily notice its irregularities and will have occasion to apply his knowledge of its forms to immediate use in conjugating the compound tenses of the passive voice.

"In treating of the roots of verbs, the author has deviated in two particulars from the view given of the same subject in the Grammar of Andrews and Stoddard. The first relates to the form of the third root, which is here made to end in *t*, but in the Grammar is considered as including the *u* which always follows it. The other deviation relates to the second and third roots of the second conjugation, which, in the Grammar, are said to end in *eri* and *etum*, but in this book terminate in *ei* and *itum*.

"In the definitions and rules contained in this book, the author has had in view the language used in the corresponding parts of Andrews' and Stoddard's Grammar. Of the general approbation with which those definitions and rules have been received, no better evidence is needed, than a knowledge of the extent to which they have been copied and imitated by subsequent writers. As the design of that work, however, was essentially different from the one proposed in the present volume, a corresponding change has often been made in the language of the smaller work. The principles however of both works, so far as they are developed in each, are essentially the same, and the arrangement of their topics is in general similar. Hence the student who begins with this volume, will feel no sensible embarrassment in ultimately searching the larger work for the various exceptions and modifications of rules and principles, which were necessarily omitted in this. In arranging the rules of construction in such a manner as to avoid anticipating topics not previously treated of, it has been found expedient, in a few in-

## PREFACE.

stances, to separate the rules relating to a particular case, by the inter-  
vention of rules relating to other cases; but such exceptions are few in  
number, and when once noticed will occasion no perplexity.

"The principal points in which this book is supposed to differ from  
most other elementary Latin works, consist in a more careful attention  
to accuracy in rules and definitions, and to the principles of comparison  
and classification; in greater clearness of method, in consequence of  
presenting each subject singly and in its natural order, and illustrating  
it independently of other subjects; in a more perfect development of  
the doctrine of roots in inflected words, and of the uses of that doctrine  
in simplifying the knowledge of the forms of words; and in a far more  
complete exhibition of the nature of sentences, of their modifications  
and connections, than is to be found in any other similar work upon  
this subject, excepting the Grammar of Andrews and Stoddard.

"The reading lessons at the close of this work consist partly of Fa-  
bles and of Anecdotes of illustrious men, and partly of the same selec-  
tion from the well-known Historia Sacra of Lhomond, which is contain-  
ed in the author's First Lessons. The latter is retained in the full be-  
lief, that it is better adapted to the taste and capacity of the younger  
classes in Latin, than any thing which could be found to occupy its place;  
while the purity of its language renders it a safe, as well as an agreeable  
introduction to more difficult compositions.

"In regard to the mode of using this book, the author has little to add  
to the suggestions contained in the body of the work. When the pupil  
is directed to write out an exercise, the teacher will of course decide  
whether this shall be done upon the black-board or slate in the presence  
of the class, or more deliberately at his desk. On reviewing a lesson,  
however, it is recommended that the exercise should be repeated from  
memory, and such inquiries made respecting it, as will satisfy the teach-  
er, that the lesson is well understood. It may be added, that a daily re-  
view of the lesson of the previous day can hardly be too highly recom-  
mended.

"As the author has aimed to exclude from this little work every sub-  
ject which is not, in his view, of fundamental importance, he may per-  
haps be allowed to urge upon the student the necessity of a thorough  
knowledge of each lesson in all its parts. If this suggestion is heeded,  
he may rest assured that when he shall lay aside this First Book he will  
find himself fully prepared, by an accurate acquaintance with the com-  
mon idioms of the language, to engage in the study of the more advanced  
works, by means of which his knowledge of the Latin tongue is to be  
perfected."

The author hopes that, in its present form, the work will be found not  
wholly unworthy of the general approbation so kindly bestowed upon the  
first edition, and especially that it will prove useful in advancing the  
cause of general education. In this country, and particularly in New  
England, the study of the Latin language is now pursued to some ex-  
tent by great and constantly increasing numbers of youth, both in pub-  
lic and in private schools, for the purpose of improvement in the know-  
ledge of general grammar, and of a better understanding of that portion of  
their native tongue, which is derived from that language. In the origi-

nal composition of this work, as well as in its recent revision, the author has aimed to supply such a book as should be suited to the wants of this class—a book which, while it should serve as an introduction to the study of the classics, should be specially adapted to the purposes of general education.

For the accommodation of those who may wish to extend their reading beyond the few pages appended to these lessons, an edition of the Latin Reader will soon be prepared with the usual references, at the foot of the pages, to the larger Grammar, and with references, at the end of the book, to the lessons in this volume. Should it appear to be expedient, similar notes may also be added, at some future time, to the author's *Viri Romæ*.

E. A. A.

NEW BRITAIN, (CONN.), October, 1848.

## C O N T E N T S.

| Less.                                                                                                               | Page | Less.                                                                      | Page |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1. Letters.—Marks of Quantity.—<br>Accents . . . . .                                                                | 9    | 32. Adj.—1st & 2d Decl.—In <i>us</i> & <i>er</i> ,<br>gen. <i>ius</i> , 50 |      |
| 2. Pronunciation of Latin, . . . . .                                                                                | 10   | 33. " " <i>duo</i> and <i>ambo</i> , . . . . .                             | 51   |
| 3. General Rules of Quantity, . . . . .                                                                             | 12   | 34. Adj.—3d Decl.—3 Terminations, . . . . .                                | 52   |
| 4. Parts of Speech.—Inflection, . . . . .                                                                           | 13   | 35. " " 2 Terminations, . . . . .                                          | 53   |
| 5. Nouns.—Gender.—Number, . . . . .                                                                                 | 13   | 36. " " Comparatives, . . . . .                                            | 54   |
| 6. Cases.—Persons, . . . . .                                                                                        | 15   | 37. " " 1 Termination, . . . . .                                           | 55   |
| 7. Declensions, how distinguished, . . . . .                                                                        | 17   | 38. " Numeral, . . . . .                                                   | 57   |
| 8. 1st. Declension.—Greek Nouns, . . . . .                                                                          | 18   | 39. " Comparison of, . . . . .                                             | 58   |
| 9. 2d Dec.—Nouns in <i>us</i> , . . . . .                                                                           | 20   | 40. " Irregular Comparison, . . . . .                                      | 59   |
| 10. " " Nouns in <i>er</i> , . . . . .                                                                              | 21   | 41. Pronouns.— <i>Ego</i> , <i>tu</i> , and <i>sus</i> , . . . . .         | 60   |
| 11. " " Nouns in <i>um</i> .—Greek<br>Nouns, . . . . .                                                              | 23   | 42. " Adjective.— <i>hic</i> , . . . . .                                   | 61   |
| 12. 3d Dec.—Masc.—Nouns in <i>a</i><br>and <i>r</i> , . . . . .                                                     | 25   | 43. " " <i>ille</i> , <i>iste</i> , and <i>ipse</i> , . . . . .            | 63   |
| 13. " " Nouns in <i>e</i> and<br><i>os</i> , . . . . .                                                              | 26   | 44. " " <i>is</i> and <i>idem</i> , . . . . .                              | 64   |
| 14. " " Increasing nouns<br>in <i>es</i> , <i>is</i> and <i>es</i> , . . . . .                                      | 27   | 45. " " <i>qui</i> and <i>quis</i> , . . . . .                             | 65   |
| 15. " " Fem.—Nouns in <i>es</i> and<br><i>is</i> not increasing,<br>and in <i>do</i> ,<br>and <i>go</i> , . . . . . | 29   | 46. Verbs.—their various kinds,<br>Number, Particles, &c., . . . . .       | 66   |
| 16. " " Nouns in <i>as</i> &<br><i>us</i> , . . . . .                                                               | 30   | 47. " Moods, Tenses, Person,<br>Number, Particles, &c., . . . . .          | 68   |
| 17. " " Nouns in <i>s</i> im-<br>pure, <i>x</i> , & <i>ye</i> , . . . . .                                           | 31   | 48. " Conjugation distinguished<br>ed.—Roots, . . . . .                    | 69   |
| 18. " Neut.—Nouns in <i>men</i><br>and <i>us</i> , . . . . .                                                        | 33   | 49. Formation of 2d and 3d Roots, . . . . .                                | 71   |
| 19. " " Nouns in <i>t</i> , <i>a</i> —<br><i>iter</i> , <i>c</i> and <i>y</i> , . . . . .                           | 34   | 50. Construction and Position of<br>Words, . . . . .                       | 72   |
| 20. " " Nouns in <i>e</i> , <i>al</i> ,<br>and <i>or</i> , . . . . .                                                | 35   | 51. Principal Parts of a Verb, . . . . .                                   | 73   |
| 21. " Irregular Nouns, . . . . .                                                                                    | 36   | 52. Act. Voice.—Indic. Mood, 1st<br>Root, . . . . .                        | 74   |
| 22. " Formation of the Nom.<br>Sing. Rule I. . . . .                                                                | 37   | 53. " " Forms of<br>Sentences, . . . . .                                   | 76   |
| 23. " " Rule II. . . . .                                                                                            | 38   | 54. " " 2d Root, . . . . .                                                 | 77   |
| 24. " Exceptions in Declen-<br>sion, . . . . .                                                                      | 39   | 55. " " Sentences, . . . . .                                               | 79   |
| 25. 4th Declension, . . . . .                                                                                       | 40   | 56. " Subj. Mood, 1st Root, . . . . .                                      | 79   |
| 26. " Exceptions.— <i>Domas</i> , . . . . .                                                                         | 41   | 57. " " Sentences, . . . . .                                               | 81   |
| 27. 5th Dec.—Compound Nouns,<br>1st Comparative View of the<br>Declensions, . . . . .                               | 42   | 58. " " 2d Root, . . . . .                                                 | 82   |
| 28. Adjectives, . . . . .                                                                                           | 46   | 59. " " Sentences, . . . . .                                               | 83   |
| 29. " 1st & 2d Decl.—In <i>us</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , . . . . .                                                | 47   | 60. " Imper. and Infin. Moods, . . . . .                                   | 84   |
| 30. " " in <i>er</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>am</i> , . . . . .                                                             | 48   | 61. " Particles, Gerunds,<br>and Supines, . . . . .                        | 84   |
| 31. " " syncopated, in <i>er</i> , <i>a</i> ,<br><i>um</i> , . . . . .                                              | 49   | 62. <i>Sicut</i> ,—Indic. Mood, 1st Root, . . . . .                        | 85   |
|                                                                                                                     | 73   | 63. " " 2d Root, . . . . .                                                 | 87   |
|                                                                                                                     | 63   | 64. " Subj., Imper., Infin., &c., . . . . .                                | 88   |
|                                                                                                                     | 69   | 65. Pass. Voice.—Principal Parts, . . . . .                                | 90   |
|                                                                                                                     | 70   | 66. " Indic. Mood, 1st Root, . . . . .                                     | 91   |
|                                                                                                                     | 71   | 67. " " Sentences, . . . . .                                               | 92   |
|                                                                                                                     | 72   | 68. " " 3d Root, . . . . .                                                 | 93   |
|                                                                                                                     | 73   | 69. " " Sentences, . . . . .                                               | 94   |
|                                                                                                                     |      | 70. " Subj. Mood, 1st Root, . . . . .                                      | 95   |
|                                                                                                                     |      | 71. " " Sentences, . . . . .                                               | 96   |
|                                                                                                                     |      | 72. " " 3d Root, . . . . .                                                 | 97   |
|                                                                                                                     |      | 73. " " Sentences, . . . . .                                               | 98   |

## CONTENTS.

| Less.                                                       | Page | Less.                                           | Page |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------|-------------------------------------------------|------|
| 74. Passive Voice,—Imper. and Infinitive Moods, &c. . . . . | 99   | 118. Abl. of Price and Time, . . . . .          | 154  |
| 75. Deponent and Irregular Verbs, . . . . .                 | 100  | 119. Construction of Comparatives, . . . . .    | 155  |
| 76. <i>Possum</i> , Conjugated, . . . . .                   | 101  | 120. Ablative Absolute, . . . . .               | 157  |
| 77. <i>Volo, nolo, and malo</i> , “ . . . . .               | 102  | 121. Participles, . . . . .                     | 158  |
| 78. <i>Fero</i> , “ . . . . .                               | 103  | 122. “ Translation of, . . . . .                | 160  |
| 79. <i>Flo</i> , “ . . . . .                                | 104  | 123. Gerunds and Supines, . . . . .             | 162  |
| 80. <i>Eo</i> , “ . . . . .                                 | 105  | 125. Direct Questions, . . . . .                | 165  |
| 81. Defective and Imperf. Verbs, . . . . .                  | 106  | 126. Imper. and Subj. for Imper., . . . . .     | 166  |
| 82. Particles, defined, . . . . .                           | 108  | 127. Direct and Indirect Quotation, . . . . .   | 167  |
| 83. Sentences.—Subject.—Predicate, . . . . .                | 109  | 128. Subj. in Indirect Allusions, . . . . .     | 169  |
| 84. Grammatical Subj. and Pred., . . . . .                  | 110  | 129. “ in Indirect Questions, . . . . .         | 170  |
| 85. Logical “ . . . . .                                     | 111  | 130. Double Questions, . . . . .                | 172  |
| 86. Simple and Compound “ . . . . .                         | 111  | 131. Subj., Condition and Conclusion, . . . . . | 172  |
| 87. Rules for Analysis and Parsing, . . . . .               | 112  | 132. “ with Adverbs of Time, . . . . .          | 174  |
| 88. Construction of Adverbs and Conjunctions, . . . . .     | 113  | 133. “ Purpose, Object, and Result, . . . . .   | 174  |
| 89. Apposition, . . . . .                                   | 114  | 134. “ Result or Consequence, . . . . .         | 176  |
| 90. Subject-Nominative, . . . . .                           | 115  | 135. “ Connection of Tenses, . . . . .          | 177  |
| 91. Construction of Adjectives, . . . . .                   | 117  |                                                 |      |
| 92. Predicate-Nominative, . . . . .                         | 120  |                                                 |      |
| 93. Compound Sentences, . . . . .                           | 122  |                                                 |      |
| 94. Relatives, . . . . .                                    | 123  |                                                 |      |
| 95. Infinitive Mood, . . . . .                              | 125  |                                                 |      |
| 96. Acc. after Active Verbs, . . . . .                      | 127  |                                                 |      |
| 97. “ after Prepositions, . . . . .                         | 129  |                                                 |      |
| 98. “ of Time and Space, . . . . .                          | 131  |                                                 |      |
| 99. Abl. after Prepositions, . . . . .                      | 132  |                                                 |      |
| 100. Gen. after Nouns, . . . . .                            | 133  |                                                 |      |
| 101. “ or Abl. of Quality, . . . . .                        | 135  |                                                 |      |
| 102. “ with <i>Sum</i> , . . . . .                          | 137  |                                                 |      |
| 103. “ after Partitives, . . . . .                          | 137  |                                                 |      |
| 104. “ after Adjectives, . . . . .                          | 139  |                                                 |      |
| 105. “ after Verbs, . . . . .                               | 140  |                                                 |      |
| 106. “ “ . . . . .                                          | 141  |                                                 |      |
| 107. “ “ . . . . .                                          | 142  |                                                 |      |
| 108. “ Acc. and Abl. of Place, . . . . .                    | 143  |                                                 |      |
| 109. Dative, . . . . .                                      | 144  |                                                 |      |
| 110. “ without <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> , . . . . .          | 145  |                                                 |      |
| 111. “ “ . . . . .                                          | 146  |                                                 |      |
| 112. “ “ . . . . .                                          | 147  |                                                 |      |
| 113. “ with <i>Est</i> , . . . . .                          | 148  |                                                 |      |
| 114. Two Datives, . . . . .                                 | 149  |                                                 |      |
| 115. Vocative, . . . . .                                    | 150  |                                                 |      |
| 116. Abl. after Nouns, Adjectives, &c., . . . . .           | 151  |                                                 |      |
| 117. “ of cause, manner, &c. . . . .                        | 153  |                                                 |      |

## APPENDIX.

|                                                           |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| A. Division of Words into Syllables, . . . . .            | 179 |
| B. 3d Dec.—Masc.—Exceptions in Gender, . . . . .          | 180 |
| C. “ “ “ “ in Declension, . . . . .                       | 181 |
| D. “ Fem.—Exceptions in Gender, . . . . .                 | 181 |
| E. “ “ “ “ in Declension, . . . . .                       | 182 |
| F. “ Neut.—Exceptions in Gender and Declension, . . . . . | 183 |
| G. “ Remarks on the Gen., Acc., and Voc. Sing., . . . . . | 183 |
| H. “ Remarks on the Abl. Sing., . . . . .                 | 184 |
| I. Remarks on the Plural Cases, . . . . .                 | 185 |
| J. Irregular Nouns, . . . . .                             | 186 |
| K. Derivation of Nouns and Adjectives, . . . . .          | 187 |
| Life of Joseph, . . . . .                                 | 188 |
| Fables, . . . . .                                         | 206 |
| Anecdotes, . . . . .                                      | 206 |
| Vocabulary, . . . . .                                     | 206 |

## LESSON 1.

## LETTERS.

1. Letters are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*.
  2. *A, e, i, o, u*, and *y*, are *vowels*.
  3. Of the consonants, *l, m, n*, and *r*, are *liquids*.
  4. *X* and *z* are double consonants: *x* stands for *cs* or *gs*, and *z* for *ds* or *ts*.
  5. The other consonants, except *h* and *s*, are called *mutes*.
  6. *W* is not found in Latin words, and *k* is seldom used.
  7. A *diphthong* consists of two successive vowels in the same syllable; as, *ai* in *hair*, *æ* in *Cæsar*.
  8. Three } diphthongs begin with { *a*, *e*, *o*, viz. { *æ, ai, au*.  
Two } { *e*, *eu*.  
Two } { *o*, *oo*. { *ɛ, oi*.

NOTE 1.—If the first vowel is *u*, the two vowels, though forming but one syllable, are not here considered as a diphthong, *aa, qui, lingua, suadeo*.

9. A *dieresis* ( .. ) consists of two points placed over the latter of two vowels, which might otherwise form a diphthong, to denote that they are to be separated in pronunciation; as, *oe* in *coercé*.

**NOTE 2.**—In Latin the *dieresis* is seldom used, except with *ae*, *ai*, and *oe*, whenever they do not form diphthongs.

## **MARKS OF QUANTITY.**

10. A short vowel is marked by a curved line; as *i* in *dom-i-nus*, a lord.
  11. A long vowel is marked by a horizontal line; as *o* in *ser-mō-nes*, speeches.
  12. A common or doubtful vowel has both marks united; as, *u* in *vol-ū-cres*, birds, which is sometimes long and sometimes short.

## AGENTS.

13. The acute accent (' ) marks the syllable on which the stress of voice is laid; as, *reg'-num*, a kingdom.

14. The grave accent (`) distinguishes certain particles from other words spelled in the same manner; as, *quòd*, because, from *quod*, which.

15. The *circumflex* accent (‘), composed of the acute and the grave, denotes a contraction, and the syllable over which it stands is long; as, *num’-mùm* for *num-mó-rum*.

**QUESTIONS.**—How are letters divided? Which are vowels? Which of the consonants are called liquids? Which, double consonants? For what does *s* stand? For what does *z* stand? What are the other consonants called? What English letter is not found in Latin? What is a diphthong? Repeat the table of diphthongs. What is said of two vowels in the same syllable, the first of which is *u*? What is a diaeresis? What is its use? How is a short vowel marked?—a long vowel?—a common or doubtful vowel? What is the use of the acute accent?—of the grave?—of the circumflex?

## **EXERCISE.**

Write five English words containing diphthongs, and five having successive vowels which are not diphthongs. Write ten English words of more than one syllable, and mark the accented syllable of each with the acute accent.

## LESSON 2.

## PRONUNCIATION.

1. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels and diphthongs.

**NOTE.**—Rules for the division of words into syllables may be found in the Appendix, Lesson A.

3. The *penult* of a word is the last syllable but one; the *antepenult* is the last syllable but two.

**REMARK 1.**—Accent is a particular stress of voice on certain syllables of words.

**REMARK 2.**—Words of two or three syllables have but one accent. Words of more than three syllables have two or more accents.

4. The penult of dissyllables is accented; as, *pa'-ter*, a father.

5. (a) The penult of polysyllables, if long, is accented; if short, the accent is on the antepenult; as, *ser-mō'-nes*, speeches; *dom'-i-nus*, a lord.

(b) If the penult of a polysyllable is common, the accent in prose is on the antepenult; as, *me-di'-ð-cres*.

**EXCEPTION.**—When the penult of a genitive in *ius* is common, the *i* is accented in prose; as, *u-ni'-us*.

**NOTE.**—Letters, when similarly situated, have in general the same sound in Latin as in English words.—But:—

6. *A* at the end of unaccented syllables is pronounced *ah*; as, *mu'-sa*, (pronounced *mu'-zah*.)

7. *Ch* is pronounced like *k*; as, *Chi'-os*, (pronounced *Ki'-os*.)

8. *C* sounds like *s*, and *g* like *j*, before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, and *œ*; as, *cen'-tum*, a hundred; *ci'-bus*, food; *cæ'-lum*, heaven; *gens*, a nation; *ag'-i-lis*, active.

9. *Es*, at the end of a word, is pronounced like the English word *ease*; as, *ru'-pes*, a rock.

10. *Os*, at the end of plural cases, is pronounced like *ose* in *dose*; as, *nos*, we; *il'-los*, them.

**QUESTIONS.**—How many syllables has every Latin word? What is a monosyllable?—a disyllable?—a polysyllable? What is the penult of a word?—the antepenult? What is the rule for accenting dissyllables?—polysyllables, if the penult is long?—if short?—if common? What words are exceptions? Where is *a* pronounced *ah*? How is *ch* pronounced? What is the rule for pronouncing *c* and *g*? How is *es* at the end of a word pronounced? How is *os* pronounced at the end of plural cases?

#### EXERCISE.

How many syllables has *animus*?—*numerus*?—*opus*?—*respublica*?—*monebamini*?—*Cesar*?—*memoria*?—*Eurōpa*?—*conventio*?—*biduum*?—*spectaculum*?—*aliquis*? L. I. Note.

**DIRECTIONS.**—The teacher will ask, Why has *animus* three syllables? Answer. Because it has three separate vowels, *a*, *i*, and *u*, and “Every Latin word has as many syllables,” &c. (repeating L. 2. 1.) The same question can be asked respecting each word, and whenever, in the following lessons, an answer is given to any question, its correctness should be proved by quoting some definition, rule, or principle.

Mark the accent on the following words, and in answer to the

question, Why is that syllable accented? repeat L. 2, 4, or 5.—*ca-nis, fe-liz, ten-ē-ri, bo-nō-rum, dif-fic-i-lis, mil-i-tes, mon-e-đd-mur.*

Pronounce the following words according to rules 6-10, viz., *bo-na, mach'-i-na, ge'-ner, a'-ger, ci'-nis, a-mi'-cus, a-mi'-ci, fa'-ci-o, dom'-i-nos, ser-mō'-nes.*

Write ten English monosyllables, ten dissyllables, and ten polysyllables.

---

## LESSON 3.

### GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

1. A vowel before another vowel or *h*, is short; as, *e*, in *mo'-nē-o*, I advise; *a*, in *ex'-trā-ho*, I draw out.

2. A diphthong is long; as, *au*, in *in-caū'-tus*, incautious.

•3. A vowel before two consonants, a double consonant, or *j*, is long; as, *i*, in *sa-git'-ta*, an arrow; *a*, in *māx'-i-mus*, greatest; *e*, in *pē-jor*, worse.

NOTE 1.—A vowel has its short *sound* when followed by a consonant in the same syllable, although its *quantity* be long.

4. A vowel before a mute followed by a liquid is, for the most part, common, that is, sometimes long and sometimes short; as, *a*, in *pd-tres*, fathers.

NOTE 2.—In this book, the quantity of the penult, in words of more than two syllables, is marked, unless it can be determined to be long or short by one of the preceding rules.

QUESTIONS.—What is the first general rule of quantity?—the second?—the third?—the fourth? What is the *sound* of a vowel, when followed by a consonant in the same syllable? What is a common vowel? In what words is the quantity of the penult marked in this book?

### EXERCISE.

1. Mark the quantity of the penult in the following words, according to the preceding rules, making use of the marks of quantity described in Lesson 1.

|            |              |              |             |
|------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|
| Pen-na,    | al-te-ri-us, | di-ver-sus,  | ax-is,      |
| tu-us,     | vic-to-ri-a, | the-sau-rus, | mo-lea-tus, |
| vir-tus,   | in-cen-dit,  | ma-jor,      | ga-za,      |
| di-es,     | cäu-sa,      | phar-e-tra,  | vol-u-crea, |
| a-cris,    | an-cil-la,   | lin-gua,     | me-li-ór,   |
| posi-quam, | pug-nan-dum, | cœ-no,       | con-jux.    |

2. Give the general rule for the quantity of the penult of *penna*,—of *tuus*,—of *virtus*, &c.
- 

## LESSON 4.

### PARTS OF SPEECH.

1. In Latin there are eight parts of speech, viz., *Substantive or Noun*, *Adjective*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Conjunction*, and *Interjection*.

**REMARK.**—Verbs include *Participles*, *Gerunds*, and *Supines*.

**NOTE 1.**—The Latin Language has no words corresponding to the English articles *a* and *the*.

### INFLECTION.

2. Inflection is a change in the termination of a word; as, *book*, *books*; *great*, *greater*; *have*, *has*.

3. Inflection is of three kinds—*declension*, *conjugation*, and *comparison*.

4. Nouns, pronouns, adjectives, participles, gerunds, and supines, are *declined*.

5. Verbs are *conjugated*.

6. Adjectives and adverbs are *compared*.

**NOTE 2.**—Adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections, are sometimes called *Particles*.

**QUESTIONS.**—How many parts of speech are there in Latin? Name them. What do verbs include? What English words cannot be translated into Latin? What is inflection in grammar? How many and what kinds of inflection are there? What classes of words are declined? What are conjugated? What are compared? What parts of speech are sometimes called particles?

---

## LESSON 5.

### NOUNS.

1. A noun is the name of an object.  
2. A *proper noun* is the name of an individual object as, *Caesar*, *Rome*.

3. A *common* noun is the name of a class of objects, to each of which it is applicable ; as, *man*, *tree*.

4. A *collective* noun is one which, in the singular number, denotes a collection of individuals ; as, a *nation*, a *multitude*.

5. An *abstract* noun is the name of a quality, action, or other attribute ; as, *goodness*, *love*.

6. A *material* noun is the name of a substance considered in the gross ; as, *lignum*, wood ; *ferrum*, iron ; *cibus*, food.

**REMARK.**—Proper, abstract, and material nouns become common, when employed to denote one or more of a class of objects.

#### GENDER.

7. The gender of a noun is its distinction in regard to sex.

8. Nouns have three genders—the *masculine*, the *feminine*, and the *neuter*.

#### *General Rules of Gender.*

I. The names of all *male* beings, and of *rivers*, *winds*, and *months*, are masculine.

II. The names of all *female* beings, and of *countries*, *towns*, *islands*, *trees*, and *plants*, are feminine.

**NOTE 1.**—A general rule of gender, when applicable to any noun, is commonly to be regarded rather than a special rule.

**NOTE 2.**—When the gender of a noun cannot be determined by a general rule, it is ascertained by a special rule depending on its termination and declension.

**NOTE 3.**—A noun which denotes sometimes a male and sometimes a female being, is said to be of the *common* gender.

9. Nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine, are of the *neuter* gender.

**NOTE 4.**—Infinitives, clauses used substantively, and all indeclinable nouns, are of the neuter gender.

10. Adjectives, pronouns, and participles have likewise three genders.

## NUMBERS.

11. Number, in nouns, is the form by which they denote whether one object is meant, or more than one.

12. Latin nouns have two numbers—the *singular* and the *plural*.

13. The singular number denotes one object; as, *ma'-ter*, a mother.

14. The plural number denotes more than one object; as, *ma'-tres*, mothers.

15. Adjectives, pronouns, verbs, and participles have likewise two numbers.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is a noun?—a proper noun?—a common noun?—a collective noun?—an abstract noun?—a material noun? When do proper, abstract and material nouns become common? What is the gender of a noun? How many genders have nouns? What are they called? What is the general rule for masculine nouns?—for feminines? When general and special rules of gender are inconsistent with each other, which is commonly to be regarded? How is the gender of a noun ascertained when it is not determined by a general rule? What nouns are said to be of the common gender?—of the neuter gender? What classes of words are always neuter? What other classes of words have the distinction of gender? What is number in nouns? How many numbers have Latin nouns? What are they called? What does the singular number denote?—the plural? What other classes of words have likewise two numbers?

## EXERCISE.

Write in English five proper nouns, five common nouns not collective, five collective, five abstract, and five material nouns.

**DIRECTIONS.**—The teacher will inquire in regard to each word so written; 1st. Why is it a noun? 2d. Why is it a proper, common, &c., noun?

Give the general rule for the gender of each of the following nouns:—

|                              |                                  |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Ho-mē'-rus, <i>Homer.</i>    | Tib'-ē-rius, <i>the Tiber.</i>   |
| Hel'-ē-na, <i>Helen.</i>     | Æ-gyp'-tus, <i>Egypt.</i>        |
| Ma'-ter, <i>a mother.</i>    | Ro'-ma, <i>Rome.</i>             |
| Pi'-rus, <i>a pear-tree.</i> | Aus'-ter, <i>the south-wind.</i> |
| A-pril'-lis, <i>April.</i>   | Nar-dus, <i>spikenard.</i>       |
| His-pa'-ni-a, <i>Spain.</i>  | Rho'-dus, <i>Rhodes.</i>         |

## LESSON 6.

## CASES.

1. Cases are those terminations of nouns, which denote their relations to other words.

2. Latin nouns have six cases—*nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, and ablative.*

3. The nominative denotes the *subject* of a finite verb ; as, *I write, John* is reading.

4. The Latin genitive denotes *origin, possession, and many other relations expressed in English by of, or the possessive case* ; as, the life of *Cæsar*, or *Cæsar's* life.

5. The dative denotes the relations expressed in English by *to* and *for* ; as, He gave the book *to John*.

**Note 1.**—*To* after a verb of *motion*, is expressed in Latin by a preposition with the accusative.

6. The accusative follows active verbs and certain prepositions, or is the subject of an infinitive.

7. The vocative is the case used in addressing a person ; as, *amice, friend.*

8. The ablative denotes *privation, and the relations expressed in English by with, from, in, by, and some other prepositions.*

**Note 2.**—Adjectives, pronouns, and participles, have likewise six cases, gerunds have four, and supines have two.

**Note 3.**—All the cases, except the nominative, are called *oblique cases.*

#### PERSONS.

9. The person of a noun is the place in the discourse assigned to the object which the noun represents.

10. Nouns and pronouns have three persons. They are of the *first person* when they denote the person *speaking* ; of the *second*, when they denote the person *spoken to* ; and of the *third*, when they denote the person or thing *spoken of*.

11. The cases of Latin nouns may be thus expressed in English :—

|             | <i>Singular.</i>               |             | <i>Plural.</i>               |
|-------------|--------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | a king,                        | <i>Nom.</i> | kings,                       |
| <i>Gen.</i> | a king's, or of a king,        | <i>Gen.</i> | kings', or of kings,         |
| <i>Dat.</i> | to, or for a king,             | <i>Dat.</i> | to, or for kings,            |
| <i>Acc.</i> | a king,                        | <i>Acc.</i> | kings,                       |
| <i>Voc.</i> | king, or O king,               | <i>Voc.</i> | kings, or O kings,           |
| <i>Abl.</i> | with, from, in, or by a king ; | <i>Abl.</i> | with, from, in, or by kings. |

**NOTE 4.**—When the article *the* is prefixed to the noun, it is retained throughout both numbers, except in the vocative.

**QUESTIONS.**—What are cases? How many and what cases have Latin nouns? What does the nominative denote?—the genitive?—the dative? How is *to* expressed after a verb of motion? What does the accusative follow? How is the vocative used? What does the ablative denote? What other classes of words are marked by cases? What are oblique cases? What is meant by the person of a noun? How many persons have nouns and pronouns? When are they of the first person?—of the second?—of the third? Decline *a king* in both numbers.

#### EXERCISE.

Decline *the king* in both numbers; also *a son*, and *the son*.

---

## LESSON 7.

### DECLENSIONS.

1. Nouns which form their cases alike are said to be of the same declension.

2. There are five declensions of Latin nouns.

#### Table of Nominatives.

|                            |                                               |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 3. The nominative singular | of the first declension ends in <i>a</i> .    |
|                            | of the second in <i>er, ir, us, or um.</i>    |
|                            | of the third in <i>e, or, es, is, &amp;c.</i> |
|                            | of the fourth in <i>us, or u.</i>             |
|                            | of the fifth in <i>es.</i>                    |

#### Table of Genitives.

|                                             |                                      |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 4. The termination of the genitive singular | of the first declension is <i>a.</i> |
|                                             | of the second <i>i.</i>              |
|                                             | of the third <i>is.</i>              |
|                                             | of the fourth <i>is.</i>             |
|                                             | of the fifth <i>et.</i>              |

5. The root of an inflected word is the part not changed by inflection.

6. The termination of an inflected word is the part annexed to the root.

7. The root of a declined word may be found by removing the termination of the genitive singular, as given in the table; as,

*Aula*, a hall, gen. *aulæ*; if the termination *æ* be taken from *aulæ*, the root *aul* remains. So *lapis*, a stone, gen. *lapidis*,—root *lapid*.

**REMARK.**—From the last example it appears that the root is not always found in the nominative singular.

**8. Adjectives and participles belong to the first, second, or third declension; gerunds to the second, and supines to the fourth.**

**QUESTIONS.**—When are nouns said to be of the same declension? How many declensions have Latin nouns? Repeat the table of nominatives—or genitives. What is the root of an inflected word?—the termination? How may the root of a declined word be found? What case of a noun, &c., does not always contain the root? Of what declensions are adjectives and participles?—gerunds?—supines?

#### EXERCISE.

Tell the declension of each of the following nouns, and write down its root.

| Nom.        | Gen.    | Nom.        | Gen.               |
|-------------|---------|-------------|--------------------|
| Cu'-ra,     | care,   | cu'-re.     | Fruc'-tus, fruit,  |
| Pu'-er,     | boy,    | pu'-e-ri.   | res, thing,        |
| Tur'-ris,   | tower,  | tur'-ris.   | Pa'-ter, father,   |
| A'-ra,      | altar,  | a'-re.      | La'-tus, side,     |
| Clyp'-e-us, | shield, | clyp'-e-i.  | Vir, man,          |
| Fa'-ci-es,  | face,   | fa-ci-e-i.  | La'-pis, stone,    |
| Gla'-ci-es, | ice,    | gla-ci-e-i. | Quer'-cus, oak,    |
| An'-trum,   | cave,   | an'-tri.    | Cur'-rus, chariot, |
| Ar'-bor,    | tree,   | ar-bo'-ris. | Hor'-tus, garden,  |

**DIRECTIONS.**—The teacher will ask, Why is *cura* of the first declension? Answer. Because its genitive singular ends in *a*, and “The termination of the genitive singular of the first declension ends in *a*.” Table of genitives. A similar question is to be asked respecting each word in the exercise.—So in regard to the root of each word; as, Why is *cur* the root of *cura*? Ans. Because it is what remains after removing the termination of the genitive singular, and “The root of a declined word may be found by removing the termination of the genitive singular.” L. 7. 7.

## LESSON 8.

### FIRST DECLENSION.

1. Latin nouns of the first declension end in *a*, and are feminine.
2. They are declined like *mu'-sa* (pronounced *mu'-rah*), a muse.

| Singular.                | Terminations. | Plural.            | Terminations. |
|--------------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|
| N. & V. mu'-sa,      a,  | N. & V.       | mu'-sse,      a,   |               |
| G. & D. mu'-sse,      a, | G.            | mu-sa'-rum, d-rum, |               |
| Ac.      mu'-sam, am,    | D. & Ab.      | mu'-sis,      u,   |               |
| Ab.      mu'ss;      ð;  | Ac.           | mu'-sas.      as.  |               |

REMARK 1.—*Dea*, a goddess, and *filia*, a daughter, with *equa* and *mula*, have generally *abus* instead of *is* in the dative and ablative plural.

REMARK 2.—*As* and *aī* are old forms of the genitive singular. *As* is retained by later writers in some compounds of *familia*; *as*, *pater-familias*, the father of a family. *Aī* is found principally in the older poets; *as*, *aulai*, of a hall.

REMARK 3.—The poets sometimes form the genitive plural in *ām* instead of *ārum*.

#### GREEK NOUNS.

3. Greek nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, or *es*. Those in *a* and *e* are feminine; those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

4. Greek nouns in *a* are declined like *musa*, but have sometimes *an* in the accusative singular.

5. Greek nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e*, are thus declined in the singular number:

|                                      |          |                                  |             |                        |
|--------------------------------------|----------|----------------------------------|-------------|------------------------|
| N. <i>An-chi'-ás</i> ,               | N.       | <i>An-chi'-ses</i> ,             | N. V. & Ab. | <i>Pe-nef'-ó-pē</i> ,  |
| G. & D. <i>An-chi'-á</i> ,           | G. & D.  | <i>An-chi'-sas</i> ,             | G.          | <i>Pe-nef'-ó-pé</i> ,  |
| Ac. <i>An-chi'-ám</i> or <i>án</i> , | Ac.      | <i>An-chi'-sen</i> ,             | D.          | <i>Pe-nef'-ó-pas</i> , |
| V. & Ab. <i>An-chi'-á</i> .          | V. & Ab. | <i>An-chi'-sé</i> or <i>sá</i> . | Ac.         | <i>Pe-nef'-ó-pen</i> . |

6. In the plural, Greek nouns of the first declension are declined like the plural of *musa*.

7. Latin writers often change Greek nouns in *e*, and sometimes those in *es*, into *a*; *as*, *grammatica* for *grammatice*; *Atrida* for *Atrides*.

8. Some Greek nouns in *es* of the third declension, have likewise an accusative and vocative in *en* and *e*, after the first declension.

QUESTIONS.—How do Latin nouns of the first declension end? Of what gender are they? What is the root of *musa*? Decline *musa*. Where is the termination *a* found?—*a*?—*am*?—*as*?—*is*?—*arum*? What is the termination of the nominative singular?—nom. pl. 1—gen. sing. 1—gen. pl. 1—dat. sing. 1—dat. pl. 1—acc. sing. 1—acc. pl. 1—voc. sing. 1—voc. pl. 1—abl. sing. 1—abl. pl. 1? What is peculiar in the declension of *dea*, *filia*, *etc.*? What were the ancient forms of the genitive of the 1st decl.? In what words is the form in *as* retained by later writers? Where is the form in *aī* principally found? How did the poets sometimes form the genitive plural? How do Greek nouns of the 1st decl. end? What is the rule for their gender? How are Greek nouns in *a* declined in the singular number?—in *as*?—in *es*?—in *e*? How are Greek nouns of the 1st decl. declined in the plural? What change in Greek nouns is sometimes made by Latin writers? What is said of some Greek nouns in *es* of the third declension?

#### EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of the following words, declined like *musa*, first writing the root, and then annexing the terminations:

|                          |                               |                           |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Au'-la, <i>a hall.</i>   | Ga'-le-a, <i>a helmet.</i>    | Pu-el'-la, <i>a girl.</i> |
| Co'-pi-a, <i>plenty.</i> | In'-sú-la, <i>an island.</i>  | Stel'-la, <i>a star.</i>  |
| Cu'-ra, <i>care.</i>     | Lin'-gua, <i>a tongue.</i>    | To'-ga, <i>a gown.</i>    |
| Fa'-ma, <i>fame.</i>     | Mach'-i-na, <i>a machine.</i> | Vi'-a, <i>a way.</i>      |

Tell the roots of each of these nouns.—Repeat the terminations of the first declension without a root, but naming the cases: (thus, singular, nom. and voc. *a*, gen. and dat. *a*, &c.) Write the plural of *dea* and *filia*.

Write the Latin corresponding to the following English phrases.

|                             |                                            |                         |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Of-a-helmet. <sup>a</sup>   | O goddesses. <sup>a</sup>                  | For-the-daughters.      |
| For-the-stars, <sup>b</sup> | From-the-islands. <sup>c</sup>             | By-a-machine.           |
| In-the-way. <sup>c</sup>    | In-the-ways. <sup>c</sup>                  | With care. <sup>c</sup> |
|                             | The-fame ( <i>nom.</i> ) of the-goddesses. |                         |
|                             | The-tongues ( <i>acc.</i> ) of-the-muses.  |                         |
|                             | From-the-hall of-the-daughters.            |                         |

*a* See Lesson 6, 4. *b*, See Less. 6, 5. *c* See Less. 6, 8. *d* See Less. 6, 7.

Note 1.—In the exercises, two or more English words connected by a hyphen are to be expressed by a single Latin word.

Note 2.—In translating into Latin the English phrases in this lesson, and in the succeeding lessons on nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, it is to be observed:—

(a) That *of*, *for*, *to*, and *by*, require no corresponding words in Latin, but are expressed by the termination of their cases. Thus *of-a-hall*, is expressed by *cu*ae**; *for-a-helmet*, by *galea*; *by-care*, by *cur*a**, &c.

(b) That *a* and *the* cannot be translated, as there are in Latin no corresponding words. See L. 4, Note 1.

(c) That *from* is expressed by *a*, if the noun following begins with a consonant, but by *ab*, if it begins with a vowel; *as*, *a stell*a**, *ab insul*a**.

(d) That *with* is expressed by *cum*; *in*, by *in*; and *O*, by *O*.

## LESSON 9.

### SECOND DECLENSION.

1. Latin nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *us*, and *um*: those in *er*, *ir*, and *us*, are masculine; those in *um* are neuter.

2. Nouns in *us* of the second declension are declined like *dom'-i-nus*, a lord: thus,

| Singular. | Term.                   | Plural.  | Term.                        |
|-----------|-------------------------|----------|------------------------------|
| N.        | dom'-i-nus, <i>us</i> , | N. & V.  | dom'-i-ni, <i>i</i> ,        |
| G.        | dom'-i-ni, <i>i</i> ,   | G.       | dom-i-nō'-rum, <i>ōrum</i> , |
| D. & Ab.  | dom'-i-no, <i>o</i> ,   | D. & Ab. | dom'-i-nis, <i>is</i> ,      |
| Ac.       | dom'-i-num, <i>um</i> , | Ac.      | dom'-i-nos. <i>o</i>         |
| V.        | dom'-i-ne;              |          |                              |

*Exceptions.*

1. *Domus*, a house, *humus*, the ground, with *colus*, *alvus*, *vannus*, and some Greek nouns, are feminine.

2. *Pelagus*, the sea, and *virus*, poison, are neuter. *Vulcus*, the common people, is generally neuter, but sometimes masculine.

3. Names of persons in *tus*, *filius*; a son, and *genius*, a guardian angel, omit *e* in the vocative.

4. *Deus*, a god, has *deus* in the vocative singular, and in the plural commonly changes *e* of its root into *i*, except in the genitive and accusative plural; as, N. & V. *di'-i*, G. *de-o'-rum*, &c.

5. Other nouns in *us* have sometimes *us* in the vocative, especially in the poets.

**REMARK.**—Nouns in *us* of the second declension are the only Latin nouns whose nominative and vocative singular differ in form.

**QUESTIONS.**—How do Latin nouns of the second declension end? Which of the terminations are masculine? Which are neuter? What is the root of *dominus*? Decline *dominus*. Where is the termination *us* found *—i* *—o* *—um* *—e* *—urum* *—is* *—ae*? What is the termination of the nominative singular *i*—nom. pl. *i*—gen. sing. *i*—gen. pl. *i*—dat. sing. *i*—dat. pl. *i*—acc. sing. *i*—acc. pl. *i*—voc. sing. *i*—voc. pl. *i*—abl. sing. *i*—abl. pl. *i*? What nouns of the second declension are feminine?—What, neuter? What nouns omit *e* in the vocative? What is said of the declension of *deus*? What is remarkable in the vocative of nouns in *us*?

**EXERCISE.**

Write out the declension of the following words declined like *dominus*, first writing the root and then annexing the terminations:

|                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| An'-i-mus, <i>the mind.</i>  | Gla'-di-us, <i>a sword.</i> |
| Clyp'-e-us, <i>a shield.</i> | Lu'-cus, <i>a grove.</i>    |
| Cor-vus, <i>a raven.</i>     | Mo'-dus, <i>a manner.</i>   |
| Dig'-i-tus, <i>a finger.</i> | Ven'-tus, <i>a wind.</i>    |

Repeat the terminations of nouns in *us* without a root. Write the declension of *Virgil'-i-us*, Virgil, in the singular number. Write that of *de-us*, in both numbers.

Write the Latin for the following English phrases:—

|                                          |                         |                |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------|
| For-a-sword.                             | For-the-fingers.        | In the-groves. |
| O shield!                                | O son!                  | By-the-wind.   |
| To-the-ravens.                           | The-son's. <sup>a</sup> | Of-the-mind.   |
| By-the-minds of-the-gods.                |                         |                |
| The-ravens ( <i>acc.</i> ) in the-grove. |                         |                |

<sup>a</sup> *Lem. 6.*

**LESSON 10.**

1. Nouns in *er* of the second declension are regularly declined like *ge'-ner*, a son-in-law: thus,

| <i>Singular.</i>                       | <i>Term.</i> | <i>Plural.</i>                         | <i>Term.</i> |
|----------------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------------|--------------|
| N. & V. <i>gen-ner</i> , —             |              | N. & V. <i>gen'-ē-ri</i> ,             | <i>i</i> ,   |
| G. <i>gen'-ē-ri</i> , <i>i</i> ,       |              | G. <i>gen-e-rō-rum</i> , <i>ōrum</i> , |              |
| D. & Ab. <i>gen'-ē-ro</i> , <i>o</i> , |              | D. & Ab. <i>gen'-ē-ris</i> ,           | <i>is</i> ,  |
| Ac. <i>gen'-ē-rum</i> ; <i>um</i> ;    |              | Ac. <i>gen'-ē-rus</i> .                | <i>os</i> .  |

## REMARKS.

1. In the nominative and vocative singular of words declined like *gener*, the root only of the cases is found, with no grammatical termination annexed.  
 2. *Vir*, a man, and its compounds, are declined like *gener*; thus, N. and V. *vir*, G. *vi'-ri*, &c.

*Syncopated Nouns in er.*

2. Most nouns in *er* omit *e* in all the cases except the nominative and vocative singular, like *a'-ger*, a field, gen. *a'-gri*, (instead of *ag'-ē-ri*), thus,

| <i>Singular.</i>                  | <i>Term.</i> | <i>Plural.</i>                       | <i>Term.</i> |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------|--------------|
| N. V. <i>a'-ger</i> , —           |              | N. V. <i>a'-gri</i> ,                | <i>i</i> ,   |
| G. <i>a'-gri</i> , <i>i</i> ,     |              | G. <i>a-gro'-rum</i> , <i>ōrum</i> , |              |
| D. Ab. <i>a'-gro</i> , <i>o</i> , |              | D. Ab. <i>a'-gris</i> ,              | <i>is</i> ,  |
| Ac. <i>a'-grum</i> ; <i>um</i> ;  |              | Ac. <i>a'-gros</i> .                 | <i>os</i> .  |

**Note.—Syncopation** is the omission of one or more letters in the middle of a word.

**QUESTIONS.**—Decline *gener*. Decline *ager*. How does *ager* differ in declension from *gener*? What is the root of *gener*?—of *ager*? What cases of nouns in *er* have no grammatical termination? How is the nominative singular *ager* formed from the root *i*? (Answer. By inserting *e* before *r*.) In what cases do nouns in *er* differ from those in *us*? How are *vir* and its compounds declined? What is syncopation?

## EXERCISE.

1. Write out the declension of the following nouns, declined like *gener* :—

*Ar'-mī-ger*, an armor bearer.      *So'-cer*, a father-in-law.  
*Pu'-er*, a boy.      *Vir*, a man.

2. Write out the declension of the following nouns, syncopated in declension like *ager* :—

*A'-per*, a wild boar.      *Ca'-per*, a goat.  
*Aus'-ter*, the south wind.      *Li'-ber*, a book.  
*Can'-cer*, a crab.      *Ma-gis'-ter*, a master.

Write the roots of *aper*, *auster*, *cancer*, *caper*, *liber*, and *magister*. English to be translated into Latin :—

|                      |                              |                |
|----------------------|------------------------------|----------------|
| For-a-son-in-law.    | By-the-south-wind.           | Of-the-fields. |
| To-the-fields.       | O boys!                      | In the-fields. |
| In the-field.        | The-book ( <i>nom.</i> ) of- | For-the-man.   |
| Of-the-armor-bearer. | the-master.                  | To-the-gods.   |

## LESSON 11.

1. Nouns in *um* are declined like *regnum*, a kingdom: thus,

| Singular.                       | Term. | Plural.                       | Term. |
|---------------------------------|-------|-------------------------------|-------|
| N. Ac. V. reg'-num, <i>um</i> , |       | N. Ac. V. reg'-na,            | a,    |
| G. reg'-ni, <i>i</i> ,          |       | G. reg-na'-rum, <i>brum</i> , |       |
| D. Ab. reg'-no; <i>o</i> .      |       | D. Ab. reg'-nis.              | is.   |

## REMARKS.

1. Neuter nouns, of whatever declension, have their nominative, accusative, and vocative alike, and in the plural these cases always end in *a*.
2. The genitive singular *ii* of nouns in *ius* and *ium* is often contracted by the poets into *i*; as *Appius*, *Appi*; *ingenium*, *ingēnī*.
3. So likewise *dii* and *diis*, from *deus*, are sometimes contracted into *dī* and *dis*.
4. The genitive plural of some nouns of the second declension, especially of those which denote money, weight, and measure, is commonly formed in *um* instead of *brum*. So also in poetry, *deūm*, *liberūm*, *Argivūm*, &c., instead of *deōrum*, &c.

QUESTIONS.—How is *regnum* declined? What is the root of *regnum*? What are the terminations of nouns in *um*, without a root? What cases of the second declension are like the same cases of the first? How do the terminations of the genitive plural of the first and second declensions differ? What is the quantity of their penult? What three cases of neuter nouns are always alike?

## EXERCISE.

Write out the declensions of the following nouns declined like *regnum*:

|                               |                                 |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| An'-trum, <i>a cave.</i>      | Ex-em'-plum, <i>an example.</i> |
| Au'-rum, <i>gold. (sing.)</i> | Fer'-rum, <i>iron. (sing.)</i>  |
| Bel'-lum, <i>war.</i>         | Sax'-um, <i>a rock.</i>         |
| Do'-num, <i>a gift.</i>       | Tem'-plum, <i>a temple.</i>     |

Write the abl. sing. of *antrum*—the gen. sing. of *aurum*—the acc. pl. of *bellum*—the abl. pl. of *donum*.

Write the Latin for the following English phrases:—  
To-a-lord. Of-a-son-in-law. By-gold. By-the-gold of-the-temp-

ple. A-master's gift. A-rock in the-field. The-example of-the-daughter. The-tongue (*nom.*) of-the-boy. The-island (*acc.*) of-the-goddesses. In-the-hall-of-the-master. For-the-daughters. A-plenty (*nom.*) of-gold. The-iron-of-the-machines. For-the-shield of-the-man. The-boy's tongue (*acc.*)

Translate into English :—

|           |                      |                                          |
|-----------|----------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Auri.     | Dona.                | Aurum in templo. Exemplo ( <i>dat.</i> ) |
| Bellorum. | Dono ( <i>dat.</i> ) | Donum auri. In animo.                    |

#### GREEK NOUNS.

2. Greek nouns of the second declension end in *os* or *on*. Those in *os* are masculine, those in *on* are neuter.

3. They are thus declined in the singular number :—

|        |                  |           |              |
|--------|------------------|-----------|--------------|
| N.     | De'-los,         | N. Ac. V. | Bar'-bi-ton, |
| G.     | De'-li,          | G.        | Bar'-bi-ti,  |
| D. Ab. | De'-lo,          | D Ab.     | Bar'-bi-to.  |
| Ac.    | De'-lon or -lum, |           |              |
| V.     | De'-le.          |           |              |

4. In the plural, Greek nouns of the second declension are declined like the plural of *dominus* and *regnum*.

5. *Os* and *on* are often changed in Latin into *us* and *um*; as, *Alphōs*, *Alphēus*; *Ilium*, *Ilium*.

6. Nouns in *ros* after a consonant are generally changed into *er*; as, *Alexandros*, *Alexander*.

7. Some proper nouns in *os* are thus declined: N. *A'-thos*, G. D. Ab. *A'-tho*, Ac. *A'-tho* or *A'-thon*.

8. Greek proper names in *eus* are generally declined like *domi-nus*, but their vocative ends in *eu*. Sometimes, especially in poetry, they are declined after the third declension. *Panthus* makes *Pan-thu* in the vocative.

9. The nominative plural of nouns in *os* sometimes ends in *ox*.

10. The genitive plural in the titles of books, and in a few proper names, sometimes ends in *on*; as, *Georgicōn*, *Philēmon*.

QUESTIONS.—How do Greek nouns of the 2d declension end? Decline *Delos* in the singular. Decline *barbiton* in the singular—in the plural. What change is often made by Latin writers in Greek nouns in *os* and *on*?—in nouns in *ros* after a consonant? Decline *Athos*. How are Greek proper nouns in *eus* declined? What is sometimes the plural of nouns in *os*? In what classes of Greek nouns is the genitive plural in *os* sometimes used?

## LESSON 12.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

The number of final letters in nouns of the third declension is twelve.

Five are vowels—*a, e, i, o, y*; and seven are consonants—*c, l, n, r, s, t, x*.

The gender of nouns of the third declension may commonly be known by their termination.

## MASCULINES.

1. Nouns in *e r, o r, o,*  
(Excepting *i o, do, and go,*)  
With nouns in *os* and *nis,*  
And *es*, if it increase,  
*E x and n* (excepting *men,*)  
With *dens* and *fons,*  
And *mons* and *pons,*  
Are to be counted masculine.

NOTE 1.—A noun is said to *increase*, when its genitive singular has more syllables than its nominative.

NOTE 2.—For the principal exceptions to the rules for the gender and genitive of nouns of this declension, see Appendix, L. E—F.

*Nouns in n and r.*

2. Nouns in *n* and *r* form their genitive by adding *is* to the nominative.

3. They are declined like *ho'-nor*, honor: thus,

| Singular.        | Term.       | Plural.                | Term.        |
|------------------|-------------|------------------------|--------------|
| N. V. ho'-nor,   | —           | N. Ac. V. ho-nor'-res, | <i>es,</i>   |
| G. ho-nor'-ris,  | <i>is,</i>  | G.                     | ho-nor'-rum, |
| D. ho-nor'-ri,   | <i>t,</i>   | D. Ab.                 | um,          |
| Ac. ho-nor'-rem, | <i>em,</i>  |                        | ibus.        |
| Ab.              | ho-nor'-re; |                        | <i>e;</i>    |

REMARK.—Nouns in *ter* and most nouns in *ter* drop *e*, except in the nominative and vocative singular; as, *pa'-ter*, a father, G. *pa'-tri*, D. *pa'-tri*, &c.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is the termination of the genitive singular of the first declension?—of the second?—of the third?—of the fourth?—of the fifth? What terminations of nouns of the third declension are masculine? When is a noun said to increase? How do nouns in *s* and *r* form their genitive? Decline *honor*. What is remarked of nouns in *ber* and *ter*?

## EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of the following nouns declined like *honor* :—

|           |                          |                                    |
|-----------|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| A'-mor,   | óris, <i>love.</i>       | Del'-phin, Inis, <i>a dolphin.</i> |
| Do'-lor,  | óris, <i>pain.</i>       | Ag'-ger, éris, <i>a rampart.</i>   |
| Pas'-tor, | óris, <i>a shepherd.</i> | Car'-cer, éris, <i>a prison.</i>   |
| Ar'-bor,  | f. óris, <i>a tree.</i>  | Cra'-tor, éris, <i>a cup.</i>      |

Repeat the terminations of the several cases. Write out the declension of *pa'-ter*,—of *ma'-ter*, a mother, declined like *pater*,—of *September*.

Translate :—*Delphini. Arbórum. In aggeribus. A carcóre. Crateribus (dat.) Honóres. Pastoribus (abt.) Dolóre. Patri. O matrea. Pastoris amor (nom.)*

## LESSON 13.

*Nouns in o.*

Nouns in *o* form their genitive in *ónis*; as, *ser'-mo*, *ser-mó-nis*, speech, which is thus declined :

| Singular.        | Term. | Plural.                | Term.                 |
|------------------|-------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| N. V. ser'-mo,   | —     | N. Ac. V. ser-mó'-nes, | es,                   |
| G. ser-mó'-nis,  | is,   | G.                     | ser-mó'-num,          |
| D. ser-mó'-ni,   | i,    | D. Ab.                 | ser-mon'-i-bus. ibus. |
| Ac. ser-mó'-nem, | em,   |                        |                       |
| Ab. ser-mó'-ne;  | e;    |                        |                       |

*Nouns in os.*

Nouns in *os* form their genitive in *óris* or *ótis*; as, *flos*, *fló-ris*, a flower; *ne'-pos*, *ne-pó'-tis*, a grandchild.

| Singular.     | Term. | Plural.             | Term.              |
|---------------|-------|---------------------|--------------------|
| N. V. flos,   | s,    | N. Ac. V. fló'-res, | es,                |
| G. fló'-ris,  | is,   | G.                  | fló'-rum,          |
| D. fló'-ri,   | i,    | D. Ab.              | flor'-i-bus. ibus. |
| Ac. fló'-rem, | em,   |                     |                    |
| Ab. fló'-re;  | e;    |                     |                    |

**QUESTIONS.**—How do nouns in *o* form their genitive?—nouns in *es*? Decline *sermo*—*flos*. What is the root of *sermo*?—of *flos*? What two cases in the singular are alike? What two cases in the plural? What three cases in the plural?

## EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of the following words declined like *sermo*:—

Dra'-co, *a dragon.*

Pa'-vo, *a peacock.*

Le'-o, *a lion.*

Ra'-ti-o, f. (pron. ra'-she-o,) *reason.*

Write out the declension of the following nouns which have *ōris*:

Mos, *a custom.*

Ros, *dev.*

Os, n. *the mouth.* L. 11. R. 1. Ar'-bos (or, ar'-bor,) *ōris*, a tree.

And the following which have *ōtis*:

Cos, *a whelstone.*

Ne'-pos, *a grandson.*

Dos, *a dowry.*

Sa-cer'-dos, *a priest.*

Repeat the terminations. Write the roots of the preceding nouns in this exercise.

Write the Latin for the following English phrases:—

Of-speech. By-a-lion. The-reason (*acc.*) of-the-priest.

For-a-dowry. Of-a-peacock. The-mouth of-the-lion.

To-a-dragon. Of-the-trees. By-the-speeches-of-the-shepherds.

a Write the genitive in Latin before the noun on which it depends; as, "the honor of the father," *patris honor.*

Translate into English:—

Sermōni.

Pavonis

Cum leonibus.

Nepōtea.

Sacerdōti.

In carcere.

Dracōni.

Arbōri.

A pavone.

## LESSON 14.

Increasing Nouns in *es* and *is*.

1. Increasing nouns in *es* form their genitive in *ōtis*—  
a few in *ētis*.

2. They are declined like *mi'-les*, a soldier: thus,

| Singular.      | Term.           | Plural.               | Term.                |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| N. V. mi'-les, | s.              | N. Ac. V. mil'-i-tes, | es,                  |
| G. mil'-i-tis, | is,             | G. mil'-i-tum,        | um,                  |
| D. mil'-i-ti,  | i,              | D. Ab.                | mi-lit'-i-bus. ibus. |
| Ac.            | mil'-i-tem, em, |                       |                      |
| Ab.            | mil'-i-to; e;   |                       |                      |

3. Increasing nouns in *is* form their genitive in *idis*, *itis*, or *ēris*. *Lapis*, m. a stone, is thus declined :

| Singular.       | Term.       | Plural.               | Term.                        |
|-----------------|-------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| N. V. la'-pis,  | <i>s</i> ,  | N. Ac. V. lap'-i-des, | <i>es</i> ,                  |
| G. lap'-i-dis,  | <i>is</i> , | G. lap'-i-dum,        | <i>um</i> ,                  |
| D. lap'-i-di,   | <i>t</i> ,  | D. Ab.                | la-pid'-i-bus. <i>ibus</i> . |
| Ac. lap'-i-dem, | <i>em</i> , |                       |                              |
| Ab. lap'-i-de;  | <i>e</i> ;  |                       |                              |

#### *Nouns in ex.*

4. Nouns in *ex*, of more than one syllable, form their genitive in *icis*; as, *pontifex*, a chief-priest.

| Singular.           | Term.       | Plural.                   | Term.                            |
|---------------------|-------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| N. V. pon'-ti-fex,  | <i>s</i> ,  | N. Ac. V. pon-tif'-i-ces, | <i>es</i> ,                      |
| G. pon-tif'-i-cis,  | <i>is</i> , | G. pon-tif'-i-cum,        | <i>um</i> ,                      |
| D. pon-tif'-i-ci,   | <i>t</i> ,  | D. Ab.                    | pon-ti-fic'-i-bus. <i>ibus</i> . |
| Ac. pon-tif'-i-cem, | <i>em</i> , |                           |                                  |
| Ab. pon-tif'-i-ce;  | <i>e</i> ;  |                           |                                  |

QUESTIONS.—How do increasing nouns in *es* form their genitive? When is a noun said to increase? Decline *miles*. What is the root of *miles*? What is the termination of the dat. sing. l.—of the dat. pl.? How do increasing nouns in *is* form their genitive? Decline *lapis*. How do nouns in *ex* of more than one syllable form their genitive? Decline *pontifex*. What is its root?

#### EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of the following nouns:—

A'-les, *itis*, m. & f. *a bird*.      Ab'-i-es, *ētis*, f. *a fir-tree*.  
 Co'-mes, *itis*, m. & f. *a companion*.      A'-ri-es, *ētis*, m. *a ram*.  
 Pe'-des, *itis*, m. *a footman*.      Se'-ges, *ētis*, f. *growing corn*.

Write out the declension of these nouns declined like *lapis*.

Cas'-sis, *idis*, f. *a helmet*.      Lis, G. li'-tis, f. *strife*; G. pl. lit'-i-um.  
 Pul'-vis, *ēris*, m. and f. *dust*.      San'-guis, *inīs*, m. *blood*. (sing.)

Write out the declension of these nouns declined like *pontifex*.

Ar'-ti-fex, *an artist*.      Fru'-tex, *a shrub*.      Si'-lex, *flint*.  
 Cu'-lex, *a gnat*.      In'-dex, *an informer*.      Vor'-tex, *a whirlpool*.

Write out the roots of the preceding nouns.

Write the Latin for the following English phrases:—

For-the-companion of-the-muses.  
 To-the-father-in-law of-the-girl.

By-the-wild-boars of-the-field.      Of-the-birds in-the-fir-trees.  
 In-the-groves of-the-gods.      The-soldiers' shields. (*ace.*)

Translate into English :—

|                |                |                   |
|----------------|----------------|-------------------|
| Militem.       | Comes peditum. | Alites in abiōte. |
| O milites.     | In abietibus.  | Segōti.           |
| Cum militib⁹s. | Ariētes.       | Sacerdōtem.       |

---

## LESSON 15.

### FEMININES.

1. Nouns, not increasing, in *e s*,  
*Us* (*ūtis, ūdis,\**) *x, as, is,*  
In *s* impure, *ys, aus, i o,*  
Are feminine—with *do* and *go*.

\* I. e. having *tis* or *dis* in the genitive.

Note.—A letter is said to be *impure* when it follows a consonant.

*Nouns in es and is, not increasing, and in do and go.*

2. Nouns, not increasing, in *es* and *is*, form their genitive in *is*.

3. Feminines in *es* are declined like *ru'-pes*, a rock : thus,

| Singular.                        | Term. | Plural.                                | Term. |
|----------------------------------|-------|----------------------------------------|-------|
| <i>N. V.</i> <i>ru'-pes, es,</i> |       | <i>N. Ac. V.</i> <i>ru'-pes, es,</i>   |       |
| <i>G.</i> <i>ru'-pis, is,</i>    |       | <i>G.</i> <i>ru'-pi-um, ium,</i>       |       |
| <i>D.</i> <i>ru'-pi, i,</i>      |       | <i>D. Ab.</i> <i>ru'-pi-bus, ibus.</i> |       |
| <i>Ac.</i> <i>ru'-pem, em,</i>   |       |                                        |       |
| <i>Ab.</i> <i>ru'-pe; e;</i>     |       |                                        |       |

4. Nouns in *is* are declined like *tur'-ris*, a tower : thus,

| Singular.                                       | Term.      | Plural.                                 | Term. |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------------------|-------|
| <i>N. V.</i> <i>tur'-ris,</i>                   | <i>is,</i> | <i>N. Ac. V.</i> <i>tur'-res, es,</i>   |       |
| <i>G.</i> <i>tur'-ris,</i>                      | <i>is,</i> | <i>G.</i> <i>tur'-ri-um, ium,</i>       |       |
| <i>D.</i> <i>tur'-ri,</i>                       | <i>i,</i>  | <i>D. Ab.</i> <i>tur'-ri-bus, ibus.</i> |       |
| <i>Ac.</i> <i>tur'-rem or tur'-rim, em, im,</i> |            |                                         |       |
| <i>Ab.</i> <i>tur'-re or tur'-ri; e, i;</i>     |            |                                         |       |

*Nouns in do and go.*

5. Nouns in *do* and *go* form their genitive in *inis*; as *arundo, arundinis*, a reed :—

| Singular.                      | Term. | Plural.                  | Term. |
|--------------------------------|-------|--------------------------|-------|
| N. V. a-run'-do,               | —     | N. Ac. V. a-run'-di-nas, | es,   |
| G. a-run'-di-nis, <i>is</i> ,  |       | G. a-run'-di-num,        | um,   |
| D. a-run'-di-ni, <i>t</i> ,    |       | D. Ab. a-run-din'-i-bus. | ibus. |
| Ac. a-run'-di-nem, <i>em</i> , |       |                          |       |
| Ab. a-run'-di-ne; <i>ē</i> ;   |       |                          |       |

QUESTIONS.—What terminations of nouns of the third declension are feminine? What, masculine? When is a letter said to be impure? Decline *rupes*—*turris*. How does the genitive plural of *rupes* and *turris* end?—the acc. sing. of *turris*?—the abl. sing.? How do nouns in *do* and *go* form their genitive? Decline *arundo*.

## EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of these nouns declined like *rupes*.

|                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Æ'-des, <i>is, a temple.</i>   | Nw'-bes, <i>is, a cloud.</i> |
| Cla'-des, <i>is, daughter.</i> | Vul'-pes, <i>is, a fox.</i>  |

Write out the declension of these nouns declined like *turris*.

|                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| A'-vis, <i>is, a bird.</i>  | Na'-vis, <i>is, a ship.</i> |
| Cla'-vis, <i>is, a key.</i> | O'-vis, <i>is, a sheep.</i> |

Write out the declension of these nouns declined like *arundo*.

|                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| For-mi'-do, <i>fear.</i>        | I-ma'-go, <i>an image.</i>   |
| Gran'-do, <i>hail.</i>          | Mar'-go, <i>m. a margin.</i> |
| Tes-tū'-do, <i>a tortoise.</i>  | Vir'-go, <i>a virgin.</i>    |
| Ho'-mo, inis, <i>c. a man.</i>  |                              |
| Ne'-mo, inis, <i>c. no one.</i> |                              |

Tell the root of each noun in this exercise.

Translate into English:—

|                |                          |                          |
|----------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| Clade ovium.   | In nubibus.              | Cum navibus.             |
| Claves aedias. | Navibus. ( <i>dat.</i> ) | O vulpes. ( <i>pl.</i> ) |

## LESSON 16.

*Nouns in as and us.*

1. Nouns in *as* form their genitive ir. *atis*; *as, a'-tas*, an age, which is thus declined:—

| Singular.      | Term.       | Plural.              | Term.        |
|----------------|-------------|----------------------|--------------|
| N. V. æ-tas,   | <i>s</i> ,  | N. Ac. V. æ-ta'-tes, | <i>es</i> ,  |
| G. æ-ta'-tis,  | <i>is</i> , | G. æ-ta'-tum,        | <i>um,</i>   |
| D. æ-ta'-ti,   | <i>t</i> ,  | D. Ab. æ-ta'-tibus.  | <i>ibus.</i> |
| Ac. æ-ta'-tem, | <i>em</i> , |                      |              |
| Ab. æ-ta'-te;  | <i>e!</i>   |                      |              |

2. Feminines in *us* form their genitive in *itis* or *udis* and are declined like *virtus*, *virtue* : thus,

| <i>Singular.</i>        | <i>Term.</i> | <i>Plural.</i>                | <i>Term.</i> |
|-------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>N. V.</i> vir'-tus,  | <i>s,</i>    | <i>N. Ac. V.</i> vir-tū'-tes, | <i>es,</i>   |
| <i>G.</i> vir-tū'-tis,  | <i>is,</i>   | <i>G.</i> vir-tū'-tum,        | <i>um,</i>   |
| <i>D.</i> vir-tū'-ti,   | <i>i,</i>    | <i>D. Ab.</i> vir-tū'-ti-bus. | <i>ibus.</i> |
| <i>Ac.</i> vir-tū'-tem, | <i>em,</i>   |                               |              |
| <i>Ab.</i> vir-tū'-te;  | <i>e;</i>    |                               |              |

Questions.—When is a noun said to increase? How do nouns in *as* form their genitive? Decline *etas*. How do feminines in *us* of the third declension form their genitive? Decline *virtus*.

#### EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of these nouns declined like *etas*.

*Ae's-tas, summer; pi'-ä-tas, piety, (only in the sing.); and po-te-s-tas, power.*

And the following declined like *virtus* :—

*Juventus, youth; pa'-lus, *udis*, a marsh; laus, lau'-dis, praise.*  
Tell the roots of the nouns in this lesson.

Write the Latin for the following English phrases :—

|                          |                                       |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| By-strife.               | The-key ( <i>nom.</i> ) of-the-tower. |
| In-the-dust.             | By-the-slaughter of-the-soldiers.     |
| From-the-helmet.         | In-the-temples of-the-gods.           |
| With-the-blood of-sheep. | By-the-piety of-the-daughter.         |
| With strife.             |                                       |

Translate into English :—

*Pietatem. In æstate. Pulvēria. A palude. Laudibus. (abl.) Cassis in pulvēri.*

## LESSON 17.

### *Nouns in s impure and x.*

1. Nouns in *s* impure form their genitive in *is* or *tis*  
*Ars, art, is*, thus declined :—

| <i>Singular.</i>    | <i>Term.</i> | <i>Plural.</i>            | <i>Term.</i> |
|---------------------|--------------|---------------------------|--------------|
| <i>N. V.</i> ars,   | <i>s,</i>    | <i>N. Ac. V.</i> ar'-tes, | <i>es,</i>   |
| <i>G.</i> ar'-tis,  | <i>is,</i>   | <i>G.</i> ar'-ti-um,*     | <i>um,</i>   |
| <i>D.</i> ar'-ti,   | <i>i,</i>    | <i>D. Ab.</i> ar'-ti-bus. | <i>ibus.</i> |
| <i>Ac.</i> ar'-tem, | <i>em,</i>   |                           |              |
| <i>Ab.</i> ar'-te;  | <i>e;</i>    |                           |              |

\* Pronounced *ar-shé-um*

**NOTE.**—Nouns in *ts*, *ms*, and *ps*, change *s* into *is*. Nouns in *ls*, *as*, and *rs*, change *s* into *tis*.

**2. Nouns in *x* form their genitive in *cis* or *gis*.** *Vox*, a voice, is thus declined :—

| Singular. | Term.                        | Plural. | Term.                                  |
|-----------|------------------------------|---------|----------------------------------------|
| N. V.     | <i>vox</i> , <i>s</i> ,      | N. Ac.  | <i>V.</i> <i>vo'-ces</i> , <i>es</i> , |
| G.        | <i>vo'-cis</i> , <i>is</i> , | G.      | <i>vo'-cum</i> , <i>um</i> ,           |
| D.        | <i>vo'-ci</i> , <i>i</i> ,   | D. Ab.  | <i>voc'-i-bus</i> , <i>ibus</i> .      |
| Ac.       | <i>vo'-cem</i> , <i>em</i> , |         |                                        |
| Ab.       | <i>vo'-ce</i> ; <i>e</i> ;   |         |                                        |

**REMARK.**—*Nox*, night, makes in the gen. sing. *noct'-is*, gen. plur. *noct'-li-um*, (pronounced *noct'-she-um*.) *Nix*, snow, has *ni'-vis*.

#### *Nouns in ys.*

Greek nouns in *ys* either form a Latin genitive in *is* or *dis*, or retain the Greek form in *os* or *dos*.

Those which increase in *is* or *os* are declined like *Tethys* :—

|                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| N. Te'-thys, <i>s</i> ,     | Ac. Te'-thyn, <i>n</i> ,  |
| G. Te'-thý'-os, <i>os</i> , | V. Te'-thy, —             |
| D. Te'-thý'-i; <i>ti</i> ;  | Ab. Teth'-ý-e. <i>ē</i> . |

**QUESTIONS.**—How do nouns in *s* impure form their genitive? When is a letter said to be impure? Decline *ars*. In what terminations is *s* changed into *is*? In what, into *tis*? How do nouns in *s* form their genitive? What kind of consonant is *s*? For what two single letters does *s* stand in *vox*?—in *les*? (gen. *le'-gis*.) Decline *vox*. How do Greek nouns in *ys* form their genitive? Decline *Tethys*.

#### EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of :—

|        |                               |          |                                      |
|--------|-------------------------------|----------|--------------------------------------|
| Frons, | <i>tis, the forehead.</i>     | Arx,     | <i>cis, a citadel. (G. pl. ium.)</i> |
| Gens,  | <i>tis, a nation.</i>         | Cer-vix, | <i>icis, the neck.</i>               |
| Pars,  | <i>tis, a part.</i>           | Co'-rax, | <i>ācis, m. a raven.</i>             |
| P.ebs, | <i>is, the common people.</i> | Lex,     | <i>gis, a law.</i>                   |
| Urbs,  | <i>is, a city.</i>            | Rex,     | <i>gis, m. a king.</i>               |

Write the roots of the preceding nouns—the declension of *nox*.

Translate into English :—

|          |            |               |                 |
|----------|------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Arte.    | In fronte. | Pars noctis.  | Vulpi.          |
| Partium. | Ab arce.   | Leges gentis. | Rex gentis.     |
| Voce     | Cum gente. | Arx urbis.    | Cervix ariōtia. |

## LESSON 18.

## NEUTERS.

1. The letters of the word *cliyeta* constitute seven of the terminations of neuter nouns of the third declension. The other terminations are *men*, *ar*, *ur*, and *us* when it makes *ēris* or *ōris* in the genitive;—or thus,

2. Nouns in *cliyeta\** neuter are,

*Us* (*ēris*, *ōris*,) *men*, *ur*, *ar*.

(To be pronounced *cli-yē-ta*.)

*Nouns in men and us.*

3. Nouns in *men* form their genitive in *inis*; as, *carmen*, *carminis*, a verse:—

| Singular.                  | Term.       | Plural.                       | Term.         |
|----------------------------|-------------|-------------------------------|---------------|
| <i>N. Ac. V.</i> car'-men, | —           | <i>N. Ac. V.</i> car'-mi-na,  | <i>a</i> ,    |
| <i>G.</i> car'-mi-nis,     | <i>is</i> , | <i>G.</i> car'-mi-num,        | <i>um</i> ,   |
| <i>D.</i> car'-mi-ni,      | <i>i</i> ,  | <i>D. Ab.</i> car-min'-i-bus. | <i>ibus</i> . |
| <i>Ab.</i> car'-mi-ne;     | <i>e</i> ;  |                               |               |

4. Neuters in *us* form their genitive in *ēris* or *ōris*; as *opus*, *opēris*; a work:

| Singular.                | Term.       | Plural.                     | Term.         |
|--------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|---------------|
| <i>N. Ac. V.</i> o'-pus, | <i>s</i> ,  | <i>N. Ac. V.</i> op'-ē-ra,  | <i>a</i> ,    |
| <i>G.</i> op'-ē-ris,     | <i>is</i> , | <i>G.</i> op'-ē-rum,        | <i>um</i> ,   |
| <i>D.</i> op'-ē-ri,      | <i>i</i> ,  | <i>D. Ab.</i> o-per'-i-bus. | <i>ibus</i> . |
| <i>Ab.</i> op'-ē-re;     | <i>e</i> ;  |                             |               |

QUESTIONS.—What are the terminations of neuter nouns of the third declension? How do nouns in *men* form their genitive?—neuters in *us*? Decline *carmen*—*opus*. What three cases of neuter nouns are alike? How do these cases end in the plural? How do masculines and feminines end in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural? What is the root of *carmen*?—of *opus*?

## EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of:—

|                                 |                                    |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Ag'-men, <i>an army.</i>        | No'-men, <i>a name.</i>            |
| Cri'-men, <i>a crime.</i>       | Nu'-men, <i>a deity.</i>           |
| Flu'-men, <i>a river.</i>       | Teg'-men, <i>a covering.</i>       |
| Fœ-dus, <i>ēris, a league.</i>  | Cor-pus, <i>ōris, a body.</i>      |
| Ge'-nus, <i>ōris, a kind.</i>   | Per'-tus, <i>ōris, the breast.</i> |
| Sce'-lus, <i>ēris, a crime.</i> | Tem'-pus, <i>ōris, time.</i>       |

Tell the root of each of the preceding nouns.

Translate into English:—

|                              |          |                            |
|------------------------------|----------|----------------------------|
| Crimine.                     | Numinum. | Agminibus. ( <i>dat.</i> ) |
| Sceleribus. ( <i>abll.</i> ) | Corpōri. | Fluminis.                  |

Translate into Latin:—

|               |                 |                           |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------------------|
| Of-rivers.    | From the-deity. | A-covering-of-the-breast. |
| Of-the-deity. | Of-the-kind.    | From the-time.            |
| O the-times!  | For-the-rivers. | With the-army.            |

---

## LESSON 19.

### Nouns in c, t, and a.

1. *Caput*, a head, and its compounds, the only nouns in *t*, are thus declined:—

| Singular.          | Term. | Plural.               | Term. |
|--------------------|-------|-----------------------|-------|
| N. Ac. V. ca'-put, | —     | N. Ac. V. cap'-i-ta,  | a,    |
| G. cap'-i-tis, is, |       | G. cap'-i-tum,        | um,   |
| D. cap'-i-ti, i,   |       | D. Ab. ca-pit'-i-bus. | ibus. |
| Ab. cap'-i-te; e;  |       |                       |       |

2. Nouns in *a* form their genitive in *atis*; as, *po-é-ma*, *po-em'-á-tis*, a poem.

| Singular.            | Term. | Plural.                          | Term.   |
|----------------------|-------|----------------------------------|---------|
| N. Ac. V. po-é-ma,   | —     | N. Ac. V. po-em'-á-ta,           | a,      |
| G. po-em'-á-tis, is, |       | G. po-em'-á-tum,                 | um,     |
| D. po-em'-á-ti, i,   |       | D. Ab. { po-em'-á-tis or } is or | { ibus. |
| Ab. po-em'-á-te; e;  |       | { po-e-mat'-i-bus. } ibus.       |         |

3. *I'-ter*, n., a journey, has a double increase, and is thus declined:—

| Singular.            | Term. | Plural.                 | Term. |
|----------------------|-------|-------------------------|-------|
| N. Ac. V. i'-ter,    | —     | N. Ac. V. i-tin'-é-ra.  | a,    |
| G. i-tin'-é-ris, is, |       | G. i-tin'-é-rum,        | um,   |
| D. i-tin'-é-ri, i,   |       | D. Ab. it-i-ner'-i-bus. | ibus. |
| Ab. i-tin'-é-re; e;  |       |                         |       |

4. *Alec* (or *halec*) *alēcis*, and *lac*, *lactis*, the only nouns in *c*, want the plural.

5. Nouns in *y* form their genitive in *os* or *s*; as, *misy*, *misyos*, or *misy*.

QUESTIONS.—What nouns end in */?* Decline *caput*. How do nouns in *a* form their genitive? Decline *poem*. What is said of the increase of *iter*? Decline

It. What is the root of *caput*?—of *poēma*?—of *iter*? What nouns end in *e*? Decline *loc.* How do nouns in *y* form their genitive?

## EXERCISE.

Translate into Latin:—

|                |                             |              |           |
|----------------|-----------------------------|--------------|-----------|
| For-the-head.  | Of-poems.                   | By-journeys. | By-kinds. |
| In-the-breast. | For-a-covering-of-the-body. |              | By-name.  |

Translate into English:—

|                             |          |                |
|-----------------------------|----------|----------------|
| In corpore.                 | Capitum. | In poēmatibus. |
| Sceleribus. ( <i>abl.</i> ) | Poēmata. | Capita.        |

---

## LESSON 20.

Nouns in *e*, *al*, and *ar*.

1. Nouns in *e* are declined like *se-dī'-le*, a seat: thus,

| <i>Singular.</i>            | <i>Term.</i> | <i>Plural.</i>                | <i>Term.</i> |
|-----------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>N. Ac. V.</i> se-dī'-le, | <i>e;</i>    | <i>N. Ac. V.</i> se-dīl'-i-a, | <i>ia;</i>   |
| <i>G.</i> se-dī'-lis,       | <i>is;</i>   | <i>G.</i> se-dīl'-i-um,       | <i>iūm;</i>  |
| <i>D. Ab.</i> se-dī'-li;    | <i>i;</i>    | <i>D. Ab.</i> se-dīl'-i-bus.  | <i>ibus.</i> |

2. Neuters in *al* and *ar* are declined like *an-i-mal*, an animal: thus,

| <i>Singular.</i>           | <i>Term.</i> | <i>Plural.</i>                  | <i>Term.</i> |
|----------------------------|--------------|---------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>N. Ac. V.</i> an-i-mal, | —            | <i>N. Ac. V.</i> an-i-ma'-li-a, | <i>ia;</i>   |
| <i>G.</i> an-i-ma'-lis,    | <i>is;</i>   | <i>G.</i> an-i-ma'-li-um,       | <i>iūm;</i>  |
| <i>D. Ab.</i> an-i-ma'-li; | <i>i;</i>    | <i>D. Ab.</i> an-i-ma'-li-bus.  | <i>ibus.</i> |

REMARK.—The following terminations of nouns of the third declension are exclusively Greek; viz., *ma*, *i*, *y*, *dn*, *in*, *gn*, *er*, *yr*, *ys*, *eus*, *yx*, *inx*, *ynx*, and plurals in *e*.

QUESTIONS.—Decline *sedile-animal*. What terminations of the third declension are masculine?—feminine?—neuter? In what do neuters of the third declension differ from masculines and feminines in the singular?—in the plural? In what do neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, differ from other neuters in the singular?—in the plural?

## EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of the following nouns in *e*, *al*, and *ar*:—

|                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| An-ci'-le, a shield.   | O-vi'-le, a sheepfold. |
| Cu-hi'-le, a couch.    | Vec-ti'-gal, a tax.    |
| Mo-ni'-le, a necklace. | Cal'-car, a spur.      |

Translate into Latin :—

|                             |                                      |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| For-a-shield.               | In the-sheep-folds of-the-shepherds. |
| The-taxes of-the-nation.    | By-the-shields of-the-soldiers.      |
| The-necklaces of-the-girls. | From the-necks of-the-animals.       |

Translate into English :—

|                          |                      |                 |
|--------------------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| Animali. ( <i>dat.</i> ) | Calcar militis.      | In viâ peditis. |
| Ancilia.                 | Cubilia hominum.     | In luco deorum. |
| Ovilium.                 | Monilia dearum.      | Cum filiabus.   |
| Ab insulis.              | A cubilibus hominum. | Cura animalium  |

## LESSON 21.

### Irregular Nouns.

The following nouns of the third declension are declined irregularly ; *Jupiter*, m. *Jupiter* ; *vis*, f. strength ; *bos*, m. or f. an ox or cow :—

| Singular.         | Singular.  | Plural.            |
|-------------------|------------|--------------------|
| N. V. Ju'-pi-ter, | N. V. vis, | N. Ac. V. vi'-res, |
| G. Jo'-vis,       | G. vis,    | G. vir'-i-um,      |
| D. Jo'-vi,        | D. —       | D. Ab. vir'-i-bus. |
| Ac. Jo'-vem,      | Ac. vim,   |                    |
| Ab. Jo'-ve.       | Ab. vi.    |                    |

| Singular.    | Plural.                    |
|--------------|----------------------------|
| N. V. bos,   | N. Ac. V. bo'-ves,         |
| G. bo'-vis,  | G. bo'-um,                 |
| D. bo'-vi,   | D. Ab. bo'-bus or bu'-bus. |
| Ac. bo'-vem, |                            |
| Ab. bo'-ve.  |                            |

### EXERCISE.

Decline *musa*—*dominus*—*gener*—*ager*—*regnum*—*honor*. What is the termination of the dat. sing. in the first declension ?—in the second ?—in the third ? What is the termination of the acc. sing. in the first declension ?—in the second ?—of masculines and feminines in the third ?—of the abl. sing. of the first ?—of the second ?—of the third ? (Answer: commonly *e*, but sometimes *i*.) What is the termination of the nom. pl. in masculines and feminines of the third declension ?—of the second ?—of the first ?—of neuters of the third ? (Answer: *a*,—sometimes *ia*)—of the second ? What is the termination of the genitive plural of the first declension ?—of the second ?

—of the third ? (Answer: *um*,—sometimes *iun*)—the termination of the dative and ablative plural of the first declension ?—of the second ?—of the third ?

---

## LESSON 22.

### NOMINATIVE SINGULAR.

**NOTE.**—The teacher will probably think it expedient to omit this and the following lesson until the book is reviewed.

Rules for forming the nominative singular of the third declension from the root.

I. Roots ending in *c, g; b, m, p; u, t, d; and some in r*, add *s* to form the nominative.

### REMARKS.

1. *t, d, and r, before s are dropped.*<sup>a</sup>
2. *c and g before s form x.*<sup>b</sup>
3. Short *i* in the root before *c, b, p, and t* is commonly changed to *e*.<sup>c</sup>
4. Short *e or o before r, in neuters, is changed to u.*<sup>d</sup>
5. Some roots, mostly monosyllabic, of masculines and feminines, add *es* or *is*, instead of *s* alone.

(a) So *bos* drops *v*, and *polis* and *sanguis* drop *n*.

(b) So *vs* from the root of *vis*. (c) So *ū* in *auceps*, *aucūpis*.

(d) So in *etūr*, *femur*, *fecur*, and *robur*, which do not take *s*. In the mass. and ~~īm~~, *ciniſ*, *cucūmis*, *pulvīs*, and *vomis*, *ē* is changed to *ī*.

The following words will illustrate the preceding rule and remarks:—

| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Root.</i> | <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Root.</i> | <i>Nom.</i> |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| Nepotis,    | nepot—,      | nepos.      | Principis,  | princip—,    | princeps.   |
| Laudis,     | laud—,       | laus.       | Comitis,    | comit—,      | comes.      |
| Floris,     | flor—,       | flos.       | Genēris,    | gener—,      | genus.      |
| Vocis,      | voc—,        | vox.        | Tempōris,   | tempor—,     | tempus.     |
| Regis,      | reg—,        | rex.        | Rupis,      | rup—,        | rupeſ.      |
| Pollisia,   | pollic—,     | pollex.     | Auris,      | aur—,        | auris.      |
| Cœlibis,    | cœlib—,      | cœlebs.     | Gruis,      | gru—,        | grus.       |

QUESTIONS.—What is the first rule for forming the nominative singular from the root? What letters are dropped before *s*? What is the rule for *c* and *g* before *s?* What is the rule for short *i* in the root before *c, b, p, and t?*—for short *e or o before r* in neuters? What roots add *es* or *is*?

## EXERCISE.

From the following genitives form the nominative singular :—

|                              |                     |                     |                     |
|------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Frigōris, <i>n.</i>          | Pollicis, <i>m.</i> | Virtūtis, <i>f.</i> | Fraudis, <i>f.</i>  |
| Æstatis, <i>f.</i>           | Clientis, <i>m.</i> | Moris, <i>m.</i>    | Tellūris, <i>f.</i> |
| Forcipis, <i>m. &amp; f.</i> | Alitis, <i>m.</i>   | Munēris, <i>m.</i>  | Montis, <i>m.</i>   |

---

## LESSON 23.

## NOMINATIVE SINGULAR—CONTINUED.

II. The nominative singular of roots ending in *l*, *n*, *r*, and of neuters in *t*, commonly takes no grammatical termination.

## REMARKS.

1. *on* (long), and *in* (short), in the root of masculines and feminines, become *o.<sup>a</sup>*.
2. *in* (short) in neuters, becomes *ēn.<sup>b</sup>*
3. *tr* and *br*, at the end of a root, take *e* between them.
4. In the root of neuters *at* drops *t*, and *it* becomes *ut.*
5. A few neuters add *e* to the root.
6. Roots ending in a repeated consonant drop one in the nominative.

NOTE. 1.—*t* in *hepar* is changed to *r.*

NOTE. 2.—*Lec* drops *t*, and *cor* drops *d.*

(a) So likewise *ēn* in *Anio* and *Nerio.* (b) So in *oscon*, *pecten*, *tibicos*, and *tubicen.*

NOTE 3.—Some exceptions to these rules, and to those concerning the gender and genitive of the third declension, may be found in the Appendix.

The following words will illustrate the preceding rule and remarks :—

| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Root.</i> | <i>Nom.</i>       |
|-------------|--------------|-------------------|
| Animális,   | animal—,     | animal, <i>n.</i> |
| Canónis,    | canon—,      | canon, <i>m.</i>  |
| Honoris,    | honor—,      | honor, <i>m.</i>  |
| Sermónis,   | sermon—,     | sermo, <i>m.</i>  |
| Arundinís,  | arundin—,    | arundo, <i>f.</i> |
| Fluminis,   | flumin—,     | flumen, <i>n.</i> |
| Patris,     | patr—,       | pater, <i>m.</i>  |
| Imbris,     | imbr—,       | imber, <i>m.</i>  |
| Poëmatis,   | poëmat—,     | poëma, <i>n.</i>  |
| Retis,      | ret—,        | rete, <i>n.</i>   |
| Fellis,     | fell—,       | fel, <i>n.</i>    |

QUESTIONS.—What is the second rule for forming the nominative singular from the root? What terminations in the root become *e* in the nominative singular?—what becomes *en*? What is the rule for *ir* and *er* at the end of a root?—for *at* in the root of neuters? What adds *e* to the root?

## EXERCISE.

From the following genitives form the nominative singular:—

|                     |                     |                      |                       |
|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| Legionis, <i>f.</i> | Matris, <i>f.</i>   | Dogmatis, <i>n.</i>  | Originis, <i>f.</i>   |
| Virginis, <i>f.</i> | Octobris, <i>m.</i> | Animalis, <i>n.</i>  | Delphinis, <i>m.</i>  |
| Agminis, <i>n.</i>  | Ancilis, <i>n.</i>  | Prædonis, <i>m.</i>  | Criminis, <i>n.</i>   |
| Farris, <i>n.</i>   | Capitis, <i>n.</i>  | Imparis, <i>adj.</i> | Volucris, <i>adj.</i> |

## LESSON 24.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

## ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

1. Some nouns in *is*, not increasing, have their accusative singular in *em* or *im*; and some, especially names of places, rivers, and gods, in *im* alone; as,

*Turris*, a tower, G. *turris*, Ac. *turrem* or *turrim*.  
*Tibēris*, the Tiber, G. *Tibēris*, Ac. *Tibērim*.

2. Greek nouns form their accusative in *im*, *in*, or *a*; as, *Paris*, *Parim*, *aēr*, *aera*.

## ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

3. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative; as.  
*Sedile*, n. a seat, G. *sedilis*, Ab. *sedili*.

4. Nouns having *im* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as,

*Turris*, a tower, Ac. *turrem* or *turrim*, Ab. *turri* or *turri*.  
*Tibēris*, the Tiber, Ac. *Tibērim*, Ab. *Tibēri*.

## NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

5. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *ia* in the nominative plural; as,

*Sedile*, n. a seat, N. pl. *sedilia*.

## GENITIVE PLURAL.

6. Nouns which have *i* in the ablative singular, have *ium* in the genitive plural; as,

*Sedile*, n. a seat, Ab. sing. *sedili*, G. pl. *sedilium*.

7. Nouns in *es* and *is*, not increasing, have *ium*; as,  
*Rupes*, a rock, G. *rups*, G. pl. *rupium*.

8. Nouns in *ns* and *rs*, names of nations in *as*, and monosyllables ending in two consonants, have *ium*; as,

*Cliens*, a client, G. *clientis*, G. pl. *clientium*.

*Urbs*, a city, G. *urbis*, G. pl. *urbium*.

QUESTIONS.—What nouns are excepted in the accusative singular? How do Greek nouns form their accusative? What nouns have *i* in the ablative singular? What neuters have *is* in the nominative plural? What is the first class of nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural?—the second?—the third?

---

## LESSON 25.

## FOURTH DECLENNION.

1. Nouns in *us* of the fourth declension are masculine; those in *u* are neuter.

2. Nouns in *us* are declined like *fruc'-tus*, fruit: thus,

| Singular.                            | Term.      | Plural.                      | Term.         |
|--------------------------------------|------------|------------------------------|---------------|
| N. V. <i>fruc'-tus</i> , <i>us</i> , |            | N. Ac. V. <i>fruc'-tus</i> , | <i>us</i> ,   |
| G. <i>fruc'-tūs</i> , <i>ūs</i> ,    |            | G. <i>fruc'-tu-um</i> ,      | <i>uum</i> ,  |
| D. <i>fruc'-tu-i</i> , <i>ui</i> ,   |            | D. Ab. <i>fruc'-ti-bus</i> . | <i>ibus</i> . |
| Ac. <i>fruc'-tum</i> , <i>um</i> ,   |            |                              |               |
| Ab. <i>fruc'-tu</i> ;                | <i>u</i> ; |                              |               |

3. *Cor'-nu*, a horn, is thus declined:—

| Singular.                               | Term. | Plural.                      | Term.         |
|-----------------------------------------|-------|------------------------------|---------------|
| N. D. Ac. { <i>cor'-nu</i> , <i>u</i> , |       | N. Ac. V. <i>cor'-nu-a</i> , | <i>ua</i> ,   |
| V. Ab. } <i>cor'-nūs</i> ; <i>us</i> ;  |       | G. <i>cor'-nu-um</i> ,       | <i>uum</i> ,  |
| G. <i>cor'-nūs</i> ;                    |       | D. Ab. <i>cor'-ni-bus</i> .  | <i>ibus</i> . |

QUESTIONS.—How do masculines of the fourth declension end?—neuters? Decline *fruc'tus*—*cornu*. What are the terminations of the several cases of masculines in the singular?—in the plural?—of neuters in the singular?—in the plural? What is the root of *fructus*?—of *cornu*?

## EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of the following nouns:—

|                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Can'-tus, a song.</i>       | <i>Fluc'-tus, a wave.</i>      |
| <i>Cur'-rus, a chariot.</i>    | <i>Mo'-tus, motion.</i>        |
| <i>Ex-er'-ci-tus, an army.</i> | <i>Se-na'-tus, the senate.</i> |

Translate into Latin:—

|                                     |                                       |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>The-fruits of-summer.</i>        | <i>The-chariots of-the-armies.</i>    |
| <i>By-the-fruit of-the-tree.</i>    | <i>By-the-motion of-the-chariots.</i> |
| <i>By-the-motions of-the-waves.</i> | <i>The-songs of-the-birds.</i>        |
| <i>The-honor of-the-senate.</i>     | <i>For-the-senate of-the-nation.</i>  |

Translate into English:—

|                                  |                                 |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Fructibus (abl.) arbōrum.</i> | <i>Cornua dracōnis.</i>         |
| <i>Exercitui regis.</i>          | <i>Motu fluctūs.</i>            |
| <i>Cornu (nom.) ovis.</i>        | <i>Cantus (sing.) pastōria.</i> |
| <i>Delphin in fluctibus.</i>     | <i>Cornibus (abl.) ariētia.</i> |

## LESSON 26.

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER

1. Feminine are these in *us*,  
*Tribus, acus, porticus,*  
 The plurals, *idus* and *quinquadibus*,  
 With *domus, nurus, socrus, anus*.  
*Colus*, with names of trees, and *manus*.

2. *Penus*, when of the fourth declension, is commonly feminine; *specus* is rarely feminine or neuter, and the defective *secus*, *sex*, is always neuter.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

3. *Domus*, a house, is partly of the fourth declension and partly of the second It is thus declined:—

| <i>Singular.</i>               | <i>Plural.</i>                      |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>N. V. do'-mus,</i>          | <i>N. V. do'-mus,</i>               |
| <i>G. do'-mūs, or do'-mi,</i>  | <i>G. dom'-u-um, or do-mō'-rum,</i> |
| <i>D. dom'-u-i, or do'-mo,</i> | <i>D. Ab. dom'-i-bus,</i>           |
| <i>Ac. do'-mum,</i>            | <i>Ac. do'-mus, or do'-mos.</i>     |
| <i>Ab. — do'-mo;</i>           |                                     |

REMARK 1.—*Domī* commonly signifies *at home*, or at a specified house.

4. The dative and the ablative  
 Of *acus*, *arcus*, *artus*,  
 Of *lacus*, *specus*, *tribus* too,  
 Of *pecu* and of *partus*,  
 In *ibus* must be always formed;  
 But *genu*, *veru*, *portus*,  
 Sometimes in *ibus* may be found,  
 And sometimes, too, in *ibus*.

**REMARK 2.**—Some nouns of the fourth declension have a genitive in *i*, and sometimes other forms belonging to the second declension; as, *sendius*, gen. *senatus* or *senditi*.

**REMARK 3.**—Nouns of this declension originally belonged to the third declension, and were formed by contraction; as, N. *fructus*, G. *fructus*-*us*, D. *fructi*-*u*, &c.

**REMARK 4.**—The contracted dative in *u* occurs in Cæsar, and occasionally in other authors; as, *equitatu* for *equitatis*.

**QUESTIONS.**—Of what declensions is *domus*? In what case does it follow the 2d dec. only? In what cases the 4th only? What is the signification of *domi*? What words of the 4th declension are feminine? What words are excepted in the dat. and abl. plural?

## LESSON 27.

### FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are feminine.

They are declined like *res*, a thing, and *dies*, a day:

| Singular.            | Term.                         | Plural.                | Term.                                           |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| N. V. <i>res</i> ,   | <i>di'-es</i> , <i>es</i> ,   | N. Ac. V. <i>res</i> , | <i>di'-es</i> , <i>es</i> ,                     |
| G. D. <i>re'-i</i> , | <i>di'-e'-i</i> , <i>ei</i> , | G.                     | <i>re'-rum</i> , <i>di'-rum</i> , <i>ērum</i> , |
| Ac.                  | <i>rem</i> ,                  | D. Ab.                 | <i>re'-bus</i> . <i>di'-bus</i> . <i>ēbus</i> . |
| Ab.                  | <i>re</i> ;                   | <i>di'-e</i> ;         | <i>e</i> ;                                      |

#### Exception.

*Dies* is either masculine or feminine in the singular, and only masculine in the plural.

#### REMARKS.

1. In the genitive and dative singular *e* or *i* is sometimes found instead of *ei*; and *es* also was an ancient termination of the genitive singular.

2. Of nouns of the fifth declension, only *res* and *dies* are complete

in the plural. *Acies, facies, effigies, series, species*, and *spes* are found in the nominative and accusative plural; *glacies* and *progenies* in the accusative, the other nouns of this declension have no plural.

3. Some nouns of the fifth declension have forms belonging to the first; as, *luxuries* and *luxuria*.

4. In this declension, *e* in the last syllable of the nominative, though found in all the cases, is considered as a part of the termination.

#### COMPOUND NOUNS.

1. When a compound noun consists of two nominatives, both parts are declined; as,

*N.* res-publica,  
*G.* rei-publice, &c.

*N.* jus-jurandum,  
*G.* juris-jurandi, &c.

2. When one part of a compound noun is a nominative and the other an oblique case, the nominative only is declined; as,

*N.* pater-familias,  
*G.* patris-familias, &c. See L. 8.

QUESTIONS.—Of what gender are nouns of the fifth declension?—of the first? What word in the fifth declension is excepted? Decline *res—dies*. What is the root of *res*?—of *dies*? In what other declension are the genitive and dative singular alike? How do these cases end in the fifth declension—in the first? In what declensions does the dative singular end in *i*? In what declensions does the dative plural end in *ibus*?—in *is*? What is the termination of the genitive plural in each of the several declensions? With what two letters does the genitive plural always end? In which of the declensions are three cases always alike in the plural? What is the termination of the accusative plural of masculines and feminines in each declension? When a compound noun consists of two nominatives, how is it declined?—when it consists of a nominative and an oblique case?

#### COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE DECLENSIONS.

1. Neuter nouns belong to the second, third or fourth declensions.

2. Neuters have three cases alike—the nominative, accusative and vocative, and these cases in the plural end in *a*.

3. The accusative singular of masculines and feminines ends in *m*—in the 1st decl. in *am*, in the 2d and 4th in *um*, in the 3d and 5th in *em*.

4. The vocative singular of all Latin nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension, is like the nominative.

5. The nominative and vocative plural are always alike.

6. The genitive plural ends in *um*, viz., in *drum*, *orum*, *um* (*ium*), *um*, or *trum*.

7. The dative and ablative plural end alike—in the 1st and 2d declensions in *is*, in the 3d and 4th in *ibus*, in the 5th in *ebus*.

8. The accusative plural of masculines and feminines ends in *s*, viz., in *as*, *os*, *es*, or *us*.

## COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE DECLENSIONS. NO. I.

## MASCULINES AND FEMININES.

I.

II.

III.

IV.

V.

Terminations:—a. us, er, ir. er, or, es, os, &amp;c. us. es.

*Singular.*

|                     |             |             |             |        |
|---------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|--------|
| <i>N.</i> mu'-sa,   | dom'-i-nus, | ho'-nor,    | fruc'-tus,  | res,   |
| <i>G.</i> mu'-sa,   | dom'-i-ni,  | ho-nō'-rie, | fruc'-tis,  | re'-i, |
| <i>D.</i> mu'-sa,   | dom'-i-na,  | ho-nō'-ri,  | fruc'-tu-i, | re'-i, |
| <i>Ac.</i> mu'-san, | dom'-i-nam, | ho-nō'-rem, | fruc'-tum,  | rem,   |
| <i>V.</i> mu'-sa,   | dom'-i-na,  | ho'-nor,    | fruc'-tus,  | res,   |
| <i>Ab.</i> mu'-sa;  | dom'-i-no;  | ho-nō'-re;  | fruc'-tus;  | res;   |

*Plural.*

|                       |                |                |               |          |
|-----------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|----------|
| <i>N.</i> mu'-sa,     | dom'-i-ni,     | ho-nō'-res,    | fruc'-tus,    | res,     |
| <i>G.</i> mu-sō'-rum, | dom-i-nō'-rum, | ho-nō'-rum,    | fruc'-tu-um,  | re'-rum, |
| <i>D.</i> mu'-sas,    | dom'-i-nis,    | ho-nor'-i-bus, | fruc'-ti-bus, | re'-bus, |
| <i>Ac.</i> mu'-sas,   | dom'-i-nos,    | ho-nō'-res,    | fruc'-tus,    | res,     |
| <i>V.</i> mu'-sa,     | dom'-i-ni,     | ho-nō'-res,    | fruc'-tus,    | res,     |
| <i>Ab.</i> mu'-sas.   | dom'-i-nis.    | ho-nor'-i-bus. | fruc'-ti-bus. | re'-bus  |

## NEUTERS.

II.

III.

IV.

Terminations:—um. e, i, y, e, i, a, &amp;c.

a

*Singular.*

|                      |              |           |
|----------------------|--------------|-----------|
| <i>N.</i> reg'-num,  | car'-men,    | cor'-nu,  |
| <i>G.</i> reg'-ni,   | car'-mi-nis, | cor'-nua, |
| <i>D.</i> reg'-no,   | car'-mi-ni,  | cor'-nu,  |
| <i>Ac.</i> reg'-num, | car'-men,    | cor'-nu,  |
| <i>V.</i> reg'-num,  | car'-men,    | cor'-nu,  |
| <i>Ab.</i> reg'-no;  | car'-mi-nis; | cor'-nu;  |

*Plural.*

|                        |                 |              |
|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| <i>N.</i> reg'-na,     | car'-mi-na,     | cor'-nu-a,   |
| <i>G.</i> reg-nō'-rum, | car'-mi-num,    | cor'-nu-um,  |
| <i>D.</i> reg'-nis,    | car-min'-i-bus, | cor'-ni-bus, |
| <i>Ac.</i> reg'-na,    | car'-mi-na,     | cor'-nu-a,   |
| <i>V.</i> reg'-na,     | car'-mi-na,     | cor'-nu-a,   |
| <i>Ab.</i> reg'-nis.   | car-min'-i-bus. | cor'-ni-bus  |

## COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE DECLENSIONS. NO. II.

| L.                                                                                                              | II.                                                                                                                                                 | III.<br>MASCULINES AND FEMININES.                                                                                    | IV.                                                                                                                  | V.                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Terminations :—<i>g.</i></b>                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                      |
| N. V. mu'- <i>se</i> ,<br><i>G.</i> D. mu'- <i>se</i> ,<br>Ac. mu'- <i>sem</i> ,<br>Ab. mu'- <i>se</i> ;        | N. dom'-i- <i>nus</i> ,<br><i>G.</i> dom'-i- <i>ni</i> ,<br><i>D.</i> Ab. dom'-i- <i>na</i> ,<br>Ac. dom'-i- <i>nus</i> ,<br>V. dom'-i- <i>na</i> ; | N. V.<br>G. ho-nō'- <i>re</i> ,<br>D. ho-nō'- <i>re</i> ,<br>Ac. ho-nō'- <i>rem</i> ,<br>Ab. ho-nō'- <i>re</i> ;     | N. V.<br>G. fruc'-i- <i>ta</i> ,<br>D. fruc'-i- <i>ta</i> ,<br>Ac. fruc'-i- <i>tum</i> ,<br>Ab. fruc'-i- <i>ta</i> ; | N. V.<br>G. fruc'-i- <i>ta</i> ,<br>D. fruc'-i- <i>ta</i> ,<br>Ac. fruc'-i- <i>tum</i> ,<br>Ab. fruc'-i- <i>ta</i> ; |
| N. V. mu'- <i>se</i> ,<br><i>G.</i> mu'- <i>sem</i> ,<br><i>D.</i> Ab. mu'- <i>se</i> ,<br>Ac. mu'- <i>se</i> . | N. V. dom'-i- <i>ni</i> ,<br><i>G.</i> dom'-i- <i>no</i> - <i>rum</i> ,<br><i>D.</i> Ab. dom'-i- <i>nia</i> ,<br>Ac. dom'-i- <i>ne</i> .            | N. Ac. V. ho-nō'- <i>re</i> ,<br>G. ho-nō'- <i>rem</i> ,<br>D. Ab. ho-nō'-i- <i>bus</i> ,<br>Ac. dom'-i- <i>ne</i> . | N. Ac. V. fruc'-i- <i>ta</i> ,<br>G. fruc'-i- <i>ta</i> ,<br>D. Ab. fruc'-i- <i>ta</i> .                             | N. Ac. V. ref.,<br>G. ref.- <i>ram</i> ,<br>D. Ab. ref.- <i>bus</i> .                                                |
| <b>Terminations :—<i>us.</i></b>                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                      |
| N. Ac. V. reg'- <i>num</i> ,<br><i>G.</i> reg'- <i>ni</i> ,<br><i>D.</i> Ab. reg'- <i>no</i> ;                  | N. Ac. V. car'- <i>men</i> ,<br>G. car'- <i>ni</i> ,<br>D. Ab. car'- <i>ni</i> ;                                                                    | N. Ac. V. cor'- <i>ma</i> ,<br>G. cor'- <i>num</i> ,<br>D. Ab. cor'- <i>ma</i> ;                                     | N. Ac. V. cor'- <i>ma</i> ,<br>G. cor'- <i>num</i> ,<br>D. Ab. cor'- <i>ma</i> ;                                     | N. Ac. V. cor'- <i>ma</i> ,<br>G. cor'- <i>num</i> ,<br>D. Ab. cor'- <i>ma</i> .                                     |
| <b>Terminations :—<i>us.</i></b>                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Singular.</b>                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                      |
| N. Ac. V. car'- <i>men</i> ,<br>G. car'- <i>ni</i> ,<br>D. Ab. car'- <i>ni</i> ;                                | N. Ac. V. cor'- <i>ma</i> ,<br>G. cor'- <i>num</i> ,<br>D. Ab. cor'- <i>ma</i> ;                                                                    | N. Ac. V. cor'- <i>ma</i> ,<br>G. cor'- <i>num</i> ,<br>D. Ab. cor'- <i>ma</i> ;                                     | N. Ac. V. cor'- <i>ma</i> ,<br>G. cor'- <i>num</i> ,<br>D. Ab. cor'- <i>ma</i> ;                                     | N. Ac. V. cor'- <i>ma</i> ,<br>G. cor'- <i>num</i> ,<br>D. Ab. cor'- <i>ma</i> .                                     |
| <b>Plural.</b>                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                      |
| N. Ac. V. car'- <i>men</i> ,<br>G. car'- <i>ni</i> - <i>rum</i> ,<br>D. Ab. car'- <i>ni</i> .                   | N. Ac. V. cor'- <i>ma</i> ,<br>G. cor'- <i>num</i> - <i>bus</i> ,<br>D. Ab. cor'- <i>ma</i> .                                                       | N. Ac. V. cor'- <i>ma</i> ,<br>G. cor'- <i>num</i> - <i>bus</i> ,<br>D. Ab. cor'- <i>ma</i> .                        | N. Ac. V. cor'- <i>ma</i> ,<br>G. cor'- <i>num</i> - <i>bus</i> ,<br>D. Ab. cor'- <i>ma</i> .                        | N. Ac. V. cor'- <i>ma</i> ,<br>G. cor'- <i>num</i> - <i>bus</i> ,<br>D. Ab. cor'- <i>ma</i> .                        |
| <b>Neutres.</b>                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                      |
| N. Ac. V. car'- <i>men</i> ,<br>G. car'- <i>ni</i> ,<br>D. Ab. car'- <i>ni</i> ;                                | N. Ac. V. cor'- <i>ma</i> ,<br>G. cor'- <i>num</i> ,<br>D. Ab. cor'- <i>ma</i> ;                                                                    | N. Ac. V. cor'- <i>ma</i> ,<br>G. cor'- <i>num</i> ,<br>D. Ab. cor'- <i>ma</i> ;                                     | N. Ac. V. cor'- <i>ma</i> ,<br>G. cor'- <i>num</i> ,<br>D. Ab. cor'- <i>ma</i> ;                                     | N. Ac. V. cor'- <i>ma</i> ,<br>G. cor'- <i>num</i> ,<br>D. Ab. cor'- <i>ma</i> .                                     |

## LESSON 28.

## ADJECTIVES.

1. An adjective is a word which qualifies or limits the meaning of a noun.

Thus in the phrases, a good pen, a sharp knife, a white horse, a mellow apple, a free people, rough stones; the words, *good*, *sharp*, *white*, &c., limit the meaning of the nouns, *pen*, *knife*, *horse*, &c., which, without some word to limit them, would signify, any pen, any knife, &c.

2. Latin adjectives are declined like nouns of the same terminations.
3. Some adjectives are of the first and second declensions, their feminine gender being of the first declension, and their masculine and neuter of the second.
4. Some adjectives are of the third declension in all their genders.
5. The adjective is always of the same gender, number, and case, as its noun, but it is often of a different declension.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is an adjective? How are Latin adjectives declined? Of what declensions are adjectives? When an adjective is of the first and second declensions, to which declension does its feminine gender belong?—its masculine?—its neuter? In what respects must an adjective agree with its noun? In what may it differ?

## EXERCISE.

Name the adjectives in the following sentences:—

A good tree cannot bear evil fruit, nor a corrupt tree good fruit. The ancient Romans were temperate and brave. Ten men composed the laws of the twelve tables. Great men are not always wise. No man putteth a piece of new cloth unto an old garment. Write ten English sentences containing adjectives.

**QUESTIONS ON THE EXERCISES.**—Why is *good* an adjective? Answer. Because it expresses the quality of the noun *tree*; and “An adjective is a word which qualifies or limits the meaning of a noun,” &c.

## LESSON 29.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

1. The masculine gender of adjectives of the first and second declensions ends in *us* or *er*, (except *satur*, full;) the feminine in *a*, and the neuter in *um*.

*Adjectives in us, a, um.*

2. The masculine in *us* is declined like *dominus*, the feminine like *musa*, and the neuter like *regnum*.

*Bonus*, good, is thus declined:—

*Singular.*

| <i>Masc.</i>          | <i>Fem.</i>           | <i>Neut.</i>                     |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> bo'-nus,    | <i>N. V.</i> bo'-na,  | <i>N. Ac.</i> <i>V.</i> bo'-num, |
| <i>G.</i> bo'-ni,     | <i>G. D.</i> bo'-nas, | <i>G.</i> bo'-ni,                |
| <i>D. Ab.</i> bo'-no, | <i>Ac.</i> bo'-nam,   | <i>D. Ab.</i> bo'-no;            |
| <i>Ac.</i> bo'-num,   | <i>Ab.</i> bo'-na;    |                                  |
| <i>V.</i> bo'-ne;     |                       |                                  |

*Plural.*

|                        |                        |                                 |
|------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>N. V.</i> bo'-ni,   | <i>N. V.</i> bo'-nae,  | <i>N. Ac.</i> <i>V.</i> bo'-na, |
| <i>G.</i> bo'-no-rum,  | <i>G.</i> bo'-na-rum,  | <i>G.</i> bo'-no-rum,           |
| <i>D. Ab.</i> bo'-nis, | <i>D. Ab.</i> bo'-nis, | <i>D. Ab.</i> bo'-nia.          |
| <i>Ac.</i> bo'-nos.    | <i>Ac.</i> bo'-nos.    |                                 |

NOTE 1.—All participles in *us*, and superlatives are declined like *bonus*; as, *amatus*, loved; *altissimus*, highest.

NOTE 2.—*Meus* has *mi* in the vocative singular masculine; as, *mi amice*, my friend.—*Meus*, *tus*, and *sus* are possessive adjective pronouns.

QUESTIONS.—How does the masculine gender of adjectives of the first and second declensions end?—the feminine?—the neuter? How are adjectives in *us*, *a*, and *um* declined? Decline the masculine of *bonus*—the feminine—the neuter. What classes of words are declined like *bonus*? What is the vocative singular masculine of *meus*?

## EXERCISE.

Decline like *bonus* the following adjectives:—

|                      |                                |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| Al'-tus, high.       | Lon'-gus, long.                |
| A-va'-rus, covetous. | Ple'-nus, full.                |
| Be-nig'-nus, kind.   | Me'-us, my.                    |
| Fi'-duis, faithful.  | Tu'-us, thy.                   |
| In-i'-quus, unjust.  | Su'-us, his, hers, its, their. |

Write out and repeat the declension of the following nouns with their respective adjectives, putting each in the same case:—

Bonus amicus, *m.*, *a good friend.*

Bona mensa, *f.*, *a good table.*

Bonum exemplum, *n.*, *a good example.*

Thus, *N.* bo'-nus a-mi'-cus,

*G.* bo'-ni a-mi'-ci,

*D. Ab.* bo'-no a-mi'-co, &c.

## LESSON 30.

### *Adjectives in er, a, um.*

1. The feminine and neuter of adjectives in *us* and *er* are formed by adding *a* and *um* to the root of the masculine.

2. The masculine gender of a few adjectives in *er* is declined without syncopation, like *gener*.

In this manner is declined *tener*, tender:—

#### Singular.

##### *Masc.*

*N. V.* te'-ner,

*G.* ten'-ē-ri,

*D. Ab.* ten'-ē-ro,

*Ac.* ten'-ē-rum;

##### *Fem.*

*N. V.* ten'-ē-ra,

*G. D.* ten'-ē-ræ,

*Ac.* ten'-ē-ræ,

##### *Neut.*

*N. Ac. V.* ten'-ē-rum,

*G.* ten'-ē-ri,

*D. Ab.* ten'-ē-ro;

*Ab.* ten'-ē-rā;

#### Plural.

*N. V.* ten'-ē-ri,

*G.* ten-e-rō'-rum,

*D. Ab.* ten'-ē-ris,

*Ac.* ten'-ē-ros.

*N. V.* ten'-ē-ræ,

*G.* ten-e-rā'-rum,

*D. Ab.* ten'-ē-ris,

*Ac.* ten'-ē-ras.

*N. Ac. V.* ten'-ē-ra,

*G.* ten-e-rō'-ram

*D. Ab.* ten'-ē-ris.

*Ab.* ten'-ē-ras.

QUESTIONS.—How are the feminine and neuter of adjectives in *us* and *er* formed? What is the root of *tener*? Like what noun is *tener* declined in the masculine gender?—in the feminine?—in the neuter?

#### EXERCISE.

Form the feminine and neuter of the following adjectives, declined like *tener*:—

As'-per, *rough.*

La'-cer, *torn.*

Li'-ber, *free.*

Mi'-ser, *miserable.*

Sa'-tur, *full.*

Write out the declension of *as'-per* in the masculine—of *tu'-ber* in the feminine—of *sa'-tur* in the neuter.

Write out the declension of *tener puer*, a tender boy—of *tenēra puella*, a tender girl—of *tenērum virgultum*, a tender shrub, making the adjective and its noun to agree in gender, number, and case.

---

## LESSON 31.

### *Syncopated Adjectives in er.*

Most adjectives in *er* drop *e* in declension, like *ager*.  
They are declined like *piger*, slothful: thus,

| <i>Singular.</i>       |                       |                            |
|------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Masc.</i>           | <i>Fem.</i>           | <i>Neut.</i>               |
| <i>N. V.</i> pi'-ger,  | <i>N. V.</i> pi'-gra, | <i>N. Ac. V.</i> pi'-grum, |
| <i>G.</i> pi'-gri,     | <i>G. D.</i> pi'-gra, | <i>G.</i> pi'-gri,         |
| <i>D. Ab.</i> pi'-gro, | <i>Ac.</i> pi'-gram,  | <i>D. Ab.</i> pi'-gro;     |
| <i>Ac.</i> pi'-grum;   | <i>Ab.</i> pi'-gra;   |                            |

| <i>Plural.</i>          |                         |                           |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>N. V.</i>            | <i>N. V.</i>            | <i>N. Ac. V.</i>          |
| <i>N. V.</i> pi'-gri,   | <i>N. V.</i> pi'-gra,   | <i>N. Ac. V.</i> pi'-gra, |
| <i>G.</i> pi'-grō'-rum, | <i>G.</i> pi'-gra'-rum, | <i>G.</i> pi'-grō'-rum,   |
| <i>D. Ab.</i> pi'-gris, | <i>D. Ab.</i> pi'-gris, | <i>D. Ab.</i> pi'-gris.   |
| <i>Ac.</i> pi'-gros.    | <i>Ac.</i> pi'-gras.    |                           |

### EXERCISE.

Form the feminine and neuter of the following adjectives, declined like *piger*:—

|                             |                               |                          |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>A'-ger</i> , sick.       | <i>Nt'-ger</i> , black.       | <i>Sa'-cer</i> , sacred. |
| <i>Cre'-ber</i> , frequent. | <i>Pul'-cher</i> , beautiful. | <i>Nos'-ter</i> ,* our.  |
| <i>In'-ti-ger</i> , entire. | <i>Ru'-ber</i> , red.         | <i>Ves'-ter</i> ,* your. |

Write out the declension of *creber* in the masculine gender—or *pulcher* in the feminine—of *noster* in the neuter.

Write out the declension of *noster ager*, our field—of *sacra insula*, a sacred island—of *vestrum donum*, your gift.

Write out the declension of *niger corvus*, a black raven, where

\* This is a possessive adjective pronoun?

the adjective, though of the same declension as its noun, has a different form in its nominative and vocative singular: thus,

- |               |                      |
|---------------|----------------------|
| <i>N.</i>     | ni'-ger cor'-vus,    |
| <i>G.</i>     | ni'-gri cor'-vi,     |
| <i>D. Ab.</i> | ni'-gro cor'-vo, &c. |

Write out the declension of *bonus pater*, a good father—*bones* being of the second declension and *pater* of the third: thus,

| <i>Singular.</i>              | <i>Plural.</i>                        |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> bo'-nus pa'-ter,    | <i>N. V.</i> bo'-ni pa'-tres,         |
| <i>G.</i> bo'-ni pa'-tris,    | <i>G.</i> bo-no'-rum pa'-trum,        |
| <i>D.</i> bo'-no pa'-tri, &c. | <i>D. Ab.</i> bo'-nis pa'-ri-bus, &c. |

Write out the declension of *alta populus*, a tall poplar—*populus* being a feminine noun of the second declension, by the second general rule of gender. Less. 5.

Write out the declension of *mons sacer*, a sacred mountain: thus,

- |                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>N. V.</i> mons sacer. | <i>G.</i> montis sacri, &c. |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|

**Note.**—The adjective is often placed thus after its noun.

---

## LESSON 32.

### *Adjectives in us and er, genitive ius.*

1. Six adjectives in *us* and three in *er* have their genitive singular in *ius*, and dative in *i*, in all genders. In their other cases they are declined like *bonus*, *tener*, or *piger*.

Those in *us* are:—

- |                                   |                        |                          |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>A'</i> -li-us, <i>another.</i> | To'-ius, <i>whole.</i> | Ul'-ius, <i>any one.</i> |
| So'-lus, <i>alone.</i>            | U'-nus, <i>one.</i>    | Nul'-ius, <i>no one.</i> |

2. *Unus* is thus declined in the singular number:—

| <i>Masc.</i>        | <i>Fem.</i>         | <i>Neut.</i>                    |
|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> u'-nus,   | <i>N. V.</i> u'-na, | <i>N. Ac.</i> <i>V.</i> u'-num, |
| <i>G.</i> u-ni'-us, | <i>G.</i> u-ni'-us, | <i>G.</i> u-ni'-us,             |
| <i>D.</i> u'-ni,    | <i>D.</i> u'-ni,    | <i>D.</i> u'-ni,                |
| <i>Ac.</i> u'-num,  | <i>Ac.</i> u'-nam,  | <i>Ab.</i> u'-no.               |
| <i>V.</i> u'-ne,    | <i>Ab.</i> u'-na.   |                                 |
| <i>Ab.</i> u'-no.   |                     |                                 |

3. REMARK.—*Alius* has *aliud* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter, and *a-li'-us* in the genitive.

*Note*.—In the genitives in *ius*, *i* is sometimes short in poetry, except in *alius*. L. 3, and L. 2.

4. The adjectives in *er*, which have *ius* in the genitive and *i* in the dative, are:—

*Al'-ter*, *the other*; *u'-ter*, *which (of the two)*; and *neu'-ter*, *neither (of the two)*; with their compounds.

5. *Al'-ter* is thus declined:—

| <i>Singular.</i>         |                          |                              |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Masc.</i>             | <i>Fem.</i>              | <i>Neut.</i>                 |
| <i>N. V.</i> al'-ter,    | <i>N. V.</i> al'-tō-ra,  | <i>N. Ac. V.</i> al'-tō-rum, |
| <i>G.</i> al-te'-ri-us,  | <i>G.</i> al-te'-ri-us,  | <i>G.</i> al-te'-ri-us,      |
| <i>D.</i> al'-tō-ri, &c. | <i>D.</i> al'-tō-ri, &c. | <i>D.</i> al'-tō-ri, &c.     |

In the other parts it is declined like *tener*.

6. *Uter* and *neuter* are thus declined:—

| <i>Singular.</i>     |                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>N. V.</i>         | <i>N. V.</i>         | <i>N. Ac. V.</i>     |
| <i>u'-ter</i> ,      | <i>u'-tra</i> ,      | <i>u'-trum</i> ,     |
| <i>G.</i> u-tri'-us, | <i>G.</i> u-tri'-us, | <i>G.</i> u-tri'-us, |

*D.* u'-tri, &c. *D.* u'-tri, &c. *D.* u'-tri, &c.

In the other parts they are declined like *piger*.

7. *Uterque*, both or each, is declined like *uter*, but has *que* annexed to all its parts; as,

*N. V.* u-ter'-que, u'-trā-que, u-trum'-que; *G.* u-tri-us'-que, &c.

#### EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of *alter homo*, the other man—of *u'-trā-que manus*, each hand; *manus* being a feminine noun of the fourth declension. Less. 26.

## L E S S O N 33.

*Duo* and *ambo*.

*Duo*, two, and *ambo*, both, are declined irregularly: thus,

| Plural.               |                   |                   |
|-----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Masc.                 | Fem.              | Neut.             |
| N. V. du'-o,          | N. V. du'-se.     | N. Ac. V. du'-ð,  |
| G. du-ð'-rum,         | G. du-ð'-rum,     | G. du-ð'-rum,     |
| D. Ab. du-ð'-bus,     | D. Ab. du-ð'-bus, | D. Ab. du-ð'-bus. |
| Ac. du'-os, or du'-o. | Ac. du'-as.       |                   |

QUESTION.—What nouns of the 1st declension are declined in the plural like the feminine of *duo* and *ambo*?

#### EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of—

- duo leones*, two lions. (Less. 13.)
- duas filiae*, two daughters. (Less. 8, Rem. 1.)
- duo corpora*, two bodies. (Less. 18.)
- ambe voces*, both voices. (Less. 17.)
- duae res*, two things. (Less. 27.)

Translate into Latin—

- |                |                  |                      |
|----------------|------------------|----------------------|
| For-two boys.  | By-two soldiers. | To-one daughter      |
| Of-both hands. | In two houses.   | To-a-beautiful girl. |

Translate into English—

- |                 |                |                 |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| O pulchrae deæ! | In uno modo.   | O sacri montes! |
| In rubra manu.  | A vestra domo. | Mi fili.        |
- 

## LESSON 34.

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Some adjectives of the third declension have three terminations in the nominative singular,—one for each gender; some, two,—one for the masculine and feminine, the other for the neuter; and some, only one for all genders.

2. Those of three terminations have *er* in the masculine, *is* in the feminine, and *e* in the neuter. Of this kind are—

- |                     |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| A'-cer, sharp.      | E'-ques'-ter, equestrian. |
| Al'-ä-cer, brisk.   | Sa-lig'-ber, wholesome.   |
| Cel'-ë-cer, famous. | Vol'-u-cer, winged.       |

*Acer* is thus declined:—

| <i>Singular.</i>      |                       |                          |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Masc.</i>          | <i>Fem.</i>           | <i>Neut.</i>             |
| <i>N. V.</i> a'-cer,  | <i>N. V.</i> a'-cris, | <i>N. Ac. V.</i> a'-cre, |
| <i>G.</i> a'-cri,     | <i>G.</i> a'-cri,     | <i>G.</i> a'-cri,        |
| <i>D. Ab.</i> a'-cri, | <i>D. Ab.</i> a'-cri, | <i>D. Ab.</i> a'-cri;    |
| <i>Ac.</i> a'-crem;   | <i>Ac.</i> a'-crem;   |                          |

| <i>Plural.</i>            |                            |  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|--|
| <i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>   | <i>Neut.</i>               |  |
| <i>N. Ac. V.</i> a'-cres, | <i>N. Ac. V.</i> a'-cri-a, |  |
| <i>G.</i> a'-cri-um,      | <i>G.</i> a'-cri-um,       |  |
| <i>D. Ab.</i> ac'-ri-bus. | <i>D. Ab.</i> ac'-ri-bus.  |  |

QUESTIONS.—How many terminations in the nominative singular have adjectives of the third declension? What is the termination of the masculine in adjectives of three terminations?—of the feminine?—of the neuter? Decline *acer* in the masculine—in the feminine—in the neuter. What is the root of *acer*? How is the nominative masculine formed from the root?—the nominative feminine?—the nominative neuter? Write the root of *alicer*, *celiber*, *equestris*, *salibet*, and *vulcer*.

#### EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of—

*vulcer equus*, a winged horse.  
*equestris statua*, an equestrian statue.  
*celèbre nomen*, a famous name. See Less. 18.

Translate into English—

*Celèbri homini.*      *Vulcèr dracónes.*      *Nigros leónes.*  
*Alícris miliá.*      *O vulcér puer!*      *Nostrárum curdúrum.*

NOTE.—For the pronunciation of doubtful penultima, see L. 2, and L. 8.

## LESSON 35.

#### ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS.

Adjectives of two terminations have *is* in the masculine and feminine, and *e* in the neuter; except comparatives, which have *or* and *us*.

The following are examples of adjectives of two terminations:

|                             |                              |                                   |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Bre'-vis</i> , short.    | <i>For'-tis</i> , brave.     | <i>Mi-rab'-i-lis</i> , wonderful. |
| <i>Cru-dé'-lia</i> , cruel. | <i>Gra'-vis</i> , heavy.     | <i>Mi'-tis</i> , mild.            |
| <i>Dul'-cis</i> , sweet.    | <i>In-col'-i-mis</i> , safe. | <i>Om'-nis</i> , all.             |

*Mitis* is thus declined :—

Singular.

|        |          |           |          |
|--------|----------|-----------|----------|
| N. V.  | mi'-tis, | N. Ac. V. | mi'-te,  |
| G.     | mi'-tis, | G.        | mi'-tis, |
| D. Ab. | mi'-ti;  | D. Ab.    | mi'-ti;  |
| Ac.    | mi'-tem; |           |          |

Plural.

|           |                         |           |                        |
|-----------|-------------------------|-----------|------------------------|
| N. Ac. V. | mi'-tes,                | N. Ac. V. | mit'-i-a, <sup>b</sup> |
| G.        | mit'-i-um, <sup>a</sup> | G.        | mit'-i-um,             |
| D. Ab.    | mit'-i-bus.             | D. Ab.    | mit'-i-bus.            |

(a) Pronounced *mish'-e-um*; (b) *mish'-e-ah*.

Note.—*Tres*, three, is declined like the plural of *mitis*. N. *tres*, *tria*, &c.

Questions.—What is the termination of the masculine and feminine in adjectives of two terminations?—of the neuter? Decline *mitis* in the masculine and feminine—in the neuter. How is *tres* declined? What is its root?

EXERCISE.

Write the declension of—

|                                  |                                     |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>brevis via</i> , a short way. | <i>breve tempus</i> , a short time. |
| <i>vir fortis</i> , a brave man. | <i>tres dies</i> , three days.      |

Translate into Latin—

|                    |                      |                     |
|--------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Of-brave soldiers. | Of-sweet fruit.      | In all the-temples. |
| By-cruel wars.     | For-all the-fingers. | To-cruel lions.     |

Translate into English—

|                     |              |                    |
|---------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| In brevi tempore.   | O mi domine! | Ab altis nubibus.  |
| O crudelēs homines! | Graves curæ. | Cum benignā matre. |

## LESSON 36.

### DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

1 Adjectives of the comparative degree have *or* for the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter.

The following are comparatives:—

|                              |                               |                              |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| All'-ti-or, <i>higher</i> .  | Fe-lic'i-or, <i>happier</i> . | Gra'-vi-or, <i>heavier</i> . |
| Bre'-vi-or, <i>shorter</i> . | For'-ti-or, <i>braver</i> .   | Mit'-i-or, <i>milder</i> .   |

2. *Mitior* is thus declined :—

|              |                              | Singular.              | Neut.                        |
|--------------|------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------|
| Masc. & Fem. |                              |                        |                              |
| N.           | V. mit'i-or,*                | N. Ac. V. mit'i-i-us,* |                              |
| G.           | mit-i-o'-ris,                | G.                     | mit-i-o'-ris,                |
| D.           | mit-i-o'-ri,                 | D.                     | mit-i-o'-ri,                 |
| Ac.          | mit-i-o'-rem,                | Ab.                    | mit-i-o'-re, or mit-i-o'-ri, |
| Ab.          | mit-i-o'-re, or mit-i-o'-ri; |                        |                              |

## Plural.

|           |                  |           |                  |
|-----------|------------------|-----------|------------------|
| N. Ac. V. | mit-i-o'-res,    | N. Ac. V. | mit-i-o'-ra,     |
| G.        | mit-i-o'-rum,    | G.        | mit-i-o'-rum,    |
| D. Ab.    | mit-i-or'-i-bus. | D. Ab.    | mit-i-or'-i-bus. |

\* Pronounced *mis'kō-or*, &c.3. *Plus*, more, is thus declined :—

|                   |           | Singular.           | Plural.             |
|-------------------|-----------|---------------------|---------------------|
|                   |           | Neut.               | Neut.               |
| Masc. & Fem.      |           |                     |                     |
| N. Ac.            | plus,     | N. Ac. plu'-res,    | N. Ac. plu'-ra,     |
| G.                | plu'-ria, | G.                  | plu'-ri-um,         |
| The rest wanting. |           | D. Ab. plu'-ri-bus. | D. Ab. plu'-ri-bus. |

QUESTIONS.—What is the termination of the masculine and feminine of comparatives?—of the neuter? Decline *mitior* in the masculine and feminine—in the neuter. What is its root? How is the neuter nominative formed from the root? (See Less. 22, R. 1, and R. 4.) Decline *plus* in the singular. What genders of *plus* are wanting in the singular? Decline it in the plural. What is its root? How is the nominative singular formed from the root? (See Less. 22.)

## EXERCISE.

Write the declension of—

*altior mons*, a higher mountain, *fortior vir*, a braver man,  
*brevius tempus*, a shorter time.

Translate into Latin—

|                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Of-a-higher tree.     | From a-milder man.  |
| In a-higher mountain. | By-a-heavier stone. |
| In a-shorter day.     | Of-happier times.   |

Translate into English—

|                                   |                    |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|
| In <i>mitioribus sestatibus</i> . | Plurium donorum.   |
| Cum <i>pluribus hominibus</i> .   | Ab altiore stellā. |
| In <i>breviore tempus</i> .       | Pluris pretiis.*   |
| O <i>viri fortiores</i> !         | Cursu graviore.    |

(a) *plenum*, II, n., *price, value*.

## LESSON 37.

## ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION.

1. Adjectives of one termination increase in the genitive. Their ablative singular ends in *e* or *i*; their genitive plural in *ium*; and their nominative plural neuter in *ia*.

2. *Felix*, happy, is thus declined:—

*Singular.*

| <i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>      | <i>Neut.</i>                 |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>N. V.</i> fe'-lix,        | <i>N. Ac. V.</i> fe'-lix,    |
| <i>G.</i> fe-li'-cis,        | <i>G.</i> fe-li'-cis,        |
| <i>D.</i> fe-li'-ci,         | <i>D.</i> fe-li'-ci,         |
| <i>Ac.</i> fe-li'-cem,       | <i>Ab.</i> fe-li'-ce, or ci; |
| <i>Ab.</i> fe-li'-ce, or ci; |                              |

*Plural.*

| <i>N. Ac. V.</i> fe-li'-ces, | <i>N. Ac. V.</i> fe-lie'-i-a, |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>G.</i> fe-lie'-i-um,      | <i>G.</i> fe-lie'-i-um,       |
| <i>D. Ab.</i> fe-lie'-i-bus. | <i>D. Ab.</i> fe-lie'-i-bus.  |

3. *Præsens*, present, is thus declined:—

*Singular.*

| <i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>        | <i>Neut.</i>                  |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>N. V.</i> præ'-sens,        | <i>N. Ac. V.</i> præ'-sens,   |
| <i>G.</i> præ-sen'-tis,        | <i>G.</i> præ-sen'-tis,       |
| <i>D.</i> præ-sen'-ti,         | <i>D.</i> præ-sen'-ti,        |
| <i>Ac.</i> præ-sen'-tem,       | <i>Ab.</i> præ-sen'-te or ti; |
| <i>Ab.</i> præ-sen'-te, or ti; |                               |

*Plural.*

| <i>N. Ac. V.</i> præ-sen'-tes, | <i>N. Ac. V.</i> præ-sen'-ti-a, |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>G.</i> præ-sen'-ti-um,      | <i>G.</i> præ-sen'-ti-um,       |
| <i>D. Ab.</i> præ-sen'-ti-bus. | <i>D. Ab.</i> præ-sen'-ti-bus.  |

NOTE.—All present participles are declined like *præsens*.

The following are examples of adjectives of one termination:—

|                          |                                          |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Au'-dax, <i>bold</i> .   | Pru'-dens, <i>tis, prudent</i> .         |
| Fe'-rox, <i>fierce</i> . | Par'-ti-ceps, <i>ipis, participant</i> . |
| In'-gens, <i>huge</i> .  | Sc'-lers, <i>tis, shrewd</i> .           |

**EXCEPTION.**—Some adjectives of one termination have or *y e* in the abl. sing., a few have only *i*. These, with a few other adjectives of one termination, have also *um* in the gen. plur.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is said of the genitive of adjectives of one termination?—of their ablative singular?—their genitive plural?—their nominative plural? Decline *felix* in the masculine and feminine—in the neuter. What is its root? How is the nominative singular formed from it? Decline *præsens*. What is its root? How is the nominative singular formed from it? How are present participles declined? How are participles in *us* declined? (See Lesson 25.)

#### EXERCISE.

Write out the declension of:—

*ingens saxum*, a huge rock. *vir prudens*, a prudent man.

Write the roots of *felix*, *præsens*, *audax*, *ferox*, *particeps* and *solers*.

## LESSON 38.

#### NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. Numeral adjectives are those which denote number. They are either *cardinal*, *ordinal*, or *distributive*.

2. Cardinal numbers denote how many objects are intended.

3. Ordinal numbers denote order or rank.

4. Distributive numbers denote the number of objects taken together.

#### *Cardinal.*

5. *Unus, one.*

*Duo, two.*

*Tres, three.*

*Quatuor, four.*

*Quinque, five.*

*Sex, six.*

*Septem, seven.*

*Octo, eight.*

*Novem, nine.*

*Decem, ten.*

#### *Ordinal.*

*Primus, first.*

*Secundus, second.*

*Tertius, third.*

*Quartus, fourth.*

*Quintus, fifth.*

*Sextus, sixth.*

*Septimus, seventh.*

*Octavus, eighth.*

*Nonus, ninth.*

*Decimus, tenth.*

#### *Distributive.*

*Singuli, one by one.*

*Bini, two by two, &c.*

*Terni, or trini.*

*Quaterni*

*Quini.*

*Seni.*

*Septeni.*

*Octoni.*

*Noveni.*

*Deni.*

6. The cardinal numbers from four to a hundred, inclusive, are indeclinable. Those denoting hundreds, and all the distributives, are declined like the plural of *bonus*.

7. The ordinal numbers are declined like *bonus*.

8. *Mille*, a thousand, when used as an adjective, is indeclinable. As a noun it is neuter, and is declined in the plural only, like the plural of *sedile*. (L. 20.)

QUESTIONS.—What are numeral adjectives? Name their classes. What are cardinal numbers?—ordinal?—distributive? What cardinal numbers are indeclinable? How are those denoting hundreds declined? How are ordinal numbers declined?—distributives? When is *mille* declined? When is it indeclinable?

#### EXERCISE.

Decline *quinq̄ue dies*, five days.  
*secundum bellum*, the second war.  
*decimus rex*, the tenth king.

---

## LESSON 39.

#### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

1. The comparison of an adjective is the expression of its quality in different degrees.
2. There are three degrees of comparison—the *positive*; the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.
3. The positive simply denotes a quality; as, *altus*, high.
4. The comparative denotes that a quality belongs to one of two objects in a greater degree than to the other; as, *altior*, higher.
5. The superlative denotes that a quality belongs to one of several objects in a greater degree than to any of the rest; as, *altissimus*, highest.
6. The comparative and superlative are formed by adding *ior* and *issimus* to the root of the positive: thus,

| <i>Positive.</i> | <i>Root.</i> | <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> |
|------------------|--------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Altus,           | alt-         | altior,             | altissimus.         |
| Felix,           | felic-       | felicior,           | felicissimus.       |

NOTE 1.—The comparative and superlative are expressed in English by the terminations *er* and *est*, or by the adverbs *more* and *most*; as, higher, highest; *more* merciful, *most* merciful.

NOTE 2.—*Very*, *extremely*, and the like, are commonly expressed in Latin by the superlative; as, a very dear friend, *amicus carissimus*.

**NOTE 3.**—Comparatives are declined like *mītor*, (Less. 36) and superlatives like *bonus*, (Less. 29.)

**QUESTIONS.**—What is meant by the comparison of an adjective? How many and what are the degrees of comparison? What does the positive denote?—the comparative?—the superlative? How are the comparative and superlative formed? Compare *altus*—*altissimus*. How are the comparative and superlative expressed in English? How are *very*, *extremely*, and the like expressed in Latin? How are comparatives declined?—superlatives?

#### EXERCISE.

Write out the degrees of comparison of the following adjectives:—

*Arc-tus, strait.*    *Ca'-rus, dear.*    *Cle'-mens, (tia,) merciful.*  
*Ca-pax, capacious.*    *Cru-dē-lis, cruel.*    *In'-ers, (tia,) sluggish.*

Translate into Latin, in the nominative singular,—

|                      |                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| The-highest tree.    | A-more-capacious house. |
| The-happiest man.    | A-more-merciful man.    |
| The-most-cruel lion. | A-dearer friend.        |

Translate into English—

|                         |                             |                            |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Altissima rupes.</i> | <i>Felicius regnum.</i>     | <i>Clementissimus rex.</i> |
| <i>Altior nubes.</i>    | <i>Crudelissimum numen.</i> | <i>Inertior homo.</i>      |

---

## LESSON 40.

### IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

1. Adjectives in *er* add *rimus* to the nominative singular masculine to form the superlative; their comparative is regular.

In this manner are compared *acer*, sharp, *asper*, rough, and *celsus*, famous; thus:—

| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Root.</i> | <i>Comp.</i> | <i>Supt.</i>  |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| acer,       | acris,      | acr-         | acrior,      | acerrimus.    |
| asper,      | aspēri,     | asper-       | asprior,     | asperrimus.   |
| celsus,     | celebris,   | celebr-      | celebrior,   | celeberrimus. |

2. Some adjectives in *lis* form the superlative by adding *limus* to the root; as, *facilis*, easy, *facilior*, *facillimus*.

3. The following adjectives are very irregular in their comparison:—

|          |                        |                           |        |          |           |
|----------|------------------------|---------------------------|--------|----------|-----------|
| Bonus,   | meliōr,                | optimus,                  | good,  | better,  | best.     |
| Malus,   | pejor,                 | pessimus,                 | bad,   | worse,   | worst.    |
| Magnus,  | major,                 | maximus,                  | great, | greater, | greatest. |
| Parvus,  | minor,                 | minimus,                  | small, | less,    | least.    |
| Multus,  | plus, ( <i>neut.</i> ) | plurimus,                 | much,  | more,    | most.     |
| Infērus, | inferior,              | { infimus,<br>or imus,    | low,   | lower,   | lowest.   |
| Supērus, | superior,              | { suprēmus,<br>or summus, | high,  | higher,  | highest.  |

QUESTIONS.—How are adjectives in *er* compared?—some adjectives in *is*.  
Compare *acer*—*asper*—*celber*—*facilis*—*bonus*, etc.

## EXERCISE.

Write the comparison of *dificilis*, difficult; *humilis*, humble; *similis*, like; and *dissimilis*, unlike; which are compared like *facilius*.

Translate into Latin—

|                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| For-the-best men.          | For-greater birds.     |
| In the-worst manner.       | Of-a-difficult way.    |
| In a-very-celebrated city. | By-a-very-sharp sword. |

Translate into English—

|                   |                      |              |
|-------------------|----------------------|--------------|
| Plurīmi homīnes.  | Jovi maximo.         | Lex suprēma. |
| Pejōrem fructum.  | Majōre vi.           | Dii majōres. |
| Majōres corvos.   | Celeberrima poēmāta. | Vir melior.  |
| Iter difficilius. | Minima pars.         | Acri dolōre. |

## LESSON 41.

## PRONOUNS.

1. A pronoun is a word which indicates a person or thing as previously named or known.
2. Pronouns are of two kinds—*substantive* and *adjective*.
3. The substantive pronouns are, *ego*, I; *tu*, thou; and *sui*, of himself, of herself, or of itself.
4. *Ego* and *tu* are either masculine or feminine, *sus* either masculine, feminine, or neuter.

They are thus declined:—

*Singular.*

|                                             |                                           |                                             |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> <i>o'-go, I,</i>                  | <i>N.</i> <i>tu, thou,</i>                | <i>N.</i> _____                             |
| <i>G.</i> <i>me'-l, mine or of me,</i>      | <i>G.</i> <i>tu'-l, thine or of thee,</i> | <i>G.</i> <i>sul-, of himself, &amp;c.</i>  |
| <i>D.</i> <i>mi'-hi, to or for me,</i>      | <i>D.</i> <i>ti'b-l, to or for thee,</i>  | <i>D.</i> <i>si'b-l, to or for himself,</i> |
| <i>Ac.</i> <i>me, me,</i>                   | <i>Ac.</i> <i>te, thee,</i>               | <i>Ac.</i> <i>se, himself,</i>              |
| <i>V.</i> _____                             | <i>V.</i> <i>tu, O thou,</i>              | <i>V.</i> _____                             |
| <i>Ab.</i> <i>me, with, from, or by me;</i> | <i>Ab.</i> <i>te, with thee, &amp;c.</i>  | <i>Ab.</i> <i>se, with himself, &amp;c.</i> |

*Plural.*

|                                              |                                               |                                                |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> <i>nos, we,</i>                    | <i>N.</i> <i>vos, ye or you,</i>              | <i>N.</i> _____                                |
| <i>G.</i> { <i>nou-trim</i> } <i>ours or</i> | <i>G.</i> { <i>ves-trim</i> } <i>yours or</i> | <i>G.</i> <i>sul-, of themselves,</i>          |
| <i>G.</i> { <i>or nou-tri, of us,</i>        | <i>G.</i> { <i>or ves-tri, of you,</i>        | <i>D.</i> <i>si'b-l, to or for themselves,</i> |
| <i>D.</i> <i>no'b-is, to or for us,</i>      | <i>D.</i> <i>vo'b-is, to or for you,</i>      | <i>Ac.</i> <i>se, themselves,</i>              |
| <i>Ac.</i> <i>nos, us,</i>                   | <i>Ac.</i> <i>vos, you,</i>                   | <i>Ac.</i> <i>se, themselves,</i>              |
| <i>V.</i> _____                              | <i>V.</i> <i>vos, O ye or you,</i>            | <i>V.</i> _____                                |
| <i>Ab.</i> <i>no'b-is, with us, &amp;c.</i>  | <i>Ab.</i> <i>vo'b-is, with you, &amp;c.</i>  | <i>Ab.</i> <i>se, with themselves.</i>         |

QUESTIONS.—What is a pronoun? Of how many kinds are pronouns? Which are substantive-pronouns? Of what gender are they? Decline *ego*, &c.

## EXERCISE.

Translate into Latin—

For-me alone. To-thee. With-you. For-themselves.  
Of-themselves. For-me. From-us. Ours.

Translate into English—

Nobis, (*dat.*) Vestrūm. O felix tu! Sui, (*sing. f.*)  
Sibi, (*plur.*) Mei solius. O vos! Te, (*acc.*)

## LESSON 42.

## ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

1. (a) The adjective pronouns which most frequently occur, are,

|                                                                |                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Hic, this, the latter.</i>                                  | <i>Qui, who, which, that.</i>      |
| <i>Ille, that, the former.</i>                                 | <i>Quis? who? which? what?</i>     |
| <i>Iste, that, especially as the antecedent of <i>qui</i>.</i> | <i>Meus, my.</i>                   |
| <i>Iste, that, especially that of yours.</i>                   | <i>Tuus, thy or your.</i>          |
| <i>Ipsa, self, or myself, thyself, &amp;c.</i>                 | <i>Suis, his, her, its, their.</i> |
| <i>Idem, the same.</i>                                         | <i>Noster, our.</i>                |
|                                                                | <i>Vester, your.</i>               |

NOTE 1.—These pronouns, except *meus* and *noster*, want the vocative.

(b) *Ille, iste, hic, is*, and *idem*, are demonstratives; *ipse*, an intensive; *qui*, a relative; *quis*, an interrogative.

tive; and *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, and *vester*, possessives.

2. *Hic*, *ille*, *is*, and *iste*, when referring to a noun understood, are often translated 'he, she, or it,' (plur. 'they'); and they are then parsed like substantive pronouns.

Note 2.—*Ille* sometimes denotes that an object is well known; and *iste*, that it is regarded with contempt.

### *Hic.*

3. *Hic* is thus declined:—

#### *Singular.*

| <i>Masc.</i>       | <i>Fem.</i>        | <i>Neut.</i>              |
|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> hic,     | <i>N.</i> haec,    | <i>N.</i> <i>Ac.</i> hoc, |
| <i>G.</i> hu'-jus, | <i>G.</i> hu'-jus, | <i>G.</i> hu'-jus,        |
| <i>D.</i> huic,*   | <i>D.</i> huic,*   | <i>D.</i> huic,*          |
| <i>Ac.</i> hunc,   | <i>Ac.</i> hanc,   | <i>Ab.</i> hoc;           |
| <i>Ab.</i> hoc;    | <i>Ab.</i> hac;    |                           |

#### *Plural.*

| <i>N.</i>                 | <i>N.</i>                 | <i>N.</i>                 |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>hi</i> ,               | <i>hae</i> ,              | <i>Ac.</i> haec,          |
| <i>G.</i> ho'-rum,        | <i>G.</i> ha'-rum,        | <i>G.</i> ho'-rum,        |
| <i>D.</i> <i>Ab.</i> his, | <i>D.</i> <i>Ab.</i> his, | <i>D.</i> <i>Ab.</i> his. |

\* Pronounced *hika*.

QUESTIONS.—Name the adjective-pronouns which most commonly occur. Which of these pronouns want the vocative? Name the demonstrative pronouns—the intensive—the relative—the interrogative—the possessive. What does *hic* signify?—*ille*, *etc.*? How are *hic*, *ille*, *is*, and *iste* translated when they refer to a noun understood? What do *ille* and *iste* sometimes denote? Decline *hic* in the masculine—in the feminine—in the neuter.

#### EXERCISE.

Write out and repeat the declension of—

*hic homo*, this man.

*haec res*, this thing.

*hoc regnum*, this kingdom.

*hic bonus vir*, this good man.

*haec celeberrima urbs*, this very celebrated city.

Translate—

*Haec duo sedilia.* In *hac* *sesquate*.

*Hoc magnum crimen.* In *his* *agris*.

*Hi maximi viri.* *Hujus* *capitis*.

*Haec felices sorores.* *Huic* *prudenti homini*.

*Hic unus puer.* *Ab* *his* *montibus*.

(a) *soror*, *ōma*, a sister.

## LESSON 43.

Ille, iste, and ipse.

*Ille* and *iste* are thus declined :—*Singular.*

| <i>Masc.</i>         | <i>Fem.</i>          | <i>Neut.</i>           |
|----------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> il'-le,    | <i>N.</i> il'-la,    | <i>N. Ac.</i> il'-lud, |
| <i>G.</i> il-lí'-us, | <i>G.</i> il-lí'-us, | <i>G.</i> il-lí'-us,   |
| <i>D.</i> il'-li,    | <i>D.</i> il'-li,    | <i>D.</i> il'-li,      |
| <i>Ac.</i> il'-lum,  | <i>Ac.</i> il'-lam,  | <i>Ab.</i> il'-lo;     |
| <i>Ab.</i> il'-lo;   | <i>Ab.</i> il'-la;   |                        |

*Plural.*

|                        |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> il'-li,      | <i>N.</i> il'-lae,     | <i>N. Ac.</i> il'-la,  |
| <i>G.</i> il-lo'-rum,  | <i>G.</i> il-la'-rum,  | <i>G.</i> il-lo'-rum,  |
| <i>D. Ab.</i> il'-lie, | <i>D. Ab.</i> il'-lis, | <i>D. Ab.</i> il'-lia. |
| <i>Ac.</i> il'-los.    | <i>Ac.</i> il'-lae.    |                        |

2. *Ipsa* is declined like *ille*, except that in the nom. and acc. singular it has *ipsum* in the neuter.

QUESTIONS.—How is *ille* declined in the masculine?—in the feminine?—in the neuter? What pronoun is declined like *ille*? How does the declension of *ipse* differ from that of *ille*?

## EXERCISE.

Decline *ipse* in the neuter gender. Decline *illud regnum*, that kingdom. Decline *iste sermo*, that speech.

Write out and repeat the declension of *ego ipse*, I myself—of *tu ipsa*, thou thyself—of *ille ipse*, he himself.

Translate—

|                           |                             |                          |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| For-myself. <sup>a</sup>  | Of-themselves. <sup>b</sup> | For-the-soldier himself. |
| Of-yourself. <sup>a</sup> | To-herself. <sup>b</sup>    | In-the-cave itself.      |

<sup>a</sup> Make use of the personal pronoun with *ipse*.      <sup>b</sup> Make use of *sui* alone.

|                              |                  |                |
|------------------------------|------------------|----------------|
| Tibi ipse.                   | Istius criminis. | In his regnis. |
| Nobis ipsis. ( <i>dat.</i> ) | Illi magistro.   | Ilias pueras.  |

|                                      |                           |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Illi presenti deo.                   | O viri fortissimi!        |
| In illis magnis urbibus.             | O felices parentes!       |
| Iste tuus furor.                     | Ab istis tuis comitibus.  |
| A Jove optimo.                       | In illis altis montibus.  |
| In illis amoenis <sup>a</sup> locis. | In ipsa celeberrima urbe. |
| At illis decem viris.                | Ille magnus Alexander.    |

(a) amoenus, a, um, pleasant.

## LESSON 44.

*Is and idem.*1. *Is* is thus declined :—*Singular.*

| <i>Masc.</i>      | <i>Fem.</i>       | <i>Neut.</i>             |
|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> is,     | <i>N.</i> e'-a,   | <i>N.</i> <i>Ac.</i> id, |
| <i>G.</i> e'-ius, | <i>G.</i> e'-ius, | <i>G.</i> e'-ius,        |
| <i>D.</i> e'-i,   | <i>D.</i> e'-i,   | <i>D.</i> e'-i,          |
| <i>Ac.</i> e'-um, | <i>Ac.</i> e'-am, | <i>Ab.</i> e'-o;         |
| <i>Ab.</i> e'-o;  | <i>Ab.</i> e'-a;  |                          |

*Plural.*

|                                |                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> i'-i,                | <i>N.</i> e'-as,               | <i>N.</i> <i>Ac.</i> e'-a,    |
| <i>G.</i> e'-rum,              | <i>G.</i> e'-rum,              | <i>G.</i> e'-rum,             |
| <i>D. Ab.</i> i'-is, or e'-is, | <i>D. Ab.</i> i'-is, or e'-is, | <i>D. Ab.</i> i'-is, or e'-is |
| <i>Ac.</i> e'-as.              | <i>Ac.</i> e'-as.              |                               |

2. *Idem*, a compound of *is* and *dem*, is thus declined*Singular.*

| <i>Masc.</i>          | <i>Fem.</i>           | <i>Neut.</i>                 |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> i'-dem,     | <i>N.</i> e'-ā-dem,   | <i>N.</i> <i>Ac.</i> i'-dem, |
| <i>G.</i> e-jus'-dem, | <i>G.</i> e-jus'-dem, | <i>G.</i> e-jus'-dem,        |
| <i>D.</i> e-i'-dem,   | <i>D.</i> e-i'-dem,   | <i>D.</i> e-i'-dem,          |
| <i>Ac.</i> e-un'-dem, | <i>Ac.</i> e-an'-dem, | <i>Ab.</i> e-o'-dem;         |
| <i>Ab.</i> e-o'-dem;  | <i>Ab.</i> e-ā-dem;   |                              |

*Plural.*

|                               |                               |                                |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> i-i'-dem,           | <i>N.</i> e-ā'-dem,           | <i>N.</i> <i>Ac.</i> e'-ā-dem, |
| <i>G.</i> e-o-run'-dem,       | <i>G.</i> e-a-run'-dem,       | <i>G.</i> e-o-run'-dem,        |
| <i>D. Ab.</i> { e-is'-dem, or | <i>D. Ab.</i> { e-is'-dem, or | <i>D. Ab.</i> { e-is'-dem, or  |
| i-is'-dem,                    | i-is'-dem,                    | i-is'-dem.                     |

*Ac.* e-os'-dem.      *Ac.* e-as'-dem.NOTE.—In compound pronouns *m* before *d* is changed into *n*; as, *eundem*, *erundem*, *quendam*, &c.QUESTIONS.—How is *is* declined in the masculine?—in the feminine?—in the neuter? How is *idem* declined in the masculine?—in the feminine?—in the neuter? In compound pronouns, what change of letters occurs before *d*?

## EXERCISE.

Write out and repeat the declension of *ea vox*, that voice—of *idem homo*, the same man—of *eadem res*, the same thing

Translate—

Of-the-same summer. For-the-same things. Of-that (*is*) way.  
In-the-same house. By-that (*is*) sword. To-this bird.

|                       |                   |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| In iisdem carminibus. | Cum eodem comite. |
| In ea <i>estate</i> . | Ab iisdem regnis. |
| In eius sermonibus.   | Ejusdem domini.   |

---

## LESSON 45.

*Qui* and *quis*.

1. The relative *qui* is thus declined :—

### Singular.

| <i>Masc.</i>                | <i>Fem.</i>                 | <i>Neut.</i>                |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> qui,              | <i>N.</i> quæ,              | <i>N.</i> <i>Ac.</i> quod,  |
| <i>G.</i> cu'-jus,          | <i>G.</i> cu'-jus,          | <i>G.</i> cu'-jus,          |
| <i>D.</i> cui, <sup>a</sup> | <i>D.</i> cui, <sup>a</sup> | <i>D.</i> cui, <sup>a</sup> |
| <i>Ac.</i> quem,            | <i>Ac.</i> quam,            | <i>Ab.</i> quo;             |
| <i>Ab.</i> quo;             | <i>Ab.</i> quæ;             |                             |

### Plural.

| <i>N.</i> qui,                 | <i>N.</i> quæ,                 | <i>N.</i> <i>Ac.</i> quæ,      |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>G.</i> quo'-rum,            | <i>G.</i> qua'-rum,            | <i>G.</i> quo'-rum,            |
| <i>D.</i> <i>Ab.</i> qui'-bus, | <i>D.</i> <i>Ab.</i> qui'-bus, | <i>D.</i> <i>Ab.</i> qui'-bus. |
| <i>Ac.</i> quos.               | <i>Ac.</i> quas.               |                                |

*a* Pronounced *ki*.

2. The interrogative *quis* is declined like the relative, except that in the singular number it has two forms in the nominative masculine, and two in the nominative and accusative neuter : thus,

| <i>Masc.</i>           | <i>Fem.</i>            | <i>Neut.</i>                       |
|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> quis or qui, | <i>N.</i> quæ,         | <i>N.</i> <i>Ac.</i> quid or quod, |
| <i>G.</i> cu'-jus, &c. | <i>G.</i> cu'-jus, &c. | <i>G.</i> cu'-jus, &c.             |

3. *Quis* and *quid* are commonly used as nouns, *qui* and *quod* as adjectives.

4. The compounds of the interrogative *quis* or *qui* are declined in the same manner, except that *aliquis*, some one, *siquis*, if any, *nequis*, lest any, and *numquis*, have *qua* where *quis* has *quæ* : thus,

|                                 |                                 |                                         |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> { al'-i-quis, or      | <i>N.</i> al'-i-qua,            | <i>N. Ac.</i> { al'-i-quid, or          |
| al'-i-qui,                      |                                 | al'-i-quod,                             |
| <i>G.</i> al-i-ct' <i>-jus.</i> | <i>G.</i> al-i-ct' <i>-jus.</i> | <i>G.</i> al-i-ct' <i>-jus, &amp;c.</i> |

NOTE 1.—The compounds *quisque*, *quisquam*, and *quispiam*, have sometimes in the nominative and accusative neuter, *quicque*, *quicquam*, and *quippiam*.

NOTE 2.—*Unusquisque* is declined like *unus* and *quisque* when separate:—Gen. *uniusquisque*, Dat. *unicuique*, &c.

REMARK 1.—The declension of the possessive adjective pronouns, *mēus*, *tuus*, *suis*, *noster*, and *vester*, has been given under adjectives. See Lessons 29 and 31.

2. *Sui* and *suis* are often called *reflexives*, because they refer to the subject of the sentence. The other substantive and possessive pronouns are also used as reflexives, when the subject of the sentence is of the first or second person.

3. The genitive singular of the adjective pronouns, except the possessives, ends in *ius*, or, after a vowel, in *jus*, and the dative singular in *i*, in all genders; as, gen. *illius*, *istius*, *ipsius*, *hujus*, *eius*, *cujus*; dat. *illi*, *isti*, *ipsi*, *et*, *cui*; but *hic* makes *hic* in the dative.

QUESTIONS.—How is the masculine of *qui* declined?—the feminine?—the neuter? How is the interrogative *quis* declined? What is the distinction in the use of *quis* and *qui*? How are the compounds of *quis* or *qui* declined? What exception is made in respect to *al'quis*, *st quis*, *ne quis*, and *nun quis*?—in respect to *quisque*, *quisquam*, and *quispiam*? How is *unusquisque* declined? What are *enī* and *suis* often called? Why are they called reflexives? What other pronouns are sometimes used as reflexives? How does the genitive singular of all the adjective pronouns end?—the dative singular? What word is excepted in the dative?

#### EXERCISE.

Write the declension of *qui homo*? what man?—*qua res*? what thing?—of *unusquisque* in the neuter singular—of *quisque* in the masculine in both numbers—of *siquis* in the feminine singular.

Translate—

|             |              |         |                |
|-------------|--------------|---------|----------------|
| Quem virum? | Cui deas?    | Alicui. | Quo dito?      |
| Quis?       | Siqua domus. |         | Quibus ventis? |

## LESSON 46.

#### VERBS.

1. A verb is a word which expresses the being, state, action, or passion of some subject; as,

*Est Deus.* There is a God. *Aqua calet.* The water is warm. *Puer legit.* The boy reads. *Tu moneris.* Thou art advised.

**NOTE 1.**—*Passion* in Grammar denotes the receiving of an action.

2. Verbs are either *active* or *neuter*.

3. An active verb is one which requires the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, Alexander *conquered* (conquered whom?) Darius.

**NOTE 2.**—The *object* of a verb is that on which the action is exerted; as, Romulus founded *Rome*.

4. A neuter verb is one which with its subject makes complete sense; as, Time *flies*.

5. Active verbs have two voices, the *active* and the *passive*.

6. Neuter verbs have only the *active* voice.

**NOTE 3.**—Neuter verbs are sometimes used *impersonally* in the passive voice. L. 81.

7. A deponent verb is one which has an active or a neuter sense with a passive form.

8. The active voice is that in which the *agent* of the verb is its subject; as, The Romans *destroyed* Carthage.

9. The passive voice is that in which the *object* of the verb is its subject; as, Carthage *was destroyed* by the Romans.

In each of these sentences the agent, the action, and the object of the action, are the same; but in the former the agent, in the latter the object, is made the subject of the verb.

**NOTE 4.**—With the active voice the object, and with the passive the agent, is often omitted.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is a verb? What is meant by *passion* in grammar? How many kinds of verbs are there? What is an active verb? What is the object of a verb? What is a neuter verb? How many voices have active verbs?—neuter verbs? What is a deponent verb? What is the active voice of a verb?—the passive voice? What is often omitted with the active voice?—with the passive voice?

#### EXERCISE.

Determine which of the following verbs are active and which are neuter:—

To sit: to read: to walk: to love: to eat: to be: to hear: to purchase: to laugh: to destroy: to sleep: to desire.

Determine the voice of each of the following verbs:—

I love. He is hated. They are despised. We shall be taught. Fortune favors the brave. The brave are favored by fortune. All men desire happiness. The ship is driven by the wind. The horses draw the chariot. He eats and drinks. The provisions were consumed.

## LESSON 47.

## MOODS.

1. Latin verbs have four moods—the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, the *imperative*, and the *infinitive*.

2. The indicative *asserts* an action, the subjunctive *implies* or *supposes* it, the imperative *commands* it, and the infinitive denotes it *indefinitely*.

3. *To* is commonly used with the infinitive in English, and *may*, *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*, are signs of the Latin subjunctive.

4. A question may be put either in the indicative or the subjunctive, as the sense requires.

## TENSES.

5. Latin verbs have six tenses—the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*; the *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future-perfect*: the first three represent *unfinished*, the last three *finished* action.

6. The present represents an action as going on at the *present* time; as, *amo*, I love, or am loving.

7. The imperfect represents an action as going on at a *past* time; as, *amābam*, I was loving.

8. The future represents an action as going on at a *future* time; as, *amābo*, I shall love, or be loving.

9. The perfect represents an action as finished *now* or at an *indefinite past* time; as, *amāvi*, I have loved, or I loved.

10. The pluperfect represents an action as finished at a *definite past* time; as, *amavēram*, I had loved.

11. The future-perfect represents an action as finished at a *definite future* time; as, *amavēro*, I shall have loved.

**NOTE 1.**—In the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect, the English forms, *have been loving*, *had been loving*, and *shall have been loving*, are likewise found.

**NOTE 2.**—The present is also used to denote what is customary; the imperfect, to denote what *was* usual or customary, and likewise the *intending*, *preparing*, or *attempting* to act, at a definite past time.

**NOTE 3.**—The perfect, when translated by *have*, is called the *perfect definite*; when without *have*, the perfect *indefinite*, or *historical perfect*.

NOTE 4.—In animated narration the present is sometimes used for the historical perfect, and is then called the *historical present*.

#### PERSON.

12. Person, in verbs, is the form by which they denote the person of the subject.—Hence,

13. Verbs have three persons in each number—the *first, second, and third*.

#### NUMBER.

14. Number, in verbs, is the form by which they denote whether their subject is one object or more than one.—Hence,

15. Verbs, like nouns, have two numbers—the *singular* and the *plural*.

#### PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

16. Participles are forms of the verb partaking of the nature of an adjective.

17. Gerunds and supines are forms of the verb partaking of the nature of a noun.

QUESTIONS.—How many and what moods have Latin verbs? How do the several moods represent an action? What is the sign of the infinitive in English? What words in English are signs of the Latin subjunctive? In what moods may a question be put? How many and what tenses have Latin verbs? How do the first three represent an action?—the last three? How does the present represent an action?—the imperfect?—the future?—the perfect?—the pluperfect?—the future-perfect? For what peculiar purpose is the present sometimes used?—the imperfect? What is the perfect called when translated by *have*?—when translated without *have*? What tense is sometimes used for the historical perfect? What is person in verbs? How many persons have verbs? What is number in verbs? How many numbers have verbs? What are participles? What are gerunds and supines?

## LESSON 48.

### .CONJUGATIONS.

1. Verbs whose terminations are alike, are said to be of the same conjugation.
2. Latin verbs are divided into four conjugations.
3. The conjugations may be distinguished by the termination of the present infinitive.

- (a) The termination of the present infinitive active,  
 In the first conjugation is *āre* ;  
 In the second     “     *ēre* ;  
 In the third     “     *ōre* ;  
 In the fourth     “     *ire*.
- (b) The termination of the present infinitive passive,  
 In the first conjugation is *āri* ;  
 In the second     “     *ēri* ;  
 In the third     “     *ōri* ;  
 In the fourth     “     *iri*.

a Except in *do*, *dōre*, to give, and its compounds.

#### ROOTS.

4. A verb, like a noun, consists of two parts—a *root*, and a *termination*.
5. The root of the *present* is called the *first* or *general* root, and is commonly found in every form of the verb.
6. The root of the *perfect active* is called the *second* root.
7. The root of the *supine* or *perfect participle* is called the *third* root.
8. The first root is found in each conjugation by removing the termination of the present infinitive.

**QUESTIONS.**—When are verbs said to be of the same conjugation? How many are the conjugations of Latin verbs? How may these be distinguished? What are the terminations of the present infinitive active?—passive? What are the two parts of which a verb consists? What is the first root?—the second?—the third? How is the first root found?

#### EXERCISE.

Determine the conjugation of each of the following verbs and write down its root, the present infinitive of each being given:—

|                            |                              |                                |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Nominare, <i>to name.</i>  | Docēri, <i>to be taught.</i> | Timēre, <i>to fear.</i>        |
| Ducēre, <i>to lead.</i>    | Legi, <i>to be read.</i>     | Munire, <i>to fortify.</i>     |
| Amari, <i>to be loved.</i> | Scire, <i>to know.</i>       | Puniri, <i>to be punished.</i> |
| Cōdī, <i>to be cut.</i>    | Dāri, <i>to be given.</i>    | Ostendōre, <i>to show.</i>     |

In the preceding verbs change the active infinitives into passives and the passives into actives, and translate them accordingly.

## LESSON 49.

## THE SECOND AND THIRD ROOTS.

The second and third roots are formed by adding to the first root,

- In the first conjugation *āv* and *āt*;
- In the second     "     *u* and *it*;
- In the third     "     *s* and *t*;
- In the fourth    "     *tv* and *it*.

## NOTES.

1. In the third conjugation, when the first root ends with a vowel, and often when it ends with a consonant, the second root has the same form; as, *arguo*, *argui*, *argutum*, *lego*, *legi*, *lectum*.

**REMARK 1.**—When the second root of a verb ends with a consonant, the vowel before it is usually long; as, *e* in *legi* from *lego*.

2. Many verbs in all the conjugations add *t* alone to form the third root, and some, especially those whose first root ends in *d* or *t*, add *s* alone.

3. By adding *s* in the second or third root to *c*, *g*, or *gu*, in the first root, *x* is formed; as, *regō*, (*regsi*) *rexi*; *coquo*, *coxi*.

4. *D* and *t* before *s* are either dropped or changed into *s*; as, *rōdo*, *rōsi*, *rōsum*, to gnaw; *cedo*, *cessi*, *cessum*, to yield.

5. *B* is changed to *p* before *s* and *t*; as, *scribo*, *scripti*, *scriptum*; *g* and *gu* to *c* before *t*; as, *jungo*, *junxi*, *junctum*.

6. Some other irregularities occur in forming the second and third roots, especially in the third conjugation, and many verbs, particularly in the second conjugation, want the third root. For these see the larger Grammar and the Dictionary.

**REMARK 2.**—The tenses formed from the second root are sometimes syncopated; as, *amēstis* for *amavias*.

**QUESTIONS.**—How are the second and third roots regularly formed? How is the second root formed in the third conjugation when the first ends with a vowel? What is the quantity of the last syllable of the second root when it ends with a consonant? How do many verbs in all the conjugations form the third root? When the first root ends in *c*, *g*, or *gu*, and *s* is added, what letter is produced? What is the rule when *s* is added after *d* or *t*? What change occurs in *b* before *s* and *t*?—in *g* and *gu* before *t*? What tenses are sometimes syncopated?

## EXERCISES.

Form the first, second, and third roots from the following infinitives:—

*Amare*, *assimare*, *cantare*; *terrere*, *incrēre*, *monēre*; *carpēre*,—*regēre*, *ducēre* and *inducēre*, (by note 3d.) *acuēre* (by note 1st.) *audire*, *munire*, *scire*; *claudēre*, (by notes 2d and 4th.)

## LESSON 50.

In writing Latin the following rules are to be observed:—

1. An adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, must be put in the same gender, number, and case, as its noun.
2. A finite verb must be put in the same number and person as its subject.
3. The object of an active verb in the active voice, and of an active deponent verb, must be put in the accusative. Less. 46, N. 2.

**Note 1.**—A finite verb is a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mood.

**Note 2.**—The subject of a verb is that of which something is affirmed.

## REMARKS.

1. The subject of a Latin, as well as of an English sentence, usually stands first; as, *Puer legit*, *The boy reads*.
2. The accusative and other oblique cases, depending on a verb, commonly stand before it in Latin, but after it in English; as, *Puer librum legit*, *The boy reads the book*. *Miki librum dat*, *He gives the book to me*.
3. *Né* annexed to the first word in a sentence denotes a question; as, *Scribisne?* *Do you write?*
4. In translating a question into English, the auxiliary of the verb, as, *do*, *did*, *have*, *had*, *shall*, *will*, *may*, *might*, *is*, *was*, &c., is usually put first, then the subject, and after that the verb or participle; as, *Will he write?* *Have you written?*
5. *Not* is usually represented in Latin by *non*. When this is joined to a verb in the present tense, the auxiliary *do*, or *am*, &c., is commonly used in the translation; as, *Puer non legit*, *The boy does not read*, or *is not reading*.
6. In the lessons illustrating the paradigms of verba, the following verbs have been employed, viz.:—

|          |            |            |             |               |
|----------|------------|------------|-------------|---------------|
| Amo,     | amāre,     | amāvi,     | amātūm,     | to love.      |
| Libero   | liberāre,  | liberāvī,  | liberātūm,  | to free.      |
| Paro,    | parāre,    | parāvī,    | parātūm,    | to prepare.   |
| Voco,    | vocāre,    | vocāvī,    | vocātūm,    | to call.      |
| Vulnēro, | vulnērāre, | vulnērāvī, | vulnērātūm, | to wound.     |
| Moneo,   | monēre,    | monūl,     | monitūm,    | to advise.    |
| Habeo,   | habēre,    | habul,     | habitūm,    | to have.      |
| Meroe,   | merēre,    | merui,     | meritūm,    | to deserve.   |
| Taceo,   | tacēre,    | tacul,     | tacitūm,    | to be silent. |
| Tarreo,  | terrēre,   | tercul,    | territūm,   | to terrify.   |
| Ego,     | regere,    | rexī,      | rectūm,     | to rule.      |
| Dico,    | dicāre,    | dixī,      | dictūm,     | to say.       |
| Duto,    | dūcere,    | duxī,      | dūctūm,     | to lead.      |

|        |          |         |           |                    |
|--------|----------|---------|-----------|--------------------|
| Jungo, | jungōre, | junxi,  | junction, | <i>to join.</i>    |
| Lego,  | legēre,  | legi,   | lectum,   | <i>to read.</i>    |
| Audio, | audīre,  | audīvi, | auditum,  | <i>to hear.</i>    |
| Finio, | finīre,  | finivi, | finitum,  | <i>to finish.</i>  |
| Munio, | munīre,  | munivi, | monitum,  | <i>to fortify.</i> |
| Punio, | punīre,  | punivi, | punitum,  | <i>to punish.</i>  |
| Scio,  | scīre,   | scivi,  | scitum,   | <i>to know.</i>    |

• Lesson 49, N. 1.

**QUESTIONS.**—In writing Latin, what is the rule for the adjective, &c. ?—for a finite verb?—for the object of an active verb in the active voice? What is a finite verb?—the subject of a verb? Where does the subject of a sentence usually stand?—the accusative and other oblique cases depending on a verb? How may a question be denoted in Latin? What is the order of words in a question in English? How is *not* expressed in Latin? When *now* is joined to a verb in the present tense, how is the verb translated?

## LESSON 51.

### PRINCIPAL PARTS OF LATIN VERBS.

1. The principal parts of a Latin verb in the active voice are, the *present indicative*, the *present infinitive*, the *perfect indicative*, and the former *supine*.

**Note 1.**—These parts, like the nominative and genitive singular of nouns, are given in the Dictionary, and must be retained in memory.

**Note 2.**—For the purpose of indicating the third root, a former supine, even when it is not found in actual use, is frequently inserted in the Latin Dictionaries. Most of the supines found in the classics are pointed out in Andrews' and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, § 164—177.

2. The following is the mode of conjugating verbs in each of the four conjugations:—

#### ACTIVE VOICE.

##### (a) PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| Pres. Ind.   | Pres. Inf. | Perf. Ind.  | Supine.                         |
|--------------|------------|-------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. A'-mo,    | a-má'-re,  | a-má'-vi,   | a-má'-tum, <i>(to love.)</i>    |
| 2. Mo'-ne-o, | mo-ná'-re, | mo-ná'-u-i, | mon'-i-tum, <i>(to advise.)</i> |
| 3. Re'-go,   | reg'-e-re, | rex'-i,     | rec'-tum, <i>(to rule.)</i>     |
| 4. Au'-di-o, | au-di'-re, | au-di'-vi,  | au-di'-tum, <i>(to hear.)</i>   |

##### (b) ROOTS.

| 1.   | 2.     | 3.     |
|------|--------|--------|
| am-  | amáv-  | amat-  |
| mon- | monu-  | monit- |
| reg- | rex-   | rect-  |
| aud- | audiv- | audit- |

## 74 ACTIVE VOICE:—INDICATIVE MOOD, FIRST ROOT.

### REMARKS.

1. Every finite verb has a subject expressed or understood. This is called the subject nominative.
2. In the singular number the subject of the first person is *ego*, I; of the second, *tu*, thou; of the third, *ille*, he, or some other pronoun or noun in the singular: in the plural, the subject of the first person is *nos*, we; of the second, *vos*, ye or you; of the third, *illi*, they, or some other pronoun or noun in the plural.
3. In the following paradigms the subject is omitted before the verb in Latin.
4. In writing Latin the subjects of verbs in the first and second persons are commonly omitted, unless they are emphatic, the termination sufficiently showing the person and number.

In the present tense a verb with its subjects expressed is thus conjugated:—

| Singular.                    | Plural.                       |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Ego amo, <i>I love,</i>      | Nos amamus, <i>we love,</i>   |
| Tu amas, <i>thou lovest,</i> | Vos amatis, <i>ye love.</i>   |
| Ille amat, <i>he loves;</i>  | Illi amant, <i>they love.</i> |

**QUESTIONS.**—Which are the principal parts of a Latin verb in the active voice? Repeat the principal parts of *amo*—of *moneo*—of *rego*—of *audio*. Repeat the roots of *amo*—of *moneo*—of *regio*—of *audio*. What verbs must have a subject expressed or understood? What is the subject of the first person singular?—of the second?—of the third?—of the first person plural?—of the second?—of the third? What subjects are commonly omitted in Latin? Conjugate *amo* in the present tense, with its subjects expressed.

### EXERCISE.

Write the principal parts of the following verbs:—

1. *Conj.* Damno, *to condemn.*
2. " *Terreo, to terrify.*
3. " *Scribo, to write.* (Lesson 49, N. 5.)
4. " *Vestio, to clothe.*

---

## LESSON 52.

### ACTIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### TENSES DERIVED FROM THE FIRST ROOT.

Present, *love, do love, am loving.*

|                    |                             |  |                               |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|--|-------------------------------|
| Termina<br>tiones. | 'S. 1. o,      as,      at; |  | P. āmus,      ādis,      ant. |
|                    | 2. eo,      ea,      et;    |  | ēmus,      ēdis,      ent.    |
|                    | 3. o,      is,      it;     |  | īmus,      īdis,      unt.    |
|                    | 4. io,      is,      it;    |  | īmus,      īdis,      iunt.   |

ACTIVE VOICE :—INDICATIVE MOOD, FIRST ROOT. 75

| <i>I love.</i>   | <i>Thou lovest,</i>    | <i>He loves;</i>  |
|------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| S. 1. A'-mo,     | a'-mas,                | a'-mat;           |
| 2. Mo'-ne-o,     | mo'-nes,               | mo'-net;          |
| 3. Re'-go,       | re'-gis,               | re'-git;          |
| 4. Au'-di-o,     | au'-dis,               | au'-dit;          |
| <i>We love,</i>  | <i>Ye or you love,</i> | <i>They love.</i> |
| P. 1. a-má'-mus, | a-má'-tis,             | a'-mant.          |
| 2. mo-né'-mus,   | mo-né'-tis,            | mo'-ment.         |
| 3. reg'-i-mus,   | reg'-i-tis,            | re'-gunt.         |
| 4. au-di'-mus,   | au-di'-tis,            | au'-di-unt.       |

Imperfect, was loving, loved, did love.

|       |             |        |        |            |         |         |
|-------|-------------|--------|--------|------------|---------|---------|
| Term. | S. 1. ábam, | ábas,  | ábat;  | P. abámus, | abáti,  | ábant.  |
|       | 2. ébam,    | ébas,  | ébat;  | ébamus,    | ébáti,  | ébant.  |
|       | 3. óbam,    | óbas,  | óbat;  | óbamus,    | óbáti,  | óbant.  |
|       | 4. iébam,   | iébas, | iébat; | iébamus,   | iébáti, | iébant. |

*I was loving, Thou wast loving, He was loving;*

|                  |               |               |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|
| S. 1. a-má'-bam, | a-má'-bas,    | a-má'-bat;    |
| 2. mo-né'-bam,   | mo-né'-bas,   | mo-né'-bat;   |
| 3. re-gé'-bam,   | re-gé'-bas,   | re-gé'-bat;   |
| 4. au-di-é'-bam, | au-di-é'-bas, | au-di-é'-bat; |

*We were loving, Ye were loving, They were loving.*

|                     |                  |                |
|---------------------|------------------|----------------|
| P. 1. am-a-bá'-mus, | am-a-bá'-tis,    | a-má'-bant.    |
| 2. mon-e-bá'-mus,   | mon-e-bá'-tis,   | mo-né'-bant.   |
| 3. reg-e-bá'-mus,   | reg-e-bá'-tis,   | re-gé'-bant.   |
| 4. au-di-e-bá'-mus, | au-di-e-bá'-tis, | au-di-é'-bant. |

Future, shall or will.

|       |            |       |       |             |         |        |
|-------|------------|-------|-------|-------------|---------|--------|
| Term. | S. 1. ábo, | ábis, | ábit; | P. abíimus, | abítis, | ábunt. |
|       | 2. ébo,    | ébis, | ébit; | ébíimus,    | ébitis, | ébunt. |
|       | 3. am,     | as,   | et;   | ému,        | éta,    | ent.   |
|       | 4. iam,    | ies,  | iet;  | iému,       | iéti,   | ient.  |

*I shall love, Thou wilt love, He will love;*

|                 |             |             |
|-----------------|-------------|-------------|
| S. 1. a-má'-bo, | a-má'-his,  | a-má'-bit;  |
| 2. mo-né'-bo,   | mo-né'-bis, | mo-né'-bit; |
| 3. re-gá-mi,    | re'-ges,    | re'-get;    |
| 4. au-di-á-mi,  | an'-di-es,  | au'-di-et;  |

*We shall love, Ye will love, They will love.*

|                     |                |              |
|---------------------|----------------|--------------|
| P. 1. a-mab'-i-mus, | a-mab'-i-tis,  | a-má'-bunt.  |
| 2. mo-neb'-i-mus,   | mo-neb'-i-tis, | mo-né'-bunt. |
| 3. re-gé'-mus,      | re-gé'-tis,    | re'-gent.    |
| 4. au-di-é'-mus,    | au-di-é'-tis,  | au'-di-ent.  |

QUESTIONS.—What is the first root of *amo*?—of *moneo*?—of *rego*?—of *audio*? What tenses of the active voice, indicative mood, are formed from the first root? What are the terminations of the present indicative active in each conjugation?

## 76 ACTIVE VOICE:—INDICATIVE MOOD, FIRST ROOT.

Repeat the present tense of *amo*, etc. What are the terminations of the imperfect indicative active in each conjugation? Repeat the imperfect of *amo*, etc. What are the terminations of the future indicative active in each conjugation? Repeat the future of *amo*, etc.

### EXERCISE.

Repeat the English of *moneo* in the present—in the imperfect—in the future. Do the same with *rego* and *audio*.

Write the conjugation of *damno*, *terreo*, *scribo*, and *vestio*, in the same tensea.

---

## LESSON 53.

### ACTIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD—FIRST ROOT.

#### FORMS OF SENTENCES.

There are four principal forms of sentences in the indicative and subjunctive moods.

1. Affirmative; as, *Avis volat*, The bird flies.
2. Negative; as, *Avis non volat*, The bird does not fly.
3. Interrogative; as, *Avisne volat?* Does the bird fly?
4. Interrogative negative; as, *Nonne avis volat?* Does not the bird fly?

QUESTIONS.—What are the four principal forms of sentences in the indicative and subjunctive moods? Repeat the example of an affirmative sentence—of a negative—of an interrogative—of an interrogative-negative.

#### EXERCISES.

##### I. Translate into English the following affirmative sentences:

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Tu amabis.            | Milites te vulnerabunt. |
| Ille amat.            | Pueri libros legabant.  |
| Pater monet.          | Habes amicum.           |
| Pater filium monēbat. | Habebō amicos.          |
| Vos audiātis.         | Dux ducēbat.            |
| Mater audit.          | Duces ducent.           |
| Audiēmus.             | Vocabas.                |
| Miles me vulnērat.    | Finiebamus.             |

##### II. Write each of the preceding sentences in the negative, interrogative, and interrogative-negative forms, and translate those forms into English.

## ACTIVE VOICE :—INDICATIVE MOOD, SECOND ROOT. 77

III. Write the sentences in the first exercise, substituting the plural for the singular, and the singular for the plural; as, *I've amabitis*, &c., and translate them.

IV. Translate into Latin the following English sentences :—

|                                         |                                |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Hast thou a book ?                      | Wilt thou be silent ?          |
| I have a book.                          | I am silent.                   |
| Will they punish ?                      | Will you ( <i>pl.</i> ) read ? |
| They will punish.                       | We are reading.                |
| The lion terrifies the boy.             | The bee loves flowers.         |
| The king was leading the soldiers.      |                                |
| The soldiers were not leading the king. |                                |

### VOCABULARY.

NOTE.—The verbs in the preceding exercises, and in those which follow in the conjugation of verbs, may be found in Lesson 50.

|                      |            |                               |
|----------------------|------------|-------------------------------|
| amicus, i, m.        | a friend.  | apis, ia, f.                  |
| dux, duce, m. & f.   | a leader.  | book, liber, bri, m.          |
| filius, i, m.        | a son.     | boy, puer, éri, m.            |
| liber, bri, m.       | a book.    | city, urbe, urbia, f.         |
| mater, tris, f.      | a mother.  | flower, floris, floria, m.    |
| miles, Itis, m. & f. | a soldier. | lion, leo, ónia, m.           |
| pater, tris, m.      | a father.  | king, rex, regis, m.          |
| puer, éri, m.        | a boy.     | soldier, miles, Itis, m. & f. |

QUESTIONS.—What are the four principal forms of sentences in the indicative and subjunctive moods? Repeat the example of an affirmative sentence—or a negative—or an interrogative—or an interrogative-negative.

---

## LESSON · 54

### ACTIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### TENSES DERIVED FROM THE SECOND ROOT.

Perfect, (definite,) *have loved*; (indefinite,) *loved*.

Term.—*S. i, isti, it;*      *P. Imus, istis, érunt, or ére.*

|                        |                         |                      |
|------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>I have loved,</i>   | <i>Thou hast loved,</i> | <i>He has loved;</i> |
| <i>S. 1. a-má'-vi,</i> | <i>am-a-vis'-ti,</i>    | <i>a-má'-vit;</i>    |
| <i>2. mon'-u-i,</i>    | <i>mon-u-is'-ti,</i>    | <i>mon'-u-it;</i>    |
| <i>3. rex'-i,</i>      | <i>rex-is'-ti,</i>      | <i>rex'-it;</i>      |
| <i>4. au-di'-vi,</i>   | <i>au-di-vis'-ti,</i>   | <i>au-di'-vit;</i>   |

**78 ACTIVE VOICE:—INDICATIVE MOOD, SECOND ROOT.**

| <i>We have loved,</i> | <i>Ye have loved,</i> | <i>They have loved.</i> |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| P. 1. a-mav'-i-mus,   | am-a-vis'-tis,        | am-a-vē'-runt, or -re.  |
| 2. mo-nu'-i-mus,      | mon-u-is'-tis,        | mon-u-ē'-runt, or -re.  |
| 3. rex'-i-mus,        | rex-is'-tis,          | rex-ē'-runt, or -re.    |
| 4. au-div'-i-mus,     | au-di-vis'-tis,       | au-di-vē'-runt, or re.  |

**Pluperfect, had.**

| <i>Term.—S. ēram, ēras, ērat;</i> | <i>P. erāmus, erātis, ērant.</i> |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>I had loved,</i>               | <i>Thou hadst loved,</i>         |
| S. 1. a-mav'-ē-ram,               | a-mav'-ē-ras,                    |
| 2. mo-nu'-ē-ram,                  | mo-nu'-ē-ras,                    |
| 3. rex'-ē-ram,                    | rex'-ē-ras,                      |
| 4. au-div'-ē-ram,                 | au-div'-ē-ras;                   |
| <i>We had loved,</i>              | <i>Ye had loved,</i>             |
| P. 1. am-a-ve-rā'-mus,            | am-a-ve-rā'-tis,                 |
| 2. mon-u-e-rā'-mus,               | mon-u-e-rā'-tis,                 |
| 3. rex-e-rā'-mus,                 | rex-e-rā'-tis,                   |
| 4. au-di-ve-rā'-mus,              | au-di-ve-rā'-tis,                |

**Future-Perfect, shall or will have.**

| <i>Term.—S. ēro, ēris, ērit;</i> | <i>P. erimus, eritis, ērint.</i> |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>I shall have loved,</i>       | <i>Thou wilt have loved,</i>     |
| S. 1. a-mav'-ē-ro,               | a-mav'-ē-ris,                    |
| 2. mo-nu'-ē-ro,                  | mo-nu'-ē-ris,                    |
| 3. rex'-ē-ro,                    | rex'-ē-ris,                      |
| 4. au-div'-ē-ro,                 | au-div'-ē-ris,                   |
| <i>We shall have loved,</i>      | <i>Ye will have loved,</i>       |
| P. 1. am-a-ver'-i-mus,           | am-a-ver'-i-tis,                 |
| 2. mon-u-er'-i-mus,              | mon-u-er'-i-tis,                 |
| 3. rex-er'-i-mus,                | rex-er'-i-tis,                   |
| 4. au-di-ver'-i-mus,             | au-di-ver'-i-tis,                |

**QUESTIONS.**—How is the second root formed? What is the second root of *amo*?—of *moneo*?—of *rego*?—of *audio*? What are the terminations of all verbs in the active voice, indicative mood, perfect tense?—pluperfect tense?—future-perfect tense? Repeat the perfect indicative active of *amo*—of *moneo*, etc.

**NOTE.**—In reciting the perfect tense, both forms of the third person plural should be repeated; as *am-a vē'-runt*, or *am-a-vē'-re*.

**EXERCISE.**

Repeat the English of each verb in the paradigms, in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect.

Write the conjugation of *damno*, *terreo*, *scribo*, and *vestio*, in the same tenses.

## LESSON 55.

## ACTIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD—SECOND ROOT.

## EXERCISES.

I. Translate into English the following affirmative sentences:—

|                         |                                               |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Amavisti.</i>        | <i>Illi junx̄rant.</i>                        |
| <i>Pater monuērat.</i>  | <i>Milites audiv̄erunt. perf. def.</i>        |
| <i>Monuerimus.</i>      | <i>Duxistis.</i>                              |
| <i>Rexistis.</i>        | <i>Pater filium puniv̄rat.</i>                |
| <i>Audīvi.</i>          | <i>Milites nos vulnerav̄ere. perf. indec.</i> |
| <i>Fuēri tacuērunt.</i> | <i>Leōnes puēros terruērant.</i>              |
| <i>Tacueritis.</i>      | <i>Tu sciēris.*</i>                           |
| <i>Ille monuērit.</i>   | <i>Rex urbem muniv̄rat.</i>                   |

\* For *sciēris* from *scio* L. 49, R. 2.

II. Write each of the preceding sentences in the negative, interrogative, and interrogative-negative forms, and translate those forms.

III. Write the sentences in the first exercise, substituting the plural for the singular, and the singular for the plural, as. *Amaris-tis*; *Patres monuērant*, &c., and translate them.

IV. Translate into Latin the following English sentences:—

|                                       |                                         |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>Wilt thou have prepared?</i>       | <i>I have not been silent.</i>          |
| <i>I have prepared.</i>               | <i>Hast thou read the book?</i>         |
| <i>Thou hadst not prepared.</i>       | <i>I have not read the book.</i>        |
| <i>The king had led the soldiers.</i> | <i>The father advised the son.</i>      |
| <i>The king punished the leaders.</i> | <i>Thou wilt have finished.</i>         |
| <i>I have advised thee.</i>           | <i>He has freed his son.</i>            |
| <i>Hast thou advised me?</i>          | <i>Had he deserved?</i>                 |
| <i>Hast thou called the boy?</i>      | <i>The king has fortified the city.</i> |
| <i>We shall have called thee.</i>     | <i>They have not known.</i>             |

## LESSON 56.

## ACTIVE VOICE—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## TENSES DERIVED FROM THE FIRST ROOT.

Present, *may* or *can*.

|              |                                                                                                                                       |           |                                                                                                                            |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Term.</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} S. 1. em, & es, et; \\ 2. eam, & eas, eat; \\ 3. am, & an, at; \\ 4. iam, & ias, iat; \end{array} \right.$ | <i>P.</i> | $\begin{array}{ll} ēmus, & ētis, ent. \\ eāmus, & eātis, eant. \\ āmus, & ātis, ant. \\ īamus, & īatis, iant. \end{array}$ |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## 80 ACTIVE VOICE:—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, FIRST ROOT.

*I may love,*      *Thou mayst love,*      *He may love;*

|                      |            |            |
|----------------------|------------|------------|
| <i>S.</i> 1. a'-mem, | a'-mes,    | a'-met;    |
| 2. mo'-ne-am,        | mo'-ne-as, | mo'-ne-at; |
| 3. re'-gam,          | re'-gas,   | re'-gat;   |
| 4. au'-di-am,        | au'-di-as, | au'-di-at; |

*We may love,*      *Ye may love,*      *They may love.*

|                         |               |             |
|-------------------------|---------------|-------------|
| <i>P.</i> 1. a-mé'-mus, | a-mé'-tis,    | a'-ment.    |
| 2. mo-ne-a'-mus,        | mo-ne-a'-tis, | mo'-ne-ant. |
| 3. re-ga'-mus,          | re-ga'-tis,   | re'-gant.   |
| 4. au-di-a'-mus,        | au-di-a'-tis, | au'-di-ant. |

*Imperfect, might, could, would, or should.*

|                |                                |                                   |
|----------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Term.</i> { | <i>S.</i> 1. árem, áres, áret; | <i>P.</i> aremus, aréatis, árent. |
|                | 2. érem, éres, éret;           | erémus, eréatis, érent.           |
|                | 3. érem, éres, éret;           | erémus, eréatis, érent.           |
|                | 4. írem, íres, íret;           | íremus, íréatis, írent.           |

*I would love,*      *Thou wouldest love,*      *He would love;*

|                         |             |             |
|-------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| <i>S.</i> 1. a-má'-rem, | a-má'-res,  | a-má'-ret;  |
| 2. mo-né'-rem,          | mo-né'-res, | mo-né'-ret; |
| 3. reg'-é-rem,          | reg'-é-res, | reg'-é-ret; |
| 4. au-di'-rem,          | au-di'-res, | au-di'-ret; |

*We would love,*      *Ye would love,*      *They would love.*

|                            |                |              |
|----------------------------|----------------|--------------|
| <i>P.</i> 1. am-a-ré'-mus, | am-a-ré'-tis,  | a-má'-rent.  |
| 2. mon-e-ré'-mus,          | mon-e-ré'-tis, | mo-né'-rent. |
| 3. reg-e-ré'-mus,          | reg-e-ré'-tis, | reg'-é-rent. |
| 4. au-di-ré'-mus,          | au-di-ré'-tis, | au-di'-rent. |

**QUESTIONS.**—What are the terminations of the active voice, subjunctive mood, present tense, in the first conjugation?—in the second?—in the third?—in the fourth?—of the imperfect tense in the first conj. ?—in the second?—in the third?—in the fourth? Repeat the present subjunctive active of *amo*, &c.—the imperfect subjunctive active of *amo*, &c.

### EXERCISE.

Repeat the English of each of the verbs in the present subjunctive—in the imperfect. Write the conjugation of *damno*, *terreo*, *scribo*, and *vestio*, in the same tenses.

## LESSON 57.

## ACTIVE VOICE—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—FIRST ROOT.

1. In *dependent* sentences connected by *ut*, ‘that,’ and other similar connectives, the *present* subjunctive is often to be translated by *may*, sometimes by *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*, and sometimes by the indicative.

2. In *independent* sentences, the present subjunctive is used to express a *wish*, an *exhortation*, a *request*, a *command*, or a *permission*; as, *amet*, may he love, or let him love.

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English—

|                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Ut puer amet.               | Ut dicerētis.               |
| Ut puēri libos suos legant. | Ut milites bellum finirent. |
| Puer legat.                 | Ut librum legerētis.        |
| Ut moneāmus.                | Illi non pararent.          |
| Amicos moneāmus.            | Leōnes puērum terrērent.    |
| Ut rex regat.               | Puēri taceant.              |
| Ut habeātis.                | Rex regat.                  |

II. Change the singular for the plural and the plural for the singular, in each of the preceding sentences, and translate them.

3. When the present subjunctive is used to express a wish, an exhortation, &c., *not* is expressed by *ne*; as, *Ne scribat*, let him not write.

## III. Translate into Latin—

|                                  |                                       |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| That thou mayst know.            | Let us call.                          |
| They would advise.               | Let us not be silent.                 |
| That he could lead.              | They would punish.                    |
| That thou mayst have.            | May I read.                           |
| Let the boy have.                | Let me not hear.                      |
| Let not the boy have.            | Let them not wound.                   |
| Mayst thou hear.                 | That ye should love.                  |
| I should <sup>a</sup> be silent. | Shouldst <sup>a</sup> thou be silent. |

*a* *Should* in the subjunctive mood implies *supposition*, not *obligation*.

QUESTIONS.—How is the present subjunctive translated in dependent sentences? How is the present subjunctive used in independent sentences? When the subjunctive is used to express a wish, &c., how is *not* expressed in Latin?

## LESSON 58.

## ACTIVE VOICE—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## TENSES DERIVED FROM THE SECOND ROOT.

*Perfect, may have.**Term.—S. ērim, ēris, ērit; P. erimus, eritis, ēritis.**I may have loved, Thou mayst have loved, He may have loved;*

|                     |                |                |
|---------------------|----------------|----------------|
| S. 1. a-mav'-ē-rim, | a-mav'-ē-ris,  | a-mav'-ē-rit;  |
| 2. mo-nu'-ē-rim,    | mo-nu'-ē-ris,  | mo-nu'-ē-rit;  |
| 3. rex'-ē-rim,      | rex'-ē-ris,    | rex'-ē-rit;    |
| 4. au-div'-ē-rim,   | au-div'-ē-ris, | au-div'-ē-rit; |

*We may have loved, Ye may have loved, They may have loved.*

|                        |                  |                 |
|------------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| P. 1. am-a-ver'-i-mus, | am-a-ver'-i-tis, | a-mav'-ē-rint;  |
| 2. mon-u-er'-i-mus,    | mon-u-er'-i-tis, | mo-nu'-ē-rint;  |
| 3. rex-er'-i-mus,      | rex-er'-i-tis,   | rex'-ē-rint;    |
| 4. au-di-ver'-i-mus,   | au-di-er'-i-tis, | au-div'-ē-rint. |

*Pluperfect, might, could, would, or should have.**Term.—S. īsem, īsea, īset; P. īsemus, īsetis, īset.**I would have loved, Thou wouldst have loved, He would have loved;*

|                      |                 |                 |
|----------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| S. 1. am-a-vis'-sem, | am-a-vis'-ses,  | am-a-vis'-set;  |
| 2. mon-u-is'-sem,    | mon-u-is'-ses,  | mon-u-is'-set;  |
| 3. rex-is'-sem,      | rex-is'-ses,    | rex-is'-set;    |
| 4. au-di-vis'-sem,   | au-di-vis'-ses, | au-di-vis'-set; |

*We would have loved, Ye would have loved, They would have loved.*

|                         |                    |                  |
|-------------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| P. 1. am-a-vis-sē'-mus, | am-a-vis-sē'-tis,  | am-a-vis'-sent.  |
| 2. mon-u-is-sē'-mus,    | mon-u-is-sē'-tis,  | mon-u-is'-sent.  |
| 3. rex-is-sē'-mus,      | rex-is-sē'-tis,    | rex-is'-sent.    |
| 4. au-di-vis-sē'-mus,   | au-di-vis-sē'-tis, | au-di-vis'-sent. |

**QUESTIONS.**—What are the terminations of the active voice, subjunctive mood, perfect tense?—pluperfect tense? What tenses of the subjunctive are formed from the first root?—from the second root? What tenses of the indicative are wanting in the subjunctive? What is the first root of *amo*?—the second?—the third?—the first root of *moneo*?—the second?—the third?—the first root of *rego*?—the second?—the third?—the first root of *audio*?—the second?—the third? Repeat the perfect subjunctive active of *amo*, &c.—the pluperfect subjunctive active of *amo*, &c.

## EXERCISE.

Repeat the English of each of the preceding verbs in the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive. Write the conjugation of *damno*, *tereo*, *scribo*, and *vestio*, in the same tenses.

## LESSON 59.

## ACTIVE VOICE—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—SECOND ROOT.

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English—

|                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| Ut amavisset.           | Ut illi habuissent.      |
| Nonne amavissēmus?      | Habuissēmus.             |
| Monueritis.             | Ut oppidum muniveritis.  |
| Ut rex rexisset.        | Ut vulneraverit.         |
| Ut rex milites rexērit. | Nonne tacuissētis.       |
| Ut duces audivōrint.    | Tacuissēmus.             |
| Audivissētis.           | Ut puer liberum legōrit. |
| Puer avem liberavisset. | Finissem.*               |

(\*) *V* is often omitted in the third root. *Less. 49, R. 2.*

## II. Change the plural for the singular and the singular for the plural in each of the preceding sentences, and translate them.

## III. Translate into Latin—

|                              |                                     |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Shouldst thou have prepared? | May he not have led the army?       |
| I may have advised.          | Ye might have called.               |
| Ye may have had the book.    | Thou wouldst have been silent.      |
| Would he not have loved me?  | He would have joined the hands.     |
| He would have loved me.      | They would have known.              |
| Thou wouldst have finished.  | Thou wouldst have wounded the bird. |
| Wouldst thou have finished?  | Ye might have read.                 |
| Would he not have finished?  | They might have advised.            |
| He may have led the army.    |                                     |

## LESSON 60.

## ACTIVE VOICE—IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|       |                           |            |                      |       |
|-------|---------------------------|------------|----------------------|-------|
| Term. | S. 1. a or āto,           | āto;       | P. āte or atōte,     | ānto. |
|       | 2. e or ēto,              | ēto;       | ēte or etōte,        | ēnto. |
|       | 3. o or īto,              | īto;       | īte or itōte,        | īnto. |
|       | 4. i or īo,               | īo;        | īte or ītōte,        | īnto. |
|       | <i>Love or love thou,</i> |            | <i>Let him love;</i> |       |
|       | S. 1. a'-ma or a-mā'-to,  | a-mā'-to;  | a-mā'-to;            |       |
|       | 2. mo'-ne or mo-nē'-to,   | mo-nē'-to; | mo-nē'-to;           |       |
|       | 3. re'-ge or reg'-i-to,   | reg'-i-to; | reg'-i-to;           |       |
|       | 4. au'-di or au-di'-to,   | au-di'-to; | au-di'-to;           |       |

## 84 ACTIVE VOICE:—INPER., INFIX., PARTICIPLES.

|                               |                       |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Love or love ye,</i>       | <i>Let them love.</i> |
| P. 1. a-má-te or a-m-a-té-te, | a-man'-to.            |
| 2. mo-né-te or mo-n-a-té-te,  | mo-nen'-to.           |
| 3. reg-i-te or reg-i-té-te,   | re-gun'-to.           |
| 4. au-di-te or au-ci-té-te,   | au-di-un'-to.         |

### ACTIVE VOICE—INFINITIVE MOOD.

| Present.                            | Perfect.     | Future.               |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|-----------------------|
| <i>To love or<br/>to be loving.</i> | <i>Term.</i> | <i>To have loved.</i> |
| 1. a-má-re,                         | are.         | am-a-vis'-se,         |
| 2. mo-né-re,                        | are.         | mon-a-is'-se,         |
| 3. reg-i-re,                        | are.         | rex-is'-se,           |
| 4. au-di-re,                        | ire.         | au-di-vis'-se,        |

QUESTIONS.—From which root is the imperative formed? What are the terminations of the active voice, imperative mood, in the first conjugation?—in the second?—in the third?—in the fourth? What person is wanting in the Latin imperative? Repeat the present imperative active of *esse*, etc. From which root is the present infinitive active formed? What is its termination in the first conj.?—in the second?—in the third?—in the fourth? From which root is the perfect infinitive active formed? What is its termination? From which root is the future in finitive active formed?

NOTE.—*Esse* (to be) in the future infinitive is from the verb *essam*. See Lesson 62.

### EXERCISES.

Translate—

|                    |         |         |                        |
|--------------------|---------|---------|------------------------|
| I. Amanto.         | Mone.   | Dicite. | Sciunto.               |
| Parate.            | Tacête. | Audi.   | Finito.                |
| II. Call thou.     |         |         | Let the lion terrify.  |
| Let him call.      |         |         | Finish thou.           |
| Let him be silent. |         |         | Let him say.           |
| Let them punish.   |         |         | Let the soldiers have. |
| Lead ye.           |         |         | Prepare thou.          |

Write the imperative and infinitive active of *damno*, *terreo*, *scribo*, and *vestio*.

## LESSON 61.

### PARTICIPLES..

Present. Future.

|                |       |                         |       |
|----------------|-------|-------------------------|-------|
| Loving.        | Term. | About or going to love. | Term. |
| 1. a'-mans,    | ans.  | 1. am-a-tú'-rus,        |       |
| 2. mo'-nens,   | ens.  | 2. mon-i-tú'-rus,       |       |
| 3. re'-gens,   | ens.  | 3. rec-tú'-rus,         |       |
| 4. au'-di-ens, | tens. | 4. au-di-tú'-rus,       |       |

## GERUND.

| Gen. of loving.  | Dat. to or for loving. | Acc. loving.   | Abl. by loving |
|------------------|------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. a-man'-di,    | a-man'-do,             | a-man'-dum,    | a-man'-do.     |
| 2. mo-nen'-di,   | mo-nen'-do,            | mo-nen'-dum,   | mo-nen'-do.    |
| 3. re-gen'-di,   | re-gen'-do,            | re-gen'-dum,   | re-gen'-do.    |
| 4. au-di-en'-di, | au-di-en'-do,          | au-di-en'-dum, | au-di-en'-do.  |

## FORMER SUPINE.

|                           |                         |       |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|-------|
| 1. a-má-tum, to love.     | 3. rec'-tum, to rule.   | Term. |
| 2. mon'-i-tum, to advise. | 4. au-di'-tum, to hear. | um.   |

QUESTIONS.—From which root is the present participle formed? What is its termination in the first conjugation?—in the second?—in the third?—in the fourth? Repeat the present participle of *amo*, &c.—the future active participle of *amo*, &c. Decline *amans*, (see Less. 37.) From which root is the future active participle formed? What is its termination? Decline *amalitrus*, (see Less. 29.) From which root is the gerund formed? Of which declension is the gerund? What cases of the gerund are wanting? Of which number is the gerund? From which root is the former supine formed? What is its termination? What is the third root of *amo*?—of *moneo*?—of *rego*?—of *audio*?

## Translate—

## EXERCISES.

|                                |                                 |           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------|
| I. Libérans,                   | muniens,                        | tacens.   |
| liberatúrus,                   | munitúrus,                      | tacitúrus |
| habens,                        | vulnérans,                      | legens.   |
| habitúrus,                     | vulneratírus,                   | lectúrus. |
| Puer librum legens.            | Pater filium moníturus.         |           |
| II. The father loving the son. | The king ruling the kingdom.    |           |
| The boy about-to-read.         | The mother about-to-advise.     |           |
| For-the-boy reading.           | To-the-soldiers about-to-wound. |           |

## LESSON 62.

## SUM.

1. *Sum*, ‘I am,’ when connected with a participle, is called an *auxiliary verb*; when used without a participle, it is called the *substantive verb*.
2. *Sum* is irregular in the parts derived from the first root *es*, but regular in those derived from the second root *fu*, and the third root *fut*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| Pres. Indic. | Pres. Infinit. | Perf. Indic. | Fut. Part.  |
|--------------|----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Sum,         | es'-se,        | fu'-i,       | fu-tū'-rua. |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

TENSES DERIVED FROM THE FIRST ROOT.

## Present.

## Singular.

sum, *I am,*  
es, *thou art,*  
est, *he is;*

## Plural.

su'-mus, *we are,*  
es-tis, *ye are,*  
sunt, *they are.*

## Imperfect.

e'-ram, *I was,*  
e'-ras, *thou wast,*  
e'-rat, *he was;*

e-rā'-mus, *we were,*  
e-rā'-tis, *ye were,*  
e'-rant, *they were.*

## Future, shall or will.

e'-ro, *I shall be,*  
e'-ris, *thou will be,*  
e'-rit, *he will be;*

er'-i-mus, *we shall be,*  
er'-i-tis, *ye will be,*  
e'-runt, *they will be.*

**REMARK.**—The imperfect of the indicative of *sunt* is the same as the termination of the *pluperfect* of other verbs, and the future is the same as the termination of the *future perfect* of other verbs, except in the third person plural, where it has *s* instead of *t*.

**QUESTIONS.**—When is *sunt* an auxiliary verb?—when a substantive verb? In what parts is *sunt* irregular? What are its roots?—its principal parts? Repeat its present tense—it's imperfect, &c. What does its imperfect indicative resemble?—its pluperfect?—its future-perfect?

## EXERCISES.

## Translate—

I. Corvus est niger.

Nostrī milites erant fortes.

Nix est alba.

Boni homines erunt felices.

Tempus est breve.

Nos erāmus miserrimi.

Meus canis est fidus.

Tu es incolumis.

II. Change the plural for the singular and the singular for the plural in each of the preceding sentences, and translate them.

III. We are happy.

The lions were fierce.

Ye are free.

Good kings are merciful.

The way was difficult.

Ye will be very-great.

I was happy.

Nero was very-cruel.

Thou wast happier.

The soldier was very-brave.

## LATIN VOCABULARY.

|                    |          |
|--------------------|----------|
| albus, a, um.      | white.   |
| arbor, bris, f.    | a tree.  |
| benignus, .        | kind.    |
| bonus, a, um, .    | good.    |
| brevis, e,         | short.   |
| canis, is, m. & f. | a dog.   |
| corvus, i, m.      | a raven. |

|                     |           |
|---------------------|-----------|
| crudelis, e, .      | cruel.    |
| diligens, e, .      | diligent. |
| felix, icis, .      | happy.    |
| fides, a, um, .     | faithful. |
| fortis, e, .        | brave.    |
| homo, inis, m. & f. | a man.    |
| incolumis, e,       | safe.     |

|                                 |                   |                           |                 |
|---------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|-----------------|
| manus, <i>ūs, f.</i>            | <i>a hand.</i>    | nix, <i>nīvīs,</i>        | <i>snow.</i>    |
| meus, <i>a, um;</i>             | <i>my.</i>        | noster, <i>trā, trūm,</i> | <i>our.</i>     |
| miles, <i>ītīs, m. &amp; f.</i> | <i>a soldier.</i> | plenus, <i>a, um,</i>     | <i>full.</i>    |
| miser, <i>ītīs, m.</i>          | <i>miserable.</i> | prudens, <i>tīs,</i>      | <i>prudent.</i> |
| mitis, <i>a, um,</i>            | <i>mild.</i>      | puer, <i>i, m.</i>        | <i>a boy.</i>   |
| niger, <i>gra, grūm,</i>        | <i>black.</i>     | tempus, <i>ōrīs, n.</i>   | <i>time.</i>    |

## ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

|                   |                              |                       |                                 |
|-------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| black, . . .      | <i>niger, gra, grūm.</i>     | happier, . . .        | <i>felicior, us.</i>            |
| brave, . . .      | <i>fortis i.</i>             | very-happy, . . .     | <i>felicissimus, a, um.</i>     |
| very-brave, . . . | <i>fortissimus.</i>          | king, . . .           | <i>rex, regis, m.</i>           |
| cruel, . . .      | <i>crudēlis, e.</i>          | lion, . . .           | <i>leo, ōnīs, m.</i>            |
| very cruel, . . . | <i>crudelissimus.</i>        | man, . . .            | <i>homo, ūnis, m. &amp; f.</i>  |
| difficult, . . .  | <i>dīffīcīlis, e.</i>        | merciful, . . .       | <i>clemens, a.</i>              |
| dog, . . .        | <i>cānis, ī, m. &amp; f.</i> | miserable, . . .      | <i>miser, a, um.</i>            |
| free, . . .       | <i>liber, a, um.</i>         | very-miserable, . . . | <i>miserissimus, a, um.</i>     |
| faithful, . . .   | <i>fīdūs, a, um.</i>         | Nero, . . .           | <i>Nero, ūnis, m.</i>           |
| fierce, . . .     | <i>ferox, ūcis.</i>          | raven, . . .          | <i>corvus, ī, m.</i>            |
| good, . . .       | <i>bonus, a, um.</i>         | short, . . .          | <i>brevis, e.</i>               |
| great, . . .      | <i>magnus, a, um.</i>        | soldier, . . .        | <i>miles, ūnis, m. &amp; f.</i> |
| very-great, . . . | <i>maximus, a, um.</i>       | time, . . .           | <i>tempus, ūris, n.</i>         |
| happy, . . .      | <i>felix, ūcis.</i>          | way, . . .            | <i>via, a, f.</i>               |

## LESSON 63.

INDICATIVE MOOD. (*Continued.*)

## TENSES DERIVED FROM THE SECOND ROOT.

Perfect, (definite,) *have been*; (indefinite,) *was*.

## Singular.

*fu'-i, I have been,*  
*fu-is'-ti, thou hast been,*  
*fu'-it, he has been;*

## Plural.

*fu'-i-mus, we have been,*  
*fu-is'-tis, ye have been,*  
*fu'-s-runt or -re, they have been.*

Pluperfect, *had*.

*fu'-s-ram, I had been,*  
*fu'-s-ras, thou hadst been,*  
*fu'-s-rat, he had been;*

*fu-e-rā'-mus, we had been,*  
*fu-e-rā'-tis, ye had been,*  
*fu'-s-rant, they had been.*

Future-Perfect, *shall or will have*.

*fu'-s-ro, I shall have been,*  
*fu'-s-ris, thou will have been,*  
*fu'-s-rit, he will have been;* ; *fu'-s-rint, they will have been.*

QUESTIONS.—What is the second root of *sum*? What tenses of the indicative mood are derived from the second root? What are the terminations of the perfect *decs.*? Repeat the perfect, *decs.* What is the English of this verb in the perfect definite?—in the perfect indefinite? Repeat the English of the pluperfect without the Latin,—of the future-perfect.

## EXERCISES.

Translate—

I. Fuisti fidus.

Milites crudēles fuērunt.

Puer diligens fuit.

Meæ manus plenæ fuēre.

Fuerāmus.

Ille homo fuit prudentissimus.

Felices fuerimus.

Nos incolūmes fuerimus

Vos feliciores fueritis.

Fidi fuerāmus.

II. Change the plural for the singular and the singular for the plural in each of the preceding sentences, and translate them.

III. The ravens were black.

Ye have been happier.

The dogs had been faithful.

Thou wast very-happy.

The time will have been short.

I had been very-miserable.

The soldiers had been brave.

The good king was merciful.

We have been happy.

The men had been free.

## LESSON 64.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## TENSES DERIVED FROM THE FIRST ROOT.

Present, may.

Singular.

es-im, I may be,  
es-is, thou mayst be,  
es-sit, he may be;

Plural.

si'-mus, we may be,  
si'-tis, ye may be,  
sint, they may be.

Imperfect, might, could, would, or should.

es'-sem, I might be,  
es'-ses, thou mightst be,  
es'-set, he might be;es-sé'-mus, we might be,  
es-sé'-tis, ye might be,  
es'-sent, they might be.

## TENSES DERIVED FROM THE SECOND ROOT.

Perfect, may have.

fu'-é-rim, I may have been,  
fu'-é-ris, thou mayst have been,  
fu'-é-rit, he may have been;fu-er'-i-mus, we may have been,  
fu-er'-i-tis, ye may have been,  
fu'-é-rint, they may have been.

Pluperfect, might, could, would, or should have.

fu-is'-sem, I might have been,  
fu-is'-ses, thou mightst have been,  
fu-is'-set, he might have been;fu-is-sé'-mus, we might have been,  
fu-is-sé'-tis, ye might have been,  
fu-is'-sent, they might have been.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*es or es'-to, be or be thou,*      *es'-te or es-to'-te, be or be ye.*  
*es'-to, let him be;*      *sun'-to, let them be.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present.* *es'-se, to be.*      *Perfect.* *fu-is'-se, to have been.*  
*Future.* *fu-tū'-rus es'-se, to be about to be.*

## PARTICIPLE.

*Present.* —      *Future.* *fu-tū'-rus, about to be.*

NOTE.—The subjunctive in wishes, &c., may be translated thus:—

*Pres.* May I be, &c.      *Imperf.* Might I be, &c.

*Perf.* May I have been, &c.      *Pluperf.* Might I have been, &c.

QUESTIONS.—Which tenses of the subjunctive mood are derived from the first root?—from the second? From which root is the imperative formed?—the present infinitive?—the perfect infinitive?—the future infinitive?—the future participle? Repeat the subjunctive present, &c. How may this verb be translated in wishes, &c.?

## EXERCISES.

Translate—

|                                     |                            |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| I. Sis felix. <sup>a</sup>          | Estōte benignæ.            |
| Puer sit bonus. <sup>a</sup>        | Puēri sunto diligentiōres. |
| Sint puēri feliciōres. <sup>a</sup> | Essēmus prudentiōres.      |
| Leōnes fuissent crudeliōres.        | Fueritis incolumēs.        |
| Este boni.                          | Fuisses mitior.            |

II. Change the plural for the singular and the singular for the plural in each of the preceding sentences, and translate them.

|                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| III. He may be happier.         | Be thou merciful.            |
| May he be happier. <sup>a</sup> | Be ye merciful.              |
| He might have been better.      | Let the soldiers be brave.   |
| They may have been prudent.     | Let the boy be diligent.     |
| The lions would be very-cruel.  | Let us be good. <sup>a</sup> |

(a) The subjunctive used to express a *wish*, &c. *Lem. 57, Remark.*

## LESSON 65.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

1. The *principal parts* in the passive voice are, the *present indicative*, the *present infinitive*, and the *perfect participle*.
2. The second root is not found in the passive voice.
3. Those tenses which, in the active voice, are derived from the second root, are, in the passive, compounded of the perfect participle and the auxiliary *sum*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | <i>Pres. Infin.</i> | <i>Perf. Part.</i> |                  |
|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. A'-mor,          | a-má'-ri,           | a-má'-tus,         | (to be loved.)   |
| 2. Mo'-ne-or,       | mo-ná'-ri,          | mon'-i-tus,        | (to be advised.) |
| 3. Re'-gor,         | re'-gi,             | rec'-tus,          | (to be ruled.)   |
| 4. Au-di-or,        | au-di'-ri,          | au-di'-tus,        | (to be heard.)   |

4. In the passive voice the conjugations may be distinguished from each other by the termination of the present infinitive. See Less. 48.

The first conjugation ends in *āri*.

The second     "         "         *ēri*.

The third     "         "         *i.*

The fourth     "         "         *tri.*

5. The perfect participle is formed from the third root by adding *us*; as, *amāt-*, *amātus*; *monit-*, *monitus*; *rect-*, *rectus*; *audit-*, *auditus*.

QUESTIONS.—What are the principal parts in the passive voice? What root is not found in the passive voice? How are those tenses formed in the passive voice which in the active are formed from the second root? Repeat the principal parts of *amo* in the passive voice—of *moneo*, &c. How may the conjugations be distinguished from each other in the passive voice? How does the first conjugation end?—*ēci*. How is the perfect participle formed?

## EXERCISE.

Write down the principal parts of the following verbs, in both voices:—first conjugation, *accuso*, to accuse; *estimo*, to value; *célébro*, to celebrate; *paro*, to prepare:—in the second conj., *habeo*, to have; *moneo*, to admonish; *terreo*, to terrify:—in the third conj., *carpo*, to pluck; *dico*, to say; *jungo*, to join; *acuo*, to sharpen:—in the fourth, *finio*, to finish.

## LESSON 66.

## PASSIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

## TENSES DERIVED FROM THE FIRST ROOT.

Present, *am*.

|           |                                 |           |                           |
|-----------|---------------------------------|-----------|---------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> | 1. or,    éris or ère,    ëtar; | <i>P.</i> | ämur,    amInI,    antur. |
| 2. or,    | éris or ère,    ëtar;           | émur,     | emInI,    entur.          |
| 3. or,    | éris or ère,    ëtar;           | Imur,     | imInI,    untur.          |
| 4. or,    | éris or ère,    ëtar;           | imur,     | imInI,    iuntur.         |

*I am loved,*      *Thou art loved,*      *He is loved;*

|                      |                     |                      |
|----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| <i>S.</i> 1. a'-mor, | a-mä'-ris or -re,*  | <i>P.</i> a-mä'-tur; |
| 2. mo'-ne-or,        | mo-nä'-ris or -re,  | mo-në'-tur;          |
| 3. re'-gor,          | reg'-ä'-ris or -re, | reg'-i-tur;          |
| 4. au'-di-or,        | au-di'-ris or -re,  | au-di'-tur;          |

*We are loved,*      *Ye are loved,*      *They are loved.*

|                         |               |                |
|-------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>P.</i> 1. a-mä'-mur, | a-mam'-i-ni,  | a-man'-tur.    |
| 2. mo-në'-mur,          | mo-nem'-i-ni, | mo-nen'-tur.   |
| 3. reg'-i-mur,          | reg-im'-i-ni, | re-gün'-tur.   |
| 4. au-di'-mur,          | au-dim'-i-ni, | au-di-un'-tur. |

Imperfect, *was*.

|                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> 1. ëbar, abärís or abäre, abätur; <i>P.</i> abämur, abamInI, abantur. |
| 2. ëbar, ebärís or ebäre, ebätur;                                               |
| 3. ëbar, ebärís or ebäre, ebätur;                                               |
| 4. iëbar, iebärís or iebäre, iebätur;                                           |

*I was loved,*      *Thou wast loved,*      *He was loved;*

|                         |                         |                  |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|------------------|
| <i>S.</i> 1. a-mä'-bar, | am-a-bä'-ris or -re,*   | am-a-bä'-tur;    |
| 2. mo-në'-bar,          | mon-e-bä'-ris or -re,   | mon-e-bä'-tur;   |
| 3. re-gä'-bar,          | reg-e-bä'-ris or -re,   | reg-e-bä'-tur;   |
| 4. au-di'-ä'-bar,       | au-di-e-bä'-ris or -re, | au-di-e-bä'-tur; |

*We were loved,*      *Ye were loved,*      *They were loved.*

|                            |                    |                   |
|----------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| <i>P.</i> 1. am-a-bä'-mur, | am-a-bam'-i-ni,    | am-a-ban'-tur.    |
| 2. mon-e-bä'-mur,          | mon-e-bam'-i-ni,   | mon-e-ban'-tur.   |
| 3. reg-e-bä'-mur,          | reg-e-bam'-i-ni,   | reg-e-ban'-tur.   |
| 4. au-di-e-bä'-mur,        | au-di-e-bam'-i-ni, | au-di-e-ban'-tur. |

Future, *shall* or *will be*.

|                                             |                                     |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> 1. ëbor, abärís or abäre, abëtut; | <i>P.</i> abämur, abimInI, abuntur. |
| 2. ëbor, ebärís or ebäre, ebëtut;           | ebämur, ebimInI, ebuntur.           |
| 3. ar,    èris or ère,    ëtut;             | émur, emInI, entur.                 |
| 4. ar,    èris or ère,    ëtut;             | émur, emInI, entur.                 |

## 92 PASSIVE VOICE :—INDIC. MOOD, FIRST ROOT.

| <i>I shall be loved,</i>                                           | <i>Thou will be loved,</i>                                                                  | <i>He will be loved;</i>                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| S. 1. a-mâ'-bor,<br>2. mo-nâ'-bor,<br>3. re'-gar,<br>4. au'-di-ar, | a-mab'-ë-ris or -re,<br>mo-neb'-ë-ris or -re,<br>re-gë'-ris or -re,<br>au-di-ë'-ris or -re, | a-mab'-i-tur;<br>mo-neb'-i-tur;<br>re-gë'-turst;<br>au-di-ë'-turst; |
| <i>P. 1. a-mab'-i-mur,</i>                                         | <i>am-a-bim'-i-ni,</i>                                                                      | <i>a<u>m</u>-a-bun'-turst.</i>                                      |
| 2. mo-neb'-i-mur,<br>3. re-gë'-mур,<br>4. au-di-ë'-mур,            | mon-e-bim'-i-ni,<br>re-gem'-i-ni,<br>au-di-em'-i-ni,                                        | mon-e-bun'-turst.<br>re-gen'-turst.<br>au-di-en'-turst.             |

(a) Both forms of the second person singular should be repeated ; as, *amabis* or *amâre*, &c.

QUESTIONS.—What is the first root of *amo*?—of *moneo*?—of *rego*?—of *audio*? What are the terminations of the passive voice, indicative mood, present tense, in the first conjugation?—in the second?—in the third?—in the fourth?—of the imperfect tense in the first conj. ?—in the second?—in the third?—in the fourth?—of the future tense in the first conj. ?—in the second?—in the third?—in the fourth? Repeat the present indicative passive of *amo*, &c.—the imperfect—the future.

### EXERCISE.

Repeat the English of each of the preceding verbs in the present, imperfect, and future indicative passive. Write the conjugation of *damno*, *terreo*, *scribo*, and *vestio*, in the same tenses.

## LESSON 67.

### PASSIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD—FIRST ROOT.

#### FORMS.

Affirmative, *Puer amâtur*, The boy is loved.

Negative, *Puer non amâtur*, The boy is not loved.

Interrogative, *Puerne amâtur?* Is the boy loved?

Interrogative-negative, *Nonne puer amâtur?* Is not the boy loved?

#### EXERCISES.

- I. Translate into English the following affirmative sentences :—

|                  |                             |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| Ille amabitur.   | Punimini.                   |
| Tu monêris.      | Terrebêris.                 |
| Vos regebamini.  | Milites nostri terrebantur. |
| Illi audiuntur.  | Puer puniebatur.            |
| Nos liberabimus. | Miles vulneratûr.           |
| Liberâris.       | Urbs muniêtur.              |
| Parabêris.       | Parabarîs.                  |

II. Write each of the preceding sentences in the negative, interrogative, and interrogative-negative forms, and translate those forms into English.

III. Change the singular for the plural, and the plural for the singular, in each sentence in the first exercise, and translate them.

IV. Translate into Latin the following English sentences :—

|                                   |                                        |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Are you ( <i>pl.</i> ) prepared ? | The soldier is not wounded.            |
| We are prepared.                  | Will they be prepared ?                |
| Wilt thou be terrified ?          | We shall not be prepared.              |
| I shall not be terrified.         | Am I not advised ?                     |
| Were not the soldiers led ?       | Robbers <sup>2</sup> will be punished. |
| The soldiers were led.            | Will not a robber be punished ?        |
| The books <sup>a</sup> are read.  | The hands were joined.                 |
| Is the soldier wounded ?          | He was called.                         |

(a) A book, *liber*, *br.*, *m.*

(b) A robber, *latro*, *omis*, *m.*

## LESSON 68.

### PASSIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### TENSES DERIVED FROM THE THIRD ROOT.

Perfect, (definite,) *have been* ; (indefinite,) *was*.

|                  |                            |                              |                                   |
|------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Term.— <i>S.</i> | -us, { sum<br>or ful,      | -us, { es or<br>fuisti,      | -us, { est or<br>fuit;            |
| <i>P.</i>        | -i, { sumus or<br>fulimus, | -i, { esatis or<br>fuisisti, | -i, { sunt, fuērunt,<br>or fuēre. |

*I have been loved, Thou hast been loved, He has been loved;*

|                |             |             |            |
|----------------|-------------|-------------|------------|
| <i>S.</i>      | a-mā'-tus,  | a-mā'-tus,  | a-mā'-tus, |
| 2. mon'-i-tus, | sum or      | mon'-i-tus, | est or     |
| 3. rec'-tus,   | fu'-i,      | rec'-tus,   | rec'-tus,  |
| 4. au-di'-tus, | au-di'-tus, | fu-is'-ti,  | fu'-it;    |

*We have been loved, Ye have been loved, They have been loved.*

|               |            |            |            |
|---------------|------------|------------|------------|
| <i>P.</i>     | a-mā'-ti,  | a-mā'-ti,  | a-mā'-ti,  |
| 2. mon'-i-ti, | su'-mus or | mon'-i-ti, | mon'-i-ti, |
| 3. rec'-ti,   | fu'-i-mus, | rec'-ti,   | rec'-ti,   |
| 4. au-di'-ti, | au-di'-ti, | fu-is'-ti, | fu'-re.    |

Pluperfect, *had been.*

|                  |                              |                              |                           |
|------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Term.— <i>S.</i> | -us, { eram or<br>fuēram,    | -us, { eras or<br>fuēras,    | -us, { erat or<br>fuērat; |
| <i>P.</i>        | -i, { erāmus or<br>fuērāmus, | -i, { erātis or<br>fuērātis, | -i, { erant or<br>fuērant |

## 94 PASSIVE VOICE:—INDIC. MOOD, THIRD ROOT.

| <i>I had been loved,</i>     | <i>Thou hadst been loved, He had been loved;</i> |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 1. a-mā'-tus, { e'-ram or    | a-mā'-tus, { e'-ras or                           |
| 2. mon'-i-tus, } fu'-ē-ram,  | mon'-i-tus, } fu'-ē-res,                         |
| 3. rec'-tus, } fu'-ē-ram,    | rec'-tus, } fu'-ē-res,                           |
| 4. au-di'-tus, } au-di'-ram, | au-di'-tus, } au-di'-res,                        |

| <i>We had been loved,</i>   | <i>Ye had been loved,</i> | <i>They had been loved.</i> |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| P. a-mā'-ti, { e-rā'-mus    | a-mā'-ti, { e-rā'-tis     | a-mā'-ti, { e'-rant or      |
| 2. mon'-i-ti, } or fu-e-    | mon'-i-ti, } or fu-e-     | mon'-i-ti, } e'-rant or     |
| 3. rec'-ti, } rā'-mus,      | rec'-ti, } rā'-tis,       | rec'-ti, } fu'-ē-rant.      |
| 4. au-di'-ti, } au-di'-tis, | au-di'-ti, } au-di'-tis,  | au-di'-ti, } au-di'-tis,    |

### Future-Perfect, shall or will have been.

|                 |                                |                                |                              |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Term.—S.</i> | -us, { ero or<br>{ fuero,      | -us, { eris or<br>{ fuēris,    | -us, { erit or<br>{ fuērit,  |
| P.              | -i, { erimus or<br>{ fuerimus, | -i, { eritis or<br>{ fueritis, | -i, { erunt or<br>{ fuerint. |

| <i>I shall have been loved, Thou will have been, &amp;c.,</i> | <i>He will have been, &amp;c.</i> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. a-mā'-tus, { e'-ro or                                      | a-mā'-tus, { e'-ris or            |
| 2. mon'-i-tus, } fu'-ē-ro,                                    | mon'-i-tua, { e'-ris or           |
| 3. rec'-tus, } fu'-ē-ro,                                      | rec'-tus, } fu'-ē-ris,            |
| 4. au-di'-tus, } au-di'-tis,                                  | au-di'-tus, } au-di'-tis,         |

| <i>We shall have been, &amp;c.,</i> | <i>Ye will have been, &amp;c.,</i> | <i>They will have been, &amp;c.</i> |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| P. a-mā'-ti, { er'-i-mus            | a-mā'-ti, { er'-i-tis              | a-mā'-ti, { e'-runt or              |
| 2. mon'-i-ti, { or                  | mon'-i-ti, { er'-i-tis or          | mon'-i-ti, { or fu'-ē-              |
| 3. rec'-ti, { fu-er'-i-             | rec'-ti, { fu-er'-i-tis,           | rec'-ti, { rint.                    |
| 4. au-di'-ti, } mus,                | au-di'-ti, } au-di'-tis,           | au-di'-ti, }                        |

**QUESTIONS.**—How is the perfect passive formed? (Answer. By means of the perfect participle and the present and perfect of *sum*.)—the pluperfect!—the future-perfect! Repeat the perfect indicative passive of *amo*, *etc.*

### EXERCISE.

Repeat the English of the preceding verbs in the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect. Write the conjugation of *damno*, *terreo*, *scribo*, and *vestio*, in the same tenses.

## LESSON 69.

### PASSIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD—THIRD ROOT.

#### FORMS.

Affirmative, *Puer amatus est.*

Negative, *Puer non amatus est.*

Interrogative, *Puerne amatus est?*

Interrogative-negative, *Nonne puer amatus est?*

EXERCISES.

I. Translate into English—

|                                       |                                                        |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Vocatus eras.                         | Miles ductus fuit.                                     |
| Illi moniti fu <small>er</small> int. | Puer punitus fu <small>er</small> at.                  |
| Moniti eratis.                        | Illi puniti fu <small>ere</small> .                    |
| Rectus eris.                          | Aves territ <small>u</small> s fu <small>ere</small> . |
| Milites recti erant.                  | Territi eratis.                                        |
| Auditus fu <small>ero</small> .       | Domus parata fu <small>er</small> at.                  |
| Audit <i>i</i> estis.                 | Vocatus fu <small>er</small> is.                       |
| Ducti eramus.                         | Puella amata fu <small>er</small> it.                  |
| Agmen ductum est.                     | Agmina ducta erant.                                    |

(a) *Agmen*, *inīs*, *n.* an army. (b) *Avis*, *is*, *f.* a bird. (c) *Puella*, *a*, *f.* a girl.

II. Write each of the preceding sentences in the other three forms and translate them into English.

III. Change the numbers of the nouns, pronouns, and verbs in each sentence of the first exercise, and translate them.

IV. Translate into Latin—

|                                  |                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| I shall have been called.        | Were ye not terrified ?        |
| Wilt not thou have been called ? | We were terrified.             |
| The girls had been terrified.    | The bird will have been freed. |
| The soldiers were not terrified. | The city had been fortified.   |
| Ye will not have been advised.   | The books were read.           |
| Had the book been read ?         | Were the robbers punished ?    |
| The book will have been read.    | The robbers were punished.     |
| The girl had been called.        | The army was prepared.         |

LESSON 70.

PASSIVE VOICE—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

TENSES DERIVED FROM THE FIRST ROOT.

Present, *may* or *can be*.

|        |           |                                  |                |                   |                  |         |
|--------|-----------|----------------------------------|----------------|-------------------|------------------|---------|
| Tense. | S. 1. er, | ér <i>is</i> or ére,             | é <i>tur</i> ; | P. é <i>mur</i> , | em <i>ini</i> ,  | entur.  |
|        | 2. ear,   | é <i>aris</i> or é <i>aire</i> , | é <i>tur</i> ; | é <i>amur</i> ,   | em <i>ini</i> ,  | cantur. |
|        | 3. ar,    | á <i>ris</i> or á <i>re</i> ,    | á <i>tur</i> ; | á <i>mur</i> ,    | am <i>ini</i> ,  | antur.  |
|        | 4. iar,   | á <i>ris</i> or á <i>re</i> ,    | á <i>tur</i> ; | á <i>lumur</i> ,  | lam <i>ini</i> , | lantur. |

*I may be loved,*

S. 1. a'-mer,

2. mo'-ne-ar,

3. re'-gar,

4. au'-di-ar,

*Thou mayst be loved,*

a-mé'-ris or -re,

mo-ne-á'-ris or -re,

re-gá'-ris or -re,

au-di-á'-ris or -re,

*He may be loved;*

a-mé'-tur;

mo-ne-á'-tur;

re-gá'-tur;

au-di-á'-tur;

## 96 PASSIVE VOICE:—SUBJUNCT. MOOD, FIRST ROOT.

*We may be loved, Ye may be loved, They may be loved.*

|       |               |                 |                |
|-------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| P. 1. | a-mé'-mur,    | a-mem'-i-ni,    | a-men'-tur.    |
| 2.    | mo-ne-á'-mur, | mo-ne-am'-i-ni, | mo-ne-an'-tur. |
| 3.    | re-gá'-mur,   | re-gam'-i-ni,   | re-gan'-tur.   |
| 4.    | au-di-á'-mur, | au-di-am'-i-ni, | au-di-an'-tur. |

*Imperfect, might, could, would, or should be.*

|        |       |                                 |                             |
|--------|-------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Tense. | S. 1. | írer, arérīs or arérē, aréturn; | P. arémur, aremīni, arentur |
|        | 2.    | írer, erérīs or erérē, eréturn; | erémur, eremīni, erentur    |
|        | 3.    | írer, erérīs or erérē, eréturn; | erémur, eremīni, erentur    |
|        | 4.    | írer, irérīs or irérē, iréturn; | irémur, iremīni, irentur.   |

*I would be loved, Thou wouldest be loved, He wouldest be loved;*

|       |                |                       |                |
|-------|----------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| S. 1. | a-má'-rer.     | am-a-ré'-ris or -re,  | am-a-ré'-tur;  |
| 2.    | mon-e-ré'-rer, | mon-e-ré'-ris or -re, | mon-e-ré'-tur; |
| 3.    | reg-e-ré'-rer, | reg-e-ré'-ris or -re, | reg-e-ré'-tur; |
| 4.    | au-di-rer,     | au-di-ré'-ris or -re, | au-di-ré'-tur; |

*We would be loved, Ye would be loved, They would be loved.*

|       |                |                  |                 |
|-------|----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| P. 1. | am-a-ré'-mur,  | am-a-rem'-i-ni,  | am-a-ren'-tur.  |
| 2.    | mon-e-ré'-mur, | mon-e-rem'-i-ni, | mon-e-ren'-tur. |
| 3.    | reg-e-ré'-mur, | reg-e-rem'-i-ni, | reg-e-ren'-tur. |
| 4.    | au-di-ré'-mur, | au-di-rem'-i-ni, | au-di-ren'-tur. |

QUESTIONS.—What are the terminations of the passive voice, subjunctive mood, present tense, in the first conj. ?—in the second ?—in the third ?—in the fourth ?—of the imperfect tense in the first conj. ?—in the second ?—in the third ?—in the fourth ? Repeat the present subjunctive passive of *amo*, etc.—the imperfect, etc.

### EXERCISE.

Repeat the English of each of the preceding verbs in the present and imperfect tenses. Write *danno*, *tereo*, *scribo*, and *vestio*, in the same tenses.

---

## LESSON 71.

### PASSIVE VOICE—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—FIRST ROOT.

#### EXERCISES.

(See Lesson 57, N. 1, 2, and 3.)

I. Translate into English—

|                             |                                  |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Vos amemini. (Less. 57. 2.) | Ut populus regatur.              |
| Ut vos amemini.             | Non audiérīs.                    |
| Ut ille amētūr.             | Audiāmūr.                        |
| Puer mōmētūr.               | Ut agmen ducātur.                |
| Ut mōmētūi.                 | Agmen ne ducatur. (Less. 57. 3.) |

PASSIVE VOICE :—SUBJUNCT. MOOD, THIRD ROOT. 97

|                         |                    |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| Ut liberarēmur.         | Liber non legatūr. |
| Puer non terretur.      | Ut puer moneretur. |
| Ut latrōnes punirentur. | Ut liberēris.      |
| Ut tu parēris.          | Avis liberētur.    |
| Liber legatur.          | Puer ne puniatūr.  |

II. Change the numbers of the nouns, pronouns and verbs in each of the preceding sentences, and translate them.

III. Translate into Latin—

|                                     |                               |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| That the boy may be loved.          | That the army may be led.     |
| Let the boy be loved.               | That the book should be read. |
| He would be advised.                | Let us be prepared.           |
| The city could be fortified.        | That he may be called.        |
| Could not the city be fortified?    | Let the book be read.         |
| Can the kingdom be ruled?           | Ye might be wounded.          |
| The lion would not be terrified.    | The bird might be freed.      |
| That the robber should be punished. |                               |
| That we might be heard.             |                               |

## LESSON 72.

### PASSIVE VOICE—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

#### TENSES DERIVED FROM THE THIRD ROOT.

Perfect, *may have been.*

|                  |                              |                              |                             |
|------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Term.— <i>S.</i> | -us, { sim or<br>fu'erim,    | -us, { sis or<br>fu'ēria,    | -us, { sit or<br>fu'erit;   |
| <i>P.</i>        | -i, { simus or<br>fu'erimus, | -i, { sitis or<br>fu'eritis, | -i, { sint, or<br>fu'erint. |

*I may have been loved, Thou mayest have been, &c. He may have been, &c.*

|                |             |             |            |
|----------------|-------------|-------------|------------|
| <i>S.</i>      | a-mā'-tus,  | a-mā'-tus,  | a-mā'-tus, |
| 2. mon'-i-tus, | sim or      | mon'-i-tus, | sit or     |
| 3. rec'-tus,   | fu'-ē-rim,  | rec'-tus,   | rec'-tus,  |
| 4. au-di'-tus, | au-di'-tus, | au-di'-tus, | rit;       |

*We may have been, &c. Ye may have been, &c. They may have been, &c.*

|           |                                                            |                                 |                                                   |                                                             |                                                   |
|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>P.</i> | a-mā'-ti,<br>2. mon'-i-ti,<br>3. rec'-ti,<br>4. au-di'-ti, | st'-mus<br>or fu'er'-<br>i-mus, | a-mā'-ti,<br>mon'-i-ti,<br>rec'-ti,<br>au-di'-ti, | st'-tia, or<br>fu'er'-i-tia,<br>fu'er'-i-tia,<br>au-di'-ti, | a-mā'-ti,<br>mon'-i-ti,<br>rec'-ti,<br>au-di'-ti, |
|           |                                                            |                                 |                                                   |                                                             | sint or<br>fu'erint.                              |

Pluperfect, *might, could, would, or should have been.*

|                  |                                 |                             |                              |
|------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| Term.— <i>S.</i> | -us, { essem or<br>fu'issem,    | -us, { esse or<br>fu'isees, | -us, { esset or<br>fu'issem; |
| <i>P.</i>        | -i, { essemus or<br>fu'issemus, | -i, { essei or<br>fu'isees; | -i, { esset or<br>fu'issem.  |

## 98 PASSIVE VOICE:—SUBJUNCT. MOOD, THIRD ROOT.

*I would have been loved, Thou wouldest have been, &c. He would have, &c.*

|                |              |            |              |             |           |
|----------------|--------------|------------|--------------|-------------|-----------|
| S. a-mä'-tus,  | { es'-sem or | a-mä'-tus, | { es'-ses or | a-mä'-tus,  | { es'-set |
| 2. mon'-i-tus, | mon'-i-tus,  | or fu-     | or fu-       | or fu-      | or fu-    |
| 3. rec'-tus,   | fu-is'-sem,  | rec'-tus,  | is'-ses,     | rec'-tus,   | is'-set   |
| 4. au-di'-tus, | au-di'-tus,  |            |              | au-di'-tus, |           |

*We would have been, &c. Ye would have been, &c. They would have, &c.*

|               |              |            |              |            |            |
|---------------|--------------|------------|--------------|------------|------------|
| P. a-mä'-ti,  | { es-së'-mus | a-mä'-ti,  | { es-së'-tis | a-mä'-ti,  | { es'-sent |
| 2. mon'-i-ti, | or fu-is-    | mon'-i-ti, | or fu-is-    | mon'-i-ti, | or fu-     |
| 3. rec'-ti,   | së'-mus.     | rec'-ti,   | or fu-is-    | rec'-ti,   | or fu-     |
| 4. au-di'-ti, |              | au-di'-ti, | së'-tis,     | au-di'-ti, | in'-sent.  |

QUESTIONS.—What tenses of the passive voice, subjunctive mood, are formed from the first root?—from the third root? What tenses of *sum* are joined to the perfect participle, to form the passive voice, subjunctive mood, perfect tense?—pluperfect tense? Repeat the perfect subjunctive passive of *esse*, &c.

### EXERCISES.

Repeat the English of the preceding verbs in the perfect and pluperfect tenses. Write *damno*, *terreo*, *scribo*, and *vestio*, in the same tenses.

---

## LESSON 73.

### PASSIVE VOICE—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—THIRD ROOT.

#### EXERCISES.

##### I. Translate into English—

|                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| Amatus fuëria.           | Ut territus sim.          |
| Aves liberatæ essent.    | Ut parati essetis.        |
| Ut ille monitus sit.     | Miles non paratus fuisse. |
| Ut moniti fuissetis.     | Ut illi vulnerati sint.   |
| Ut agmen ductum esset.   | Ille auditus fuisse.      |
| Non auditæ essetis.      | Vox auditæ fuisse.        |
| Latrones puniti fuërint. | Ut vocati essemus.        |
| Non territi essetis.     | Auditæ essetis.           |

##### II. Change the numbers of the nouns, pronouns, and verbs, in each of the preceding sentences, and translate them

##### III. Translate into Latin—

- Thou shouldest have been freed.
- He should not have been terrified.
- Would not the book have been finished?
- The book would have been finished.
- The soldier may have been wounded.
- The army may have been led.
- The city might have been fortifid.
- The girl may have been called.

## LESSON 74.

### PASSIVE VOICE—IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|       |                                                                                                     |                                                                      |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Term. | S. 1. ère or ëtor, ëtor;<br>2. ère or ëtor, ëtor;<br>3. ère or Itor, Itor;<br>4. ire or Itor, Itor; | P. amInI, antor.<br>emInI, entor.<br>imInI, untor.<br>imInI, iuntor. |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|

- Be thou loved.* *Let him be loved;* *Be ye loved,* *Let them be loved*
1. a-mä'-re or a-mä'-tor, a-mä'-tor; a-mam'-i-ni, a-man'-tor.
  2. mo-në'-re or mo-në'-tor, mo-në'-tor; mo-nem'-i-ni, mo-nen'-tor.
  3. reg'-ë-re or reg'-i-tor, reg'-i-tor; re-gim'-i-ni, re-gun'-tor.
  4. au-di'-re or au-di'-tor, au-di'-tor; au-dim'-i-ni, au-di-un'-tor.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

#### Present.

|                           |                 |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>To be loved.</i> Term. |                 |
| 1.                        | a-mä'-ri, ãri.  |
| 2.                        | mo-në'-ri, ãri. |
| 3.                        | re'-gi, i.      |
| 4.                        | au-di'-ri, iri. |

#### Perfect.

|                            |                    |
|----------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>To have been loved.</i> |                    |
| 1.                         | a-mä'-tus, a, um.  |
| 2.                         | mon'-i-tus, a, um. |
| 3.                         | rec'-tus, a, um.   |
| 4.                         | au-di'-tus, a, um. |

#### Future.

|                                 |              |
|---------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>To be about to be loved.</i> |              |
| 1.                              | a-mä'-turn,  |
| 2.                              | mon'-i-turn, |
| 3.                              | rec'-turn,   |
| 4.                              | au-di'-turn, |

### PARTICIPLES.

#### Perfect.

#### Loved or having been loved.

|                    |                       |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| a-mä'-tus, a, um.  | a-man'-dus, a, um.    |
| mon'-i-tus, a, um. | mo-nen'-dus, a, um.   |
| rec'-tus, a, um.   | re-gen'-dus, a, um.   |
| au-di'-tus, a, um. | au-di-en'-dus, a, um. |

#### Future.

#### To be loved.

#### SUPINE.

#### Latter.

|                     |
|---------------------|
| <i>To be loved.</i> |
| a-mä'-tu.           |
| mon'-i-tu.          |
| rec'-tu.            |
| au-di'-tu.          |

NOTE 1.—Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have two vowels in the beginning of the termination, wherever they occur in the fourth conjugation, and they are the same in both conjugations; as, *capiō*, *ère*;—*capiant*, *capiēbam*, *capiuntur*, *capiēbar*, &c.

NOTE 2.—The future infinitive passive consists of the former supine and *iri*, the present infinitive passive of *eo*, to go. L. 80.

QUESTIONS.—From which root is the imperative formed? What are the terminations of the imperative passive, in the first conj. ?—in the second ?—in the third ?—in the fourth ? Repeat, &c.

From which root is the present infinitive passive formed? What is its termination in the first conj. ?—in the second ?—in the third ?—in the fourth ? Of what is the perfect infinitive passive compounded? Repeat, &c. How is the future infinitive passive formed? Repeat, &c.

From which root is the perfect participle derived? What is its termination? From which root is the future passive participle derived? What is its termination in the first conj. ?—in the second ?—in the third ?—in the fourth ? How is the latter supine formed? Repeat the perfect participle, &c.

## EXERCISES.

## PASSIVE IMPERATIVE.

|                     |                     |                  |
|---------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| I. Parare.          | Monemini.           | Libri leguntur.  |
| Puer vocator.       | Jungimini.          | Fures puniuntur. |
| Homines liberantor. | Parator. (3d pers.) | Vox auditor.     |

|                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| II. Let him be freed.      | Let them be prepared.      |
| Let the boy be advised.    | Let the boy be called.     |
| Let them be ruled.         | Be thou ruled.             |
| Let the city be fortified. | Be ye prepared.            |
| Let the soldiers be led.   | Let the books be finished. |

(a) *Puer, farris, m.* a thief.

## LESSON 75.

## DEONENT VERBS.

1. Deponent verbs are conjugated like the passive voice of active verbs, but they have also the participles, gerunds, and supine of the active voice.

## EXAMPLES.

|                                        |             |
|----------------------------------------|-------------|
| Miror, mirari, miratus sum,            | to admire.  |
| Criminor, criminari, criminatus sum,   | to accuse.  |
| Polliceor, polliceri, pollicitus sum,  | to promise. |
| Vereor, vereri, veritus sum,           | to fear.    |
| Loquor, loqui, locutus sum,            | to speak.   |
| Utor, uti, usus sum, (Less. 49, N. 2.) | to use.     |
| Mentior, mentiri, mentitus sum,        | to lie.     |
| Partior, partiri, partitus sum,        | to divide.  |

NOTE.—Some deponent verbs in the second, third, and fourth conjugations are irregular.

## EXERCISES.

|                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| I. Ille miratus est. | Veremur vos.      |
| Me criminaria.       | Illi locuti sunt. |
| Miramur.             | Illi usi erant.   |
| Polliciti eramus.    | Ille mentitur.    |

II. Change the numbers of the pronouns and verbs in the preceding sentences, and r. translate them.

|                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| III. We have di...ed. | We will promise.     |
| They might ...e.      | Ye will have spoken. |
| Speak tho....         | They have lied.      |
| Let him fear.         | Ye were accusing me. |

## FREQUENTATIVES, &amp;c.

2. Frequentatives denote the repetition, inceptives the beginning, and diminutives a small degree of the action denoted by their primitive verbs; as,

*Clamito*, to cry frequently; *calesco*, to grow hot; and *cantillo*, to sing a little; from *clamo*, to cry; *caleo*, to be hot; and *canto*, to sing.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

3. The principal irregular verbs are *sum*, *volo*, *fero*, *fio*, *eo*, and their compounds.

4. The compounds of *sum*, except *prosum* and *possum*, are conjugated like the simple verb. (Less. 62, &c.)

5. *Prosum*, to be profitable, has *d* after *pro*, when the simple verb begins with *e*; as,

*Ind. Pres.* Pro'-sum, prod'-es, prod'-est, &c.

—*Imperf.* prod'-ā-ram, prod'-ā-ras, prod'-ā-rat.

QUESTIONS.—What is a deponent verb? Less. 46, 7. How are deponent verbs conjugated? Repeat the principal parts of *miror*, &c. What are frequentative verbs?—inceptives?—diminutives? What are the principal irregular verbs? How are the compounds of *sum* conjugated? What peculiarity has *prosum*?

## EXERCISE.

Write down the principal parts of *adsum*, to be present. Conjugate *prosum* in the indicative future—in the future-perfect—in the present infinitive.

## LESSON 76.

## POSSUM.

*Possum*, I can, or I am able, is compounded of *potis*, able, and *sum*.

When compounded, both parts undergo some change:—

1. *Potis* becomes *pot*, and before *s* is changed to *pos*.

2. *Es* is dropped in *esse*, *essem*, &c., derived from the first root of *sum*.

3. *F* is dropped in the second root; as, *potui* for *potfui*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.*

*Pos'-sum,*

*Pres. Inf.*

*pos'-se,*

*Perf. Ind.*

*pot'-u-4.*

9\*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

- Pres. can or am able. S. pos'-sum, pot'-es, pot'-est;  
*P.* pos'-sū-inus, pot'-es-tis, pos'-sunt.  
 Imperf. could, or was able, pot'-ē-ram, pot'-ē-ras, pot'-ē-rat, &c.  
 Fut. shall or will be, &c. pot'-ē-ro, pot'-ē-ri, pot'-ē-rit, &c.  
 Perf. could, or have, &c. pot'-u-i, pot'-u-is'-ti, pot'-u-it, &c.  
 Plup. had been able, pot'-u-ē-ram, pot'-u-ē-ras, pot'-u-ē-rat, &c.  
 F. Perf. shall or will have, &c. pot'-u-ē-ro, pot'-u-ē-ri, pot'-u-ē-rit, &c.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

- Pres. may be able, pos'-sim, pos'-sis, &c.  
 Imp. might, &c., be able, pos'-sem, pos'-ses, &c.  
 Perf. may have been able, pot'-u-ē-rim, &c.  
 Plup. might, &c., have been able, pot'-u-is'-sem, &c.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

- Pres. pos'-ee. Perf. pot-u-is'-se.

*The rest is wanting.*

QUEATIONS.—Of what is *possum* compounded? What changes does *potis* undergo? What changes occur in the first root of *sunt*?—in the second root? What are the principal parts of *possum*? Repeat the indicative mood present tense, &c.—the subjunctive mood present tense, &c.—the infinitive mood present tense, &c.

## EXERCISES.

|                                |                                  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| I. Possūmus.                   | Possītia.                        |
| Leōnes possunt.                | Homīnes possent.                 |
| Potuāras.                      | Potuissētis.                     |
| II. We could. ( <i>perf.</i> ) | He can.                          |
| Ye might have been able.       | Thou couldst. ( <i>imperf.</i> ) |
| They may be able.              | Ye had been able.                |

## LESSON 77.

*Nolo* is compounded of *non* and *volo*; *Malo* of *magis* and *volo*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

- Pres. Indic. Pres. Infra. Perf. Indic.  
 Vo'-lo, vel'-lo, vol'-u-i, to be willing or to wish.  
 No'-lo, nol'-lo, nol'-u-i, to be unwilling.  
 Ma'-lo, mal'-lo, mal'-u-i, to be more willing, to choose rather.

## INDICATIVE.

*Present.*

- S. Vo'-lo, via, vult; P. vol'-ū-mus, vul'-tis, vo'-lunt.  
 No'-lo, non via, non vult; nol'-ū-mus, non vultis, no'-lunt.  
 Ma'-lo, ma'-via, ma'-vult; mal'-ū-mus, ma-vul'-tis, ma'-lunt.

|                   |                  |               |               |
|-------------------|------------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Imp.</i>       | vo-lē'-bam.      | no-lē'-bam.   | ma-lē'-bam.   |
| <i>Fut.</i>       | vo'-lam, ea, &c. | no'-lam.      | ma'-lam.      |
| <i>Perf.</i>      | vol'-u-l.        | no'l'-u-i.    | mal'-u-l'     |
| <i>Plup.</i>      | vo-lu'-ē-ram,    | no-lu'-ē-ram. | ma-lu'-ē-ram. |
| <i>Fut. Perf.</i> | vo-lu'-ē-ro.     | no-lu'-ē-ro.  | ma-lu'-ē-ro   |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*

|                                      |                                             |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> ve'-lim, ve'-lis, ve'-lit; | <b>P.</b> ve-li'-mus, ve-li'-tis, ve'-lent. |
| no'-lim, no'-lis, no'-lit;           | no-li'-mus, no-li'-tis, no'-lent.           |
| ma'-lim, ma'-lis, ma'-lit;           | ma-li'-mus, ma-li'-tis, ma'-lent.           |

*Imperfect.*

|                                         |                                                |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> vel'-lem, vel'-lea, vel'-let; | <b>P.</b> vel-lē'-mus, vel-lē'-tis, vel'-lent. |
| nol'-lem, nol'-lea, nol'-let;           | nol-lē'-mus, nol-lē'-tis, nol'-lent.           |
| mal'-lem, mal'-lea, mal'-let;           | mal-lē'-mus, mal-lē'-tis, mal'-lent.           |
| <i>Perf.</i> vo-lu'-ē-ram.              | no-lu'-ē-ram.                                  |
| <i>Plup.</i> vol-u-is'-sem.             | nol-u-is'-sem.                                 |

## IMPERATIVE.

|                                |                                      |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> no'-li or no-li'-to; | <b>P.</b> no-li'-te or nol-i-tō'-te. |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|

## INFINITIVE.

|                            |               |               |
|----------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> vel'-le.      | nol'-le.      | mal'-le.      |
| <i>Perf.</i> vol-u-is'-se. | nol-u-is'-se. | mal-u-is'-se. |

## PARTICIPLE.

|                        |           |
|------------------------|-----------|
| <i>Pres.</i> vo'-lens. | no'-lens. |
|------------------------|-----------|

QUESTIONS.—Of what is *nolo* compounded?—*malo*? What root is wanting in *volo*, *nolo* and *malo*? Give the principal parts of each. Repeat each in the present, &c. Which of these verbs want the imperative? Which, the present participle? What parts are wanting in all these verbs?

## EXERCISE.

Repeat the English of *volo* in the sense “to wish,” in all the moods and tenses.

## LESSON 78.

*Fero*, to bear, is thus conjugated:—

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

|                     |          |                     |          |
|---------------------|----------|---------------------|----------|
| <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | Fe'-ro,  | <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | Fe'-ror, |
| <i>Pres. Infn.</i>  | fer'-re, | <i>Pres. Infn.</i>  | fer'-ri, |
| <i>Perf. Indic.</i> | tu'-li,  | <i>Perf. Part.</i>  | la'-tua. |
| <i>Supine.</i>      | la'-tum. |                     |          |

## INDICATIVE.

*Present.*

S. *fe'-ro*, *fera*, *fert*; *S. fe'-rov*, *fer'-ris or -re*, *fer'-tur*;  
*P. fer'-i-mus*, *fer'-tis*, *fe'-runt*. *P. fer'-i-mur*, *fe-rim'-i-ni*, *fe-run'-tur*

*Imp.* *fe-ré'-bam*.*Fut.* *fe'-ram*, *-rea*, &c.*Perf.* *tu'-li*.*Plup.* *tu'-lē-ram*.*Fut.* *Perf.* *tu'-lō-ro*.*Imp.* *fe-ré'-bar*.*Fut.* *fe'-rar*, *-rē'-ria*, *or -ré'-re*, &c.*Perf.* *la'-tus sum*, *or fu'-i*.*Plup.* *la'-tus e'-ram* *or fu'-ē-ram*.*F. Perf.* *la'-tus e'-ro* *or fu'-ē-ro*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Pres.* *fe'-ram*, *-ras*, &c.*Imp.* *fe'-rem*, *-rea*, &c.*Perf.* *tu'-lē-ram*.*Plup.* *tu'-lis'-sem*.*Pres.* *fe'-rar*, *-rā'-ris or -rē'-re*, &c.*Imp.* *fe'-rer*, *-rē'-rior*, *-rē'-re*, &c.*Perf.* *la'-tua sim* *or fu'-ō-ram*.*Plup.* *la'-tua es'-sem* *or fu-is'-sem*.

## IMPERATIVE.

*S. fer*, *or fer'-to*, *fer'-to*;*P. fer'-te* *or fer-tō-te*, *fe-run'-to*.*S. fer'-re* *or fer'-tor*, *fer'-tor*;*P. fe-rim'-i-ni*, *fe-run'-tor*.

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* *fer'-re*.*Perf.* *tu'-lis'-se*.*Fut.* *la'-tū'-rus es'-se*.*Pres.* *fer'-ri*.*Perf.* *la'-tus es'-se* *or fu-is'-se*.*Fut.* *la'-tum i'-ri*.

## PARTICIPLE.

*Pres.* *fe'-rena*.*Fut.* *la'-tū'-rusa*.*Perf.* *la'-tus*.*Fut.* *fe-ren'-dus*.

## GERUND.

*fe-ren'-di*, &c.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* *la'-turn*.*Latter.* *la'-tu*.

**QUESTIONS.**—What are the principal parts of *fero* in the active voice?—In the passive? What is the first root?—the second?—the third? Repeat the present indicative active, &c.

## LESSON 79.

*Fio* is used as the passive of *facio*, to make. It is thus conjugated:—

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Indic. Pres. Infin. Perf. Part.**fi'-o*, *fi'-ē-ri*, *fac'-tus*, *to be made or to become*.

## INDICATIVE.

|              |                            |                                       |
|--------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | <i>S.</i> fi'-o, fis, fit; | <i>P.</i> fi'-mus, fi'-tis, fi'-unt.  |
| <i>Imp.</i>  | fi'-barn.                  | <i>Plup.</i> fac'-tus e'-ram, &c.     |
| <i>Fut.</i>  | fi'-am, -es, &c.           | <i>Fut. Perf.</i> fac'-tus e'-ro, &c. |
| <i>Perf.</i> | fac'-tus sum or fu'-l.     |                                       |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

|              |                  |                                    |
|--------------|------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | fi'-am, -as, &c. | <i>Perf.</i> fac'-tus sim, &c.     |
| <i>Imp.</i>  | fi'-e-rem.       | <i>Plup.</i> fac'-tus es'-sem, &c. |

## IMPERATIVE.

|                                            |                                            |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> fi or fi'-to, fi'-to;            | <i>Pres.</i> fi'-e-ri.                     |
| <i>P.</i> fi'-te or fi'-tɔ'-te, fi-un'-to. | <i>Perf.</i> fac'-tus es'-se or fu-is'-se. |
|                                            | <i>Fut.</i> fac'-tum i'-ri.                |

## PARTICLES.

|              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| <i>Perf.</i> | fac'-tus.      |
| <i>Fut.</i>  | fa-ci-en'-dus. |

## SUPINE.

|                |          |
|----------------|----------|
| <i>Latter.</i> | fac'-tu. |
|----------------|----------|

NOTE.—*Audeo*, *gaudeo* and *solo* of the second conjugation, and *fido* with its compounds of the third, are called *neuter-passive* verbs. Like *fio*, in the tenses usually formed from the second root, they have the passive form.

QUESTIONS.—Of what verb is *fio* used as the passive? What are its principal parts?—its roots? Repeat the indicative present, &c. What verbs are called neuter passives? In what respect do they differ from other verbs?

## LESSON 80.

*Eo*, to go, is thus conjugated:—

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | <i>Pres. Infin.</i> | <i>Perf. Indic.</i> | <i>Perf. Part.</i> |
|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| E'-o.               | i'-re.              | i'-vi.              | i'-tum.            |

## INDICATIVE.

|              |                                   |                                          |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | <i>S.</i> e'-o, is, it;           | <i>P.</i> i'-mus, i'-tis, e'-unt.        |
| <i>Imp.</i>  | <i>S.</i> i'-bam, i'-bas, i'-bat; | <i>P.</i> i'-bā-mus, i-bā'-tis, i'-bant. |
| <i>Fut.</i>  | <i>S.</i> i'-bo, i'-bis, i'-bit;  | <i>P.</i> ib'-i-mus, ib'-i-tis, i'-bunt. |
| <i>Perf.</i> | i'-vi.                            | <i>Plup.</i> iv'-e-ram.                  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

|              |                                   |                                          |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | <i>S.</i> e'-am, e'-as, e'-at;    | <i>P.</i> e-ā'-mus, e-ā'-tis, e'-ant.    |
| <i>Imp.</i>  | <i>S.</i> i'-rem, i'-res, i'-ret; | <i>P.</i> i-rē'-mus, i-rē'-tis, i'-rent. |
| <i>Perf.</i> | iv'-e-rim.                        | <i>Plup.</i> i-vis'-sem                  |

## IMPERATIVE.

*S.* *i* or *i'-to*, *i'-to*;  
*P.* *i'-te* or *i-tō'-te*, *e-un'-to*.

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* *i'-re*,  
*Perf.* *i-vis'-se*.  
*Fut.* *i-tū'-rus es'-se*.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* *i'-ena*, (*gen.* *e-un'-tis.*)  
*Fut.* *i-til'-rusa*.

## GERUND.

*e-un'-di*, &c.

NOTE 1.—*Eo* has no first root.

NOTE 2.—The compounds of *eo* generally omit *e* in the second root; *as, abeo,*  
*abire, abiit,* to go away.

QUESTIONS.—What are the principal parts of *eo*? What are its second and third  
roots? Repeat the indicative present, &c. What is said of the compounds of *eo*?

---

## LESSON 81.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

1. Defective verbs are those which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, or persons.

2. The following verbs are defective in several of the tenses, viz.:

|                |                      |                |                           |
|----------------|----------------------|----------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Odi,</i>    | <i>I hate.</i>       | <i>Aio,</i>    | <i>I say.</i>             |
| <i>Cōpi,</i>   | <i>I have begun.</i> | <i>Inquam,</i> |                           |
| <i>Memini,</i> | <i>I remember.</i>   | <i>Fore,</i>   | <i>to be about to be.</i> |

3. *Odi, cōpi, and memini*, want all the tenses derived from the first root.

Ex.—*Memini* has in the imperative *memento* and *mementote*.

4. *Odi* and *memini* have in the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect, the sense of the present, imperfect, and future.

5. *Fore* is thus conjugated:—

*Sub. Imperf. S.* *Fo'-rem, fo'-res, fo'-ret;*      *P. —, —, fo'-rent.*  
*Inf. Pres.*      *fo'-re.*

*Forem* has the same meaning as *essem*.

QUESTIONS.—What are defective verbs? Which are the principal defective verbs? What tenses are wanting in *odi, cōpi, and memini*? In what sense are *odi* and *memini* used in the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect? How is *fore* conjugated? What meaning has *forem*?

Among defective verbs are to be reckoned *impersonal* or *third-personal verbs*.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

6. Impersonal verbs are those which are used only in the third person singular, and do not admit of a *personal* subject ; as,

*Licet*, it is lawful.

7. Impersonal verbs are of two kinds, according as they have the *active* or the *passive* form.

8. For the most part in the active, and sometimes in the passive form, the subject is an infinitive or subjunctive clause ; as,

*Me delectat scribere. To write* delights me.

9. In English the pronoun *it* commonly stands before the active form, and sometimes also before the passive form, representing the clause which forms the real subject ; as,

*It* delights me *to write*.

10. Most *neuter* and many *active* verbs may be used impersonally in the passive form, by changing the personal subject of the active voice into an ablative with *a* or *ab* ; as,

*Illi pugnant*, or *Pugnatur ab illis*, They fight. *Illi querunt*, or *queritur ab illis*, They ask, or, The inquiry is made by them.

NOTE 1.—When the impersonal verb consists of the participle in *dus* with *sum*, the agent is in the dative. L. 112. 2.

11. In the passive form the agent with *a* or *ab* is very often omitted, and is to be supplied as the connection requires. It is commonly *nobis*, *illis*, *hominibus*, *militibus*, &c.

12. In English the subject of the passive form is commonly either the *agent*, expressed or understood, or an *abstract* noun formed from the verb ; as,

*Pugnatum est*, We, they, &c., fought; or, The *battle* was fought. *Concurritur*, The *people* run together, or, There is a *concourse*. *Moriendum est*, We must die, or, Death is inevitable.

NOTE 2.—Sometimes the English subject in both forms of the impersonal is an oblique case following the verb in Latin ; as, *Miscret me*, I pity. *Favetur mihi*, I am favored.

13. In the passive form of the impersonal verb the participle is always in the neuter gender.

**Questions.**—What are impersonal verbs? Of how many kinds are impersonal verbs? In the active form, what is the subject? What English pronoun represents the subjective clause? How may most neuter verbs be used in the passive form? In what case is the agent of a participle in *dus* with *sens*? What is often omitted in the passive form? What words may be supplied? What is the subject of the passive form in English? What other word is sometimes the subject in English? In what gender is the participle in the passive form?

---

## LESSON 82.

### PARTICLES.

1. Particles are of four kinds—*adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections.*

#### ADVERBS.

2. An adverb is a particle used to modify or limit the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as,

*Bene dixit*, He spoke well.

3. Some adverbs, especially those derived from adjectives, are compared.

4. Adverbs are compared like the adjectives from which they are derived.

5. Comparatives end in *iūs*, superlatives in *issimē* or *imē*; as,

*Durē*, (hardly,) *duriūs*, *duriissimē*; *bene* (well,) *meliūs*, *optiūmē*.

6. Adverbs are divided into various classes, according to their significations; as, *Adverbs of place, order, time, manner, quality, negation, interrogation, likeness, &c.*

#### PREPOSITIONS.

7. A preposition is a particle which expresses the relation between the noun or pronoun, before which it stands, and some preceding word; as,

*Venit ad urbem*, He came to the city.

In this sentence *ad*, to, expresses the relation in which *urbem*, the city, stands to *venit*, came.

#### CONJUNCTIONS.

8. A conjunction is a particle which connects words or sentences.

- Conjunctions are divided into various classes; as,
- (1.) Copulatives; as, *ac*, *atque*, *et*, *etiam*, *-que*, *quoque*, and *nique* or *nec*.
  - (2.) Disjunctives; as, *aut*, *seu*, *sive*, *-ve*, *vel*, and *neve* or *neu*.
  - (3.) Adversatives; as, *at*, *aliqui*, *sed*, *tamen*, *vero*, &c.
  - (4.) Enclitics; as, *-ne*, *-que*, *-ve*, which are always annexed to another word; as, *homines*, *puerique*, men and boys; *audisne?* dost thou hear?

## INTERJECTIONS.

8. An interjection is a particle used in exclamation, and expressing some emotion; as *ecce!* lo! behold! *cheu!* alas!

QUESTIONS.—How are particles divided? What is an adverb? Are adverbs compared? How are they compared? How do comparatives end?—superlatives? Compare *durè*—*bene*. What is a preposition? What is a conjunction? What are the four classes of conjunctions mentioned in this lesson? What are the enclitic conjunctions? How are they used? What is an interjection?

---

## LESSON 83.

## OF SENTENCES.

1. A sentence is a thought expressed in words
2. Sentences are either *simple* or *compound*
3. A simple sentence or proposition consists of two parts,—a *subject* and a *predicate*.
4. The subject is that of which something is affirmed.
5. The predicate is that which is affirmed of the subject.

Thus in the simple sentence, *Cæsar conquered Gaul*, *Cæsar* is the subject, and *conquered Gaul* the predicate. In the sentence, *Gaul was conquered by Cæsar*, *Gaul* is the subject, and *was conquered by Cæsar* is the predicate.

NOTE.—When the sentence is interrogative, conditional, or imperative, the subject is that concerning which the question is asked or the supposition made, or the person to whom the command is given; the predicate is that which is asked, supposed, or commanded. Thus, in the simple interrogative sentence, *Has the messenger arrived?* *the messenger* is the subject, and *has arrived* the predicate.

QUESTIONS.—What is a sentence? Into what two classes are sentences divisible? Of what does a simple sentence consist? What is the subject of a sentence?—the predicate?

## EXERCISE.

Point out the subject and the predicate in each of the following sentences :—

John writes.

Have you read the letter?

We are reading.

If he should come.

Hear thou my request.

We have been admonished.

Rome was founded by Romulus and his brother Remus, sons of Rhea Silvia, the daughter of Numitor.

---

## LESSON 84.

## DIVISION OF SUBJECTS AND PREDICATES.

1. Subjects and predicates are either *grammatical* or *logical, simple* or *compound*.

## GRAMMATICAL SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

2. A grammatical subject consists of one word only—a noun, either singular or plural, or some word standing for a noun.

3. A grammatical predicate consists of a verb alone, or of the verb *to be*, followed by a noun, pronoun, adjective, or participle, referring to the subject.

The following are examples of grammatical subjects and predicates :—

John writes.

You have been commended.

We are reading.

Ciceron was eloquent.

He is admired.

Kings are men.

Go thou.

Should he come.

Will he go ?

May he live !

**NOTE.**—In English the auxiliaries are considered as constituting a part of their verb. In the preceding examples therefore the predicates, “are reading,” “is admired,” “will go,” “have been commended,” &c., are considered as single verbs.

**QUESTIONS.**—How are subjects and predicates divided? Of what does a grammatical subject consist?—a grammatical predicate? How are the English auxiliaries considered?

## EXERCISE.

Write ten English sentences containing grammatical subjects and predicates.

## LESSON 85.

## LOGICAL SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

1. A grammatical subject or predicate, with one or more words joined with it to explain or modify it, is called the *logical subject* or the *logical predicate*.

(a) The sentence, *Birds fly*, contains only a grammatical subject and predicate.

(b) In the sentence, *Some birds fly swiftly*, the grammatical subject and predicate are both modified, the former by *some*, and the latter by *swiftly*.

(c) In the sentence, *Some large birds fly very swiftly*, the grammatical subject and predicate are still further modified, the former by *large*, and the latter by *very*.

(d) In the sentence, *Some large birds of prey, inhabiting the woods and mountains, fly very swiftly, when pursuing other birds*, the subject and predicate are still further extended, and additions may in all cases be made to each, until it expresses precisely that idea which is present to the mind of the writer or speaker.

QUESTIONS.—What is a logical subject?—a logical predicate?

## EXERCISES.

I. Point out, first, the grammatical subject in each of the following sentences; secondly, the logical subject; thirdly, the grammatical predicate; fourthly, the logical predicate:—

The horse started suddenly.

Many fishes are swimming in the sea.

An apple fell from the tree.

The east wind has continued many days without interruption.

The tallest man present was chosen king.

Great men are not always wise.

II. Write a sentence containing only a grammatical subject and predicate. Convert these into a logical subject and predicate by the addition of one or more explanatory or restrictive words to each.

## LESSON 86.

## SIMPLE AND COMPOUND SUBJECTS AND PREDICATES.

1. When a sentence contains but a single subject, whether it be grammatical or logical, it is called a *simple subject*.

2. A *compound subject* consists of two or more simple subjects, having but one predicate.

In the sentences, *Man is mortal*, *All men are mortal*, the subjects are simple.

In the sentences, *The moon and stars were shining*, *Grammar and music were united*, the subjects are compound.

3. When a sentence contains but a single predicate, whether it be grammatical or logical, it is called a *simple predicate*.

4. A *compound predicate* consists of two or more simple predicates belonging to the same subject; as,

*He reads and writes.*

*They are neither loved nor trusted.*

*The cities and villages of the enemy were plundered and burnt.*

QUESTIONS.—What is a simple subject?—a simple predicate?—a logical subject?—a logical predicate?—a compound subject?—a compound predicate?

#### EXERCISE.

Write four sentences having compound subjects but simple predicates; four having compound predicates but simple subjects; and four whose subjects and predicates shall both be compound.

---

## LESSON 87.

### I. ANALYSIS.

The analysis of a proposition or simple sentence consists in distinguishing the subject from the predicate and noting their several modifications.

#### GENERAL RULES FOR THE ANALYSIS OF A SIMPLE SENTENCE.

1. Divide it into two parts—the subject and the predicate.

2. Point out the grammatical subject and the word or words *directly* modifying it.

3. Point out successively the words which modify the direct modifiers of the grammatical subject, and those which modify them, and so on.

4. Point out the grammatical predicate and the word or words *directly* modifying it.

5. Point out successively the words which modify the direct modifiers of the grammatical predicate, and those which modify them, and so on.

## II. PARSING.

Parsing consists in resolving a sentence into the parts of speech of which it is composed, tracing each word to its root, and giving the rules of formation and construction applicable to it.

### GENERAL RULES OF PARSING.

1. Name the part of speech, including the subdivision, to which it belongs.
2. If it is an *inflected* word, name its root, decline, compare, or conjugate it.
3. Point out its agreement, or the word on which its case depends.
4. If it is a conjunction, tell what it connects.
5. If it is an adverb, tell what it qualifies.
6. Give the rule of formation or construction applicable in each case.

NOTE 1.—The words constituting a sentence are most conveniently parsed in that order in which they are arranged in analysis.

NOTE 2.—For examples of Analysis and Parsing, see Less. 90, &c.

QUESTIONS.—What is meant by the analysis of a proposition? What is the first general rule of analysis?—the second?—the third?—the fourth?—the fifth? What is parsing? What is the first general rule of parsing? If it is an inflected word what is next to be done? What is to be done after naming its root, declining, comparing or conjugating it? If it is a conjunction, what is to be told respecting it? If an adverb, what? What is the last rule for parsing?

## LESSON 88.

### I. ADVERBS.

1. Adverbs modify or limit the meaning of verbs, adjectives, and sometimes of other adverbs; as,

*Bene mones*, You advise well. *Valde bene*, Very well.

*Longe dissimilis*, Very unlike.

**REMARK 1.**—Adverbs sometimes also modify nouns, adjective pronouns, and prepositions.

**REMARK 2.**—An adverb is usually placed immediately before the word which it modifies.

## II. CONJUNCTIONS.

**2.** Copulative and disjunctive conjunctions, and some others, connect words which are in the same construction.

**REMARK 1.**—Hence conjunctions connect—

1. Nouns or pronouns which are in the same case.
2. Adjectives agreeing with the same noun or pronoun.
3. Verbs in the same mood.
4. Adverbs and prepositions relating to the same words.

**REMARK 2.**—The same conjunctions connect *sentences* also, whose construction is the same.

**REMARK 3.**—Conjunctions are often omitted.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is the general rule for the construction of adverbs? What other parts of speech are sometimes modified by adverbs? What is the usual position of an adverb? What is the general rule for the construction of copulative and disjunctive conjunctions? How does this rule apply to nouns?—to adjectives?—to verbs?—to adverbs and prepositions? What besides single words do the same conjunctions connect? Are conjunctions always expressed?

**NOTE.**—Sentences illustrating the construction of adverbs and conjunctions will be found in the subsequent lessons.

## LESSON 89.

### APPOSITION.

**1.** A noun annexed to another noun or to a pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing, is put in the same case.

**2.** A noun in apposition to two or more nouns is usually plural.

**3.** A whole is sometimes denoted by the former noun, and its parts, by nouns or pronouns in apposition to it.

**REMARK.**—In cases of apposition the annexed noun is generally added for the sake of *explanation* or *description*, but sometimes for the purpose of denoting *character* or *purpose*, or the *time, cause, reason, &c.*, of an action.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English—

|                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| Cicero orator.      | Nos consiles.     |
| Ciceronis oratoris. | Nostrum consulum. |
| Ciceroni oratori.   | Nobis consulibus. |

Marcus Antonius et Caius Cassius, tribuni plebis.  
In fluminibus Rheno et Danubio.

Translate into Latin—

|                                                    |                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| For-Cato the-Censor.                               | Of-Ovid the-poet.                      |
| By-Cato the-Censor.                                | Ovid the-poet. ( <i>acc.</i> )         |
| To-Brutus the-leader.                              | Of-Brutus and Cassius, leaders.        |
| Brutus, leader. ( <i>voc.</i> )                    | For-Brutus and Cassius, leaders.       |
| By-Brutus the-leader.                              | To-Romulus and Remus, brothers.        |
| Romulus and Remus,                                 | Marcus Tullius Cicero. ( <i>voc.</i> ) |
| brothers. ( <i>voc.</i> )                          | Alexander (when) a boy.                |
| The names of the-brothers, Anapus and Amphionomus. | Anapus, L.                             |

## VOCABULARY.

|                 |                                |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| Anapus, L.      | Leader, <i>dux, ducis.</i>     |
| Amphionomus, L. | Brother, <i>frater, trius.</i> |
| Alexander, dri. | Poet, <i>poeta, os.</i>        |
| Cato, ônis.     | Friend, <i>amicus, i.</i>      |
| Censor, ôris.   | And, <i>et.</i>                |
| Brutus, L.      | Ovid, <i>Ovidius, i.</i>       |
| Cassius, L.     | Name, <i>nomen, nominis.</i>   |
| Marcus, L.      | Boy, <i>puer, icti.</i>        |
| Tullius, L.     |                                |

## LESSON 90.

## SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE.

1. The noun or pronoun, which is the subject of a finite verb, is put in the nominative.

NOTE 1.—(a) A verb in any mood, except the infinitive, is called a *finite* verb.

(b) In historical writing the nominative is sometimes found with the infinitive instead of the imperfect indicative.

2. A verb agrees with its subject-nominative in number and person.

NOTE 2.—The nominatives *ego, nos, tu*, and *vos*, are commonly omitted.

NOTE 3.—The verb, especially the verb *sum*, is sometimes omitted.

**3. When the subject is compound, the verb is commonly plural.**

**REMARK 1.**—If the nominatives, of which a compound subject is composed, are of different persons, the verb agrees with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third.

**REMARK 2.**—Sometimes when the subject is compound, the verb agrees with the nearest nominative.

**4. A collective noun in the singular has sometimes a plural verb, especially when the noun is not expressed in the same clause, but in a preceding one.**

**5. An infinitive, or one or more clauses may be the subject, and the verb will then be in the singular.**

**6. Sometimes the subject, and sometimes the verb are to be supplied.**

**QUESTIONS.**—In what case is the subject of a finite verb? What is a finite verb? What is the rule for the agreement of a verb with its subject-nominative? What nominatives are commonly omitted? Why? (see L. 51, Rem. 4.) Of what number is the verb, when the subject is compound? What is the rule for the verb, when the compound subject is of different persons? With what does the verb sometimes agree, when the subject is compound? What is the rule for the verb of a collective noun?—for the verb whose subject is an infinitive, or one or more clauses? What are sometimes to be supplied?

**EXERCISES.**

|                 |                 |                     |
|-----------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| I. Avis volat.  | Curris.         | Arbor floret.       |
| Aves volant.    | Curritis.       | Arbores florent.    |
| Dormio. (N. 2.) | Leo rugit.      | Hirundines migrant. |
| Dormimus.       | Leones rugiunt. | Amabimini.          |

|                              |                        |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| II. Pater et filius amantur. | Tu et Caius scribetis. |
| Ego atque tu unā erāmus.     | Vos et senatus jussit. |
| Turba ruunt.                 | Pars monent.           |

(a) Less. 88, 2. (b) Less. 88, 1, & R. 2.

**III. Write a Latin translation of the following English sentences:—**

|                     |                     |                                                  |
|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| The boy weeps.      | <i>Puer leo.</i>    | Thou wast sleeping.                              |
| The boys weep.      |                     | I have heard. <i>Audio.</i>                      |
| The horse runs.     | <i>Equus curro.</i> | Ye will advise. <i>Moneo.</i>                    |
| We shall run.       |                     | The crowd come and go. <i>Turba venio eoque.</i> |
| You and I are warm. | <i>Caleo.</i>       | The horses were running.                         |
| Ye sleep.           | <i>Dormio.</i>      |                                                  |

|                                        |                                    |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| IV. Swallows fly.                      | I have been advising. <sup>b</sup> |
| The lion sleeps.                       | The father was weeping.            |
| The horse and the lion will run.       | I have been advised.               |
| A part sleep.                          | Caius had heard.                   |
| Caius <sup>a</sup> and I have written. | We, the consuls, have commanded.   |

(a) See the order of the subjects in Exercise 2. (b) Lesson 47, N. 1.

In the exercises contained in this and the subsequent lessons,

each sentence is to be first *translated*, secondly, *analyzed*, and thirdly, *parsed*: e. g.

*Avis volat*, The bird flies.

**ANALYSIS.**—*Avis* is the subject. *Volat* is the predicate.

**Q.** Why is *avis* the subject? **A.** Because something is affirmed respecting it and "The subject is that of which something is affirmed." Less. 83, 4.—**Q.** Why is *volat* the predicate? **A.** Because "The predicate is that which is affirmed of the subject." Less. 83, 5.

**PARSING.**—*Avis* is a common noun, Nom. and Voc. *avis*, Gen. *avis*, of the third declension, feminine gender; it is found in the singular number third person, and is nominative to *volat*. Less. 90, 1. (The passages referred to are to be repeated.)

**Q.** Why is *avis* a noun? **A.** Because it is a name, and "A noun is," &c. Less. 5, 1.—**Q.** Why is it a common noun? **A.** Because it is the name of a class of objects, and "A common noun is," &c. Less. 5, 3.—**Q.** Why is *avis* of the third declension? **A.** Because its genitive singular ends in *is*, and "The termination of the genitive singular," &c. Less. 7, 4.—**Q.** Why is it of the feminine gender? **A.** Because its nominative ends in *is*, and "Nouns not increasing in *e-s*," &c. Less. 15, 1.—**Q.** Why is it in the singular number? **A.** Because, "The singular number denotes," &c. Less. 5, 10.—**Q.** Why is it of the third person? **A.** Because it denotes a thing spoken of, and "Nouns and pronouns," &c. Less. 6, 9.

*Volat* is a neuter verb, from *volo*, *voldre*, *voldri*, *voldatum*, of the first conjugation. It is found in the active voice, indicative mood, present tense, (*volo*, *volas*, *volat*,) in the third person singular, agreeing with *avis*. "A verb agrees," &c. Less. 90, 2.

**Q.** Why is *volo* a verb? **A.** Because it expresses the action of its subject, *avis*, and "A verb is a word," &c. Less. 46, 1. **Q.** Why a neuter verb? **A.** Because it makes complete sense with its subject, and "A neuter verb is one," &c. Less. 46, 4.—**Q.** Why is it of the first conjugation? **A.** Because it has a long before *re* in the infinitive, and "The conjugations may be distinguished," &c. Less. 48, 3.—**Q.** What are its roots? **A.** *vol*, *volat*, *volat*.—**Q.** Why is it in the indicative mood? **A.** Because "The indicative asserts an action." Less. 47, 2.—**Q.** Why in the present tense? **A.** Because "The present tense represents," &c. Less. 47, 6.—**Q.** Why is it in the third person? **A.** Because its form denotes that its subject is of the third person, and "Person in verbs is," &c. Less. 47, 12.—**Q.** Why is it in the singular number? **A.** Because its form denotes that its subject is of the singular number, and "Number in verbs is," &c. Less. 47, 14.

**N O T E.**—After a little experience in parsing, it will in general be found unnecessary to mention the *person* of a noun, except in the few cases in which it is of the first or second person.

## LESSON 91.

### ADJECTIVES.

1. **Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.**

**N O T E 1.**—Adjectives are sometimes used as epithets; as, The blue sky: and sometimes as attributes; as, The sky is blue.

2. An adjective belonging to two or more nouns is put in the plural.

**NOTE 2.**—If the nouns are of different genders, and denote things having life, the adjective is masculine rather than feminine; but if they denote things without life, the adjective is generally neuter.

**NOTE 3.**—The adjective often agrees with the nearest noun.

3. An adjective qualifying a *collective* noun in the singular is often put in the plural, taking the gender of the individuals which the noun denotes; as,

*Supplex turba erant lutti.* The suppliant crowd were safe.

4. An adjective in the masculine gender often agrees with some case of *homo* or of its plural *homines* understood; as,

*Boni sunt rari.* Good (men) are scarce.

**NOTE 4.**—With the possessive adjective pronouns the noun to be supplied is often *amici*, friends; *milites*, soldiers; or *cives*, fellow-citizens or countrymen.

5. An adjective in the neuter gender, without a noun, is often used substantively, the word *thing* or *things* being supplied in English; as,

*Labor omnia vincit.* Labor overcomes all (things.)

6. The possessive adjective pronouns are often understood in Latin, where they must be supplied in English; as,

*Ego et pater.* (My) father and I.

7. An adjective may agree with an infinitive or a clause used substantively, and is then put in the neuter gender; as,

*Nunquam est utile peccare.* To do wrong is never useful.

8. Adjectives signifying *first*, *last*, *highest*, *lowest*, *extreme*, *middle*, *innermost*, *outermost*, and a few others, may often be translated the first *part*, &c., as *Summa arbor*, The highest part, or, The top of the tree.

9. An adjective agreeing with a noun may sometimes be translated by an adverb qualifying a verb, as, *Ver primus veniet.* Spring will come first.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is the rule for the agreement of adjectives? What are the two ways in which an adjective may be used? Of what number is an adjective belonging to two or more nouns? What is the rule for the gender of an adjective belonging to two or more nouns? With what does the adjective in such case often

agrees? What is the rule for an adjective qualifying a collective noun? With what word understood does a masculine adjective often agree? What is often to be supplied with possessive adjective pronouns? How is a neuter adjective without a noun often used? What adjectives are often understood in Latin? In what gender is an adjective which agrees with an infinitive or a clause? How may adjectives signifying *first*, *last*, etc. often be translated? Like what other part of speech may an adjective sometimes be translated?

## EXERCISES.

To be translated, analyzed, and parsed.

I. *Voluptas nimia nocet.*

*Anima immortalis est.*  
*Mora non est tuta.*  
*Frigida<sup>a</sup> non fuit.*  
*Iter tutum non fuit.*  
*Dulcis est libertas.*  
*Æstas torrida venerat.*  
*Media nox erat.*

(a) A predicate adjective with *sum*, etc., often stands before its noun.

III. *Altæ turres carent.*

*Tui fratres laudati sunt.*  
*Avarus nunquam est contentus.*  
*Cæsar suos<sup>b</sup> misit.*

II. *Suprēmi montes visi sunt.*

*Dies fuisse serena.*  
*Bonus puer discit.*  
*Timidi lepores fugiunt.*  
*Veloces canes sequuntur.*  
*Fessus viator sedebat.*  
*Meus equus yalte fatigauit.*  
*Superbi homines cadunt.*

(b) See Lesson 96, 1.

## IV. Men are mortal.

*My friends are dear.*  
*My eyes are deceived.*  
*Our gardens are pleasant.*  
*The war was destructive.*  
*The ripe apples fell.*  
*The great pine is shaken.*  
*(My) father and mother are dead.*

## Homo sum mortalis.

*Meus amicus sum carus.*  
*Meus oculis fallo.*  
*Noster hortus sum amoenus.*  
*Bellum exitiosum sum.*  
*Mitis pomum cado.*  
*Agito ingens pinus.*

## V. All men are mortal.

*I love (my) friends.*  
*The weary<sup>b</sup> will sit.*  
*The good will be happy.<sup>c</sup>*  
*The great pines will fall.*  
*The swift dog followed.*      (My) brother and sister are dear.  
*Our house and garden are pleasant.*

## The timid have fled.

May the day be<sup>d</sup> serene.  
 Was<sup>e</sup> the journey safe.  
 Is not<sup>f</sup> liberty sweet.  
 All are content.

(a) *Omnis.*   (b) Less. 91, 4.   (c) *Felis.*   (d) Less. 64, N.   (e) Less. 83, 2.  
 (f) Less. 53, 4.

## EXAMPLE OF ANALYSIS AND PARSING.

*Mora non est tuta, Delay is not safe.*

ANALYSIS.—*Mora* is the subject: Less. 83, 4. *Non est tuta* is the logical predicate: Less. 85, 1. The grammatical predicate is *est tuta*: (Less. 84, 3:) this is modified by *non*.

**PARSING.**—*Mora* is a common noun; N. and V. *mora*, G. *mora*, of the first declension, feminine gender; it is found in the singular number, and is nominative to *est*: “The noun or pronoun,” &c. Less. 90, 1.

**QUESTIONS.**—Why is *mora* a noun? Why a common noun? Why of the first declension? A. Because its genitive singular ends in *o*, and “The termination of the genitive singular,” &c. Less. 7, 4.—Why feminine? A. Because it is of the first declension, and “Latin nouns of the first declension,” &c. Less. 8, 1.

*Est* is the substantive verb, from *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futurus*. It is found in the indicative mood, present tense, (*sum*, *es*, *est*) in the third person singular, agreeing with *mora*; “A verb agrees,” &c. Less. 90, 2.

**QUESTIONS.**—Why is *est* a verb? A. Because it expresses the being of *mora*, and “A verb is a word,” &c.—Why the substantive verb? A. Because “*Sum*, I am, when connected with,” &c. Less. 82, 1.—Why in the indicative mood? Why in the present tense? What is the first root of *sum*?—the second?—the third?

*Non* is an adverb modifying *est*; “Adverbs modify or limit,” &c. Less. 88, 1.

*Tuta* is an adjective from *tutus*, *tuta*, *tutum*, of the first and second declensions, feminine gender, (N. and V. *tuta*, G. *tuta*,) found in the singular number, nominative case, agreeing with *mora*; “Adjectives, adjective pronouns,” &c. Less. 91, 1.

**QUESTIONS.**—Why is *tuta* an adjective? A. Because it qualifies *mora*, and “An adjective is a word,” &c. Less. 28, 1.—Is *tuta* here used as an *epithet* or as an *attribute*? A. As an attribute; “Adjectives are sometimes used,” &c.—Why is it of the first and second declensions? A. Its masculine ends in *us*, its feminine in *o*, and its neuter in *um*, and “The masculine gender of adjectives,” &c. Less. 29, 1.—Why was it put in the feminine gender, singular number, and nominative case? A. Because its noun is of that gender, number, and case, and “Adjectives, adjective pronouns,” &c. Less. 91, 1.

## LESSON 92.

1. A noun in the predicate, after a verb neuter or passive, is put in the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing.

2. Predicate adjectives follow the same verbs as predicate nouns.

**REMARK 1.**—To this rule belong especially:—

- (a) *Sum* and neuter verbs denoting *position* or *motion*.
- (b) The passive of verbs signifying *to name*, or *call*, *to choose*, *render*, or *constitute*, *to esteem* or *reckon*.

**REMARK 2.**—As the subject of the infinitive mood is put in the accusative, (Less. 95, 3,) the noun in the predicate, denoting the same person or thing, is also put in the accusative.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is the rule for the predicate-nominative?—for predicate adjectives? What verbs belong especially to this rule? When the verb is in the infinitive, in what case is the predicate noun agreeing with the subject?

## EXERCISES.

I. Inertia est vitium.

Virtus est sua merces.

Non sum pastor.

Es judex.

Ille est prudens.

Tu fies poëta.

Fames est optimus coquus.

Ego Caius vocor.

Ira furor brevis est.

Caius visus erat timidus.

II. Europe is a peninsula.

The boy becomes a man.

Drunkenness is madness.

The tree has been a twig.

The earth is the great parent.

Euröpa sum peninsula.

Puer fio homo.

Ebrietas insania sum,

Arbor virga sum.

Magnus parens (*fem.*) terra sum.

A true friend is a great treasure.

Amicus verus sum thesaurus magnus.

III. Ye are judges.

They will never become poets.

Europe and Africa are peninsulas.

The twig has become a tree.

The boys had become men.

Cicero was chosen<sup>a</sup> consul.

Marcus Antonius and Caius Cassius were chosen tribunes.<sup>b</sup>

Romulus and Remus were brothers.

Caius was innocent.<sup>c</sup>

They were shepherds.

(a) To choose, *creo*.

(b) *Tribunus*.

(c) *Innocens*.

## ANALYSIS AND PARSING

*Tu fies poëta*, Thou wilt become a poet.

**ANALYSIS.**—*Tu* is the subject. *Fies poëta* is the predicate.

**QUESTION.**—Is the predicate grammatical or logical? Less. 84, 3.

**PARSING.**—*Tu* is a substantive pronoun, of the second person: Nom. and Voc. *tu*, Gen. *tui*. It is found in the singular number, and is nominative to *fies*. “The noun or pronoun,” &c. Less 90, 1.

**QUESTIONS.**—Why is *tu* a pronoun? A. Because “A pronoun is a word,” &c. Less. 41, 1.—Why a substantive pronoun? A. Because “The substantive pronouns are,” &c. Less 41, 3.—Why of the second person? A. Because it denotes the person spoken to, and “Nouns and pronouns have three persons,” &c. Less. 6, 9.—Why of the singular number? A. Because “The singular number denotes one object.” Less. 5, 9.

*Fies* is an active verb from *facio*, *factere*, *fecī*, *factum*, of the third conjugation; it is found in the passive voice, where it is irregular: Less. 79 and 75, 2, (*fo*, *fieri*, *factus sum*,) in the indicative mood, future tense, second person, singular number, agreeing with its nominative *tu*; “A verb agrees,” &c. Less. 90, 2.

**QUESTIONS.**—Why is *fies* a verb? Why an active verb? A. Because “An active verb is,” &c. Less. 46, 3.—Why of the third conjugation? A. Because it has a short before *re* in the present infinitive active, and “The conjugations may be distinguished,” &c. Less. 32, 3.—What are the roots of the active voice? A. *fac*, *fec*.

and *fact*.—What does the first root become in the passive? A. *f.*—Why in the passive voice? A. Because the object of the verb is made its subject, and "The passive voice is that," &c. Less. 46, 9.—Why in the indicative mood? Why in the future tense? A. Because it represents the action as future, and "The future represents," &c. Less. 47, 8.—Why in the second person? A. Because its form denotes that its subject is of the second person, and "Person in verbs is the form," &c. Less. 47, 12.—Why of the singular number? A. Because its form denotes that its subject is singular. Less. 47, 14.

*Poëta* is a common noun, of the second person; N. and V. *poëta*, G. *poëtæ*; of the first declension, masculine gender, singular number, and is nominative after *ties*. "A noun in the predicate," &c. Less. 91, 1.

Questions.—Why is *poëta* a noun? Why a common noun? Why in the second person? A. Because it denotes the person spoken to, and "Noun," &c. Less. 6, 9.—Why of the first declension? Why masculine? A. Because it is a name applied to males only, and "The names of all male beings," &c. Less. 5, 1.—Why in the singular number? Why is it the nominative after *ties*? A. Because it follows *ties* a passive verb, and denotes the same person as its subject *tu*, and "A noun in the predicate," &c. Less. 92, 1.

Note.—In the subsequent exercises in parsing, the questions are generally omitted, but the teacher will of course supply them.

## LESSON 93.

### COMPOUND SENTENCES.

1. A *compound* sentence consists of two or more simple sentences.
2. The *members* or *clauses* of a compound sentence are the simple sentences of which it is composed.
3. The clauses of a compound sentence are either *independent* or *dependent*.
4. An independent clause is one which makes complete sense by itself.
5. A dependent clause is one which makes complete sense only in connection with another clause.

Thus in the compound sentence, "Phocion was always poor, though he might have been very rich," the former clause is independent, the latter dependent.

6. A member of a compound sentence on which another member depends, is called the *leading clause*; its subject, the *leading subject*; and its verb, the *leading verb*
7. (a) The leading verb is usually either in the indicative or the imperative mood.

(b) The verb of a dependent clause may be either in the indicative, the subjunctive, or the infinitive mood.

8. The members of a compound sentence may be connected by *relative words, conjunctions, or adverbs*, but an infinitive clause requires no connective.

QUESTIONS.—What is a compound sentence? What is a simple sentence? Less. 83, 1. What are the members or clauses of a compound sentence? What is an independent clause?—a dependent clause?—a leading clause?—a leading subject?—a leading verb? In which of the moods is the leading verb commonly found? In what mood is the verb of a dependent clause? How may the members of a compound sentence be connected? What clauses require no connective?

#### EXERCISE.

Point out the several clauses in the following compound sentences, and the nature of each clause as being independent or dependent:—

The wicked flee, when no man pursueth.  
If sinners entice thee, consent thou not.  
I have been young, and now am old.  
Go to the ant, thou sluggard, consider her ways, and be wise.  
Blessed is he that considereth the poor.  
I would punish you, if I were not angry.

## LESSON 94.

#### RELATIVES.

1. Sentences are often compounded by means of relative words; as, *qui, quæ, quod*, &c.

2. The relative *qui, quæ, quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; as,

*Tu qui audis*, Thou who hearest.  
*Aves quæ canunt*, The birds which sing.  
*Puer qui legebat*, The boy who was reading.  
*Nos qui adsümus*, We who are present.

NOTE 1.—In parsing the relative, the same rules are to be given for its cases, as for those of nouns.

NOTE 2.—The antecedent may be one or more clauses, and the relative is then in the neuter gender.

3. Sometimes the relative agrees with a noun following it, when the latter noun is explanatory of the antecedent, or signifies the same thing; as,

*Ante comitia, quod tempus haud longè abērat,* Before the election, which time was not far off. *Animal, qui vocātur homo,* The animal, which is called man.

**REMARK.**—In the preceding sentences, the relatives, instead of agreeing with their antecedents *comitia* and *animal*, agree with the subsequent nouns, *tempus* and *homo*.

**4. A relative referring to two or more antecedents is commonly plural.**

**REMARK.**—If the antecedents are of different genders, and denote things *having life*, the relative is masculine rather than feminine; but if they denote things *without life*, the relative is generally neuter; as,

*Puer et puerula, qui legunt,* The boy and girl, who read. *Arboes et fructus, quae spectantur,* The tree and fruit, which are seen.

**5. Qui at the beginning of a sentence is often translated like *hic* or *ille* ; as,**

*Qua cūm ita sint,* Since these things are so.

**6. The relative is commonly placed after its antecedent and as near to it as possible.**

**7. The pronoun *is*, as an antecedent, is often to be supplied. So *tantus*, *talis*, &c., before *quantus*, *qualis*, &c.**

**8. The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of the antecedent, or the antecedent into that of the relative.**

**QUESTIONS.**—What is the rule for the agreement of the relative? What rules are to be given for the case of the relative? Of what gender is a relative when its antecedent is a clause or clauses? With what word does the relative sometimes agree, instead of agreeing with its antecedent? What is the rule for a relative referring to two or more antecedents? What is the rule for the gender of the relative, when its antecedents are of different genders? How may *qui* often be translated at the beginning of a sentence? What is the rule for the position of a relative? What antecedent is often to be supplied? What is the rule for the attraction of the relative and antecedent?

#### EXERCISES.

I. *Avis, quæ nuper canebat, nunc tacet.*

*Nulla est natio, quæ pertimescitur.*

*Meus frater, qui æger fuit, nunc convalescit.*

*Omnes cause, quæ commemorantur, justissimæ sunt.*

II. Translate into Latin:—

The tree, which was then standing, has lately fallen, *Arbois qui tum sto, nuper cado.*

All the men, who had been condemned, were put to death, *Omnis homo, qui condemno, occido.*

We, who now live, shall soon die, *Ego, qui nunc vivo, citò morior.*

*Avis, quæ nuper canebat, nunc tacet,* The bird, which was lately singing, is now silent.

**ANALYSIS.**—This is a compound sentence consisting of an antecedent clause, *avis nunc tacet*, and a relative clause, *quæ nuper canebat*; the former being an independent, the latter a dependent clause.

*Avis* is the subject of the leading clause, and *tacet* its grammatical predicate, which is modified by *nunc*.

*Quæ* is the subject of the dependent clause, and *canebat* its grammatical predicate, which is modified by *nuper*.

**PARSING.**—*Avis* is a common noun, N. and V. *avis*, G. *avis*, of the third declension, feminine gender; it is found in the singular number, and is nominative to *tacet*; “The noun or pronoun,” &c. Less. 90, 1.

*Tacet* is a neuter verb from *taceo*, *tacere*, *tacui*, *tacitum*, of the second conjugation; it is found in the active voice, indicative mood, present tense, (*taceo*, *taces*, *tacet*) third person singular, agreeing with its nominative *avis*; “A verb agrees,” &c. Less. 90, 2.

*Nunc* is an adverb, modifying *tacet*; “Adverbs modify or limit,” &c. Less. 88, 1.

*Quæ* is a relative pronoun, from *qui*, *qua*, *quod*; it is found in the feminine gender, (N. *qua*, G. *cujus*), singular number, third person, agreeing with its antecedent *avis*, “The relative *qui*, *qua*, *quod*, agrees,” &c. Less. 94, 2; and is nominative to *canebat*, “The noun or pronoun,” &c.

*Canebat* is an active verb, from *cano*, *canere*, *cecini*, *cantum*, of the third conjugation; it is found in the active voice, indicative mood, imperfect tense, (*canebam*, *canebas*, *canebat*) third person singular, agreeing with *qua*; “A verb agrees,” &c.

*Nuper* is an adverb, modifying *canebat*; “Adverbs modify or limit,” &c.

## LESSON 95.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. The tense of the infinitive is present, past or future, in reference to that of the verb with which it is connected; as,

*Videor audire*, I seem to hear. *Visus sum audire*, I seemed to hear. *Videbor audire*, I shall seem to hear. *Visus eram audire*, I had seemed to hear.

In all these examples the action of hearing is represented as present at the time denoted by the principal verbs, *videor*, *videbor*, &c.

*Videor audiisse*, I seem to have heard. *Visus sum audiisse*, I seemed to have heard.

In these examples the action of hearing is represented as past, at the time denoted by the principal verbs.

2. The infinitive may be considered either as a verb, or as an abstract noun.

As a verb, the following rule is to be observed respecting its subject.

3. The subject of the infinitive mood is put in the accusative ; as,

*Miror te non scribēre*, I wonder that you do not write.

Here *te*, the subject of *scribēre*, is put in the accusative.

NOTE 1.—The particle *that* is commonly to be supplied in English before the subject of the infinitive, and the same is to be omitted in translating from English into Latin.

NOTE 2.—As a noun, the infinitive may be either the subject or the object of a verb, according to the following rules.

4. The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the subject of a verb ; as,

*Homines interfiri necesse est*, That men should die is unavoidable.

*Bene dicere haud absurdum est*, To speak well is not unbecoming.

The grammatical subject in the first sentence is *interfiri*, the logical subject is *homines interfiri*. In the second sentence the grammatical subject is *dicere*, the logical subject is *bene dicere*.

NOTE 3.—The infinitive with the accusative is sometimes translated by a similar form, but more commonly by the indicative or potential with *that*.

5. The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the object of a verb ; as,

*Spero te valēre*, I hope that you are well. *Poētae delectare volunt*, The poets wish to please.

In the former of these sentences, the infinitive with its subject *te* depends on *spero*; in the latter, the infinitive *delectare* depends on *volunt*.

NOTE 4.—The infinitive with a subject-accusative follows verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like.

REMARK.—Among verbs of saying, those of requesting, demanding, admonishing, advising, encouraging, commanding, and the like, (except *jubeo* and *veto*), usually take after them the subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*.

NOTE 5.—The infinitive without a subject-accusative, follows verbs denoting desire, ability, intention, endeavor, and some others.

NOTE 6.—The present infinitive after verbs of *sense* may frequently be translated by a present participle; as, *surgēre videt lunam*, He sees the moon rising.

6. The infinitive without a subject sometimes depends upon an adjective ; as,

*Ille erat dignus amāri*, He was worthy to be loved.

7. Infinitives usually precede the verbs on which they depend.

QUESTIONS.—To what do the tenses of the infinitive refer? With what parts of speech may the infinitive be classed? Considered as a verb in what case is its sub-

ject? What particle is to be supplied in English before the subject of an infinitive? Considered as a noun in what two ways may the infinitive be used? What is the rule for the infinitive when it is the subject of a verb? How is the infinitive with the accusative to be translated? What is the rule for an infinitive, when it is the object of a verb? What classes of verbs does the infinitive with the accusative follow? What classes of verbs does the infinitive without the accusative follow? Upon what other part of speech may the infinitive depend? What is the rule for the position of the infinitive when depending on another word?

## EXERCISE.

Sepulcrum Cyri<sup>a</sup> aperiri<sup>b</sup> Alexander jussit.  
 Miro tuum fratrem non scripisse.  
 Nemo sacer avarum esse intelligit  
 Intelligere non possum.  
 Alexander metui volébat.  
 Milites requiescere non potérant.

- (a.) Less. 100. (b.) To be opened, or that it should be opened.  
 (c.) Sc., that he (N. 1) *esse*, is.

## ANALYSIS AND PARSING.

*Spero te valére*, I hope that you are well.

ANALYSIS.—This is a compound sentence. The leading clause is *spero*, the dependent clause is *te valére*.

The subject of the first clause is *ego*, understood, (Less. 90, N. 2.) its predicate is *spero*.

The subject of the second clause is *te*, its verb is *valére*.

PARSING.—*Spero* is an active verb, from *spero*, *sperdre*, *sperdri*, *sperdum*, of the first conjugation; found in the active voice, indicative mood, present, *spero*, *speras*, *sperat*, in the first person singular number, agreeing with its nominative *ego*, understood; "A verb agrees," &c. Less. 90, 2.

*Te* is a substantive pronoun, of the second person, from *tu*: N. and V. *tu*, G. *tui*, D. *tibi*, Ac. and Ab. *te*; it is found in the singular number, accusative case, and is the subject of the infinitive *valére*; "The subject of the infinitive mood," &c. Less. 95, 3.

*Valére* is a neuter verb, from *valeo*, *valére*, *valui*, of the second conjugation; found in the active voice, infinitive mood, present tense, depending on the leading verb *spero*; "The infinitive with a subject accusative follows verbs of saying," &c. Less. 95, N. 4.

## LESSON 96.

## ACCUSATIVE AFTER ACTIVE VERBS.

1. The object of an active verb in the active voice is put in the accusative.

NOTE 1.—The object of an active verb in the passive voice is put in the nominative. Less. 46, 9.

**NOTE 2.**—The object of an active deponent verb is also put in the accusative.

**Note 3.**—Sometimes the accusative is omitted, and sometimes the verb.

**2.** Verbs signifying to *name* or *call*, to *choose*, *render*, or *constitute*, to *esteem* or *reckon*, are followed by two accusatives denoting the same person or thing.

**NOTE 4.**—A second accusative is added to many active verbs by way of apposition, to denote a *purpose*, *time*, *character*, &c.

**NOTE 5.**—A predicate adjective often supplies the place of the second accusative after verbs of *naming*, &c.

3. Verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, *teaching* and *celo*, (to conceal,) are followed by two accusatives, one of a person, the other of a thing.

**NOTE 6.**—Instead of the accusative of the person, verbs of asking and demanding often take the ablative with *ab* or *ex*; and for the accusative of the thing, an ablative with *de*, or a dependent clause.

**REMARKS**

1. The passive of verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, *teaching*, and of *celo*, *cingo*, *induo*, and *eruo*, retains the accusative of the thing.
  2. An infinitive, or one or more clauses, may be the object of an active verb. Less. 95, 5.
  3. Some neuter verbs are followed by an accusative of kindred signification; as, *Ire iter*, To go a journey.
  4. Oblique cases generally precede the words on which they depend, but they follow prepositions.

**NOTE 7.**—A verb on which no other word depends is said to be used *absolutely*.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is the rule for the object of an active verb in the active voice? —in the passive voice? —for the object of an active deponent verb? What are sometimes omitted? What is the rule for verbs signifying to *name* or *call*, &c.? In what way is a second accusative sometimes added to an active verb? What often supplies the place of the second accusative after verbs of  *naming*, &c.? What is the rule for verbs of  *asking*, &c.? What sometimes supplies the place of one of the accusatives? What is the rule for the passive of verbs of  *asking*, &c.? What may supply the place of the accusative after an active verb? By what kind of accusative may some neuter verbs be followed? Where do oblique cases generally stand? When is a verb said to be used absolutely?

## **EXERCISES.**

- I. *Africa cervos non gignit.* *Lucem fugit blatta.*  
*Maximos elephantes fert India.* *Pinus picem gignit.*  
*Ceti pulmōnēm habent.* *Pōena scelus sequitur.*

*Aves nocturnae uncos ungues habent.*  
*Lapillos pretiosos gemmas vocamus.*  
*Corsicam Greici Cyrnum appellavére.*

Cicerōnem *universa civitas consūlem declarāvit.*

Poeni Hamilcārem imperatōrem fecērunt.

Silvius Procas duos filios habuit, Numitōrem et Amuliūm. Less. 89, 3.

**II.** Rogo te nummos.—Istam pugnam pugnābo.

Pamphilus Apellem pictūram docuit.

Dolabella nummos Sicyonium magistrātum poposcit.

Hunc sermōnem te non celabo.

Jugurtha pacem Metellum rogavit.

Te hanc artem docēbo.

Ille rogātus est sententiam.

Mla atras vestes induit.

**III.**

|                                  |                               |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| The hyēna imitates human speech. | Hyēna sermo humānus assimilō. |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|

Poverty follows sloth.

Ignavia egestas sequor.

I have received your letter.

Accipio epistōla tuus.

Truth often produces hatred.

Veritas odium sēpe pario.

Read (*plur.*) good books.

Lego bonus liber.

The Greeks called Africa Libya.

Africa Græcus Libya appello.

Antonius called his flight victory.

Antonius fuga suus victoria voco.

The people made Ancus Marcius king.

Ancus Marcius rex popūlus creo.

**IV.**

|                             |                   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|
| Thou demandest money of me. | Rogo ego pecunia. |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|

We taught you (*plur.*) this art.

Doceo tu hic ars.

Eupompus had taught Pamphilus the art of painting.

Eupompus Pamphilus pictūra doceo.

I ask you (*sing.*) your opinion.

Rogo tu sententia tuus.

He has gone a long journey.

Proficiscor magnum iter.

I have sworn a very true oath.

Juro verus jusjurandum.

## LESSON 97.

### ACCUSATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

1. Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative.

NOTE.—The prepositions followed by the accusative are:—

Ad, *to, at.*

Adversus or *Adversum,* *against, towards*

Ante, *before.*

Apud, *at, amongst.*

Circa or *Circum,* *about, { of time, place, and person.*

Circum *{ of place and person.*

|               |                                                           |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Circiter,     | <i>about, near.</i>                                       |
| Cis or Citra, | <i>on this side of, within.</i>                           |
| Contra,       | <i>against, over against.</i>                             |
| Erga,         | <i>towards, after words denoting actions or feelings.</i> |
| Extra,        | <i>without, out of.</i>                                   |
| Intra,        | <i>beneath, below.</i>                                    |
| Inter,        | <i>between, among.</i>                                    |
| Intra,        | <i>within.</i>                                            |
| Juxta,        | <i>near to, by.</i>                                       |
| Ob,           | <i>on account of, for.</i>                                |
| Penes,        | <i>with, in the power of.</i>                             |
| Per,          | <i>through, by, by means of.</i>                          |
| Pone,         | <i>behind.</i>                                            |
| Post,         | <i>after.</i>                                             |
| Præter,       | <i>besides, beyond.</i>                                   |
| Prope,        | <i>near to, hard by.</i>                                  |
| Propter,      | <i>near, on account of.</i>                               |
| Secundum,     | <i>near, after, according to.</i>                         |
| Supra,        | <i>above, over.</i>                                       |
| Trans,        | <i>beyond, on the farther side of, over.</i>              |
| Ultra,        | <i>beyond.</i>                                            |

2. The prepositions, *in*, *super*, *clam*, *subter*, and *sub*, are followed sometimes by the accusative and sometimes by the ablative.

|         |                                                          |
|---------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Clam,   | <i>without the knowledge of.</i>                         |
| In,     | <i>{ (with acc.) into, towards, against, respecting.</i> |
|         | <i>{ (with abl.) in, upon, among.</i>                    |
| Sub,    | <i>under.</i>                                            |
| Subter, | <i>under.</i>                                            |
| Super,  | <i>over, on, above.</i>                                  |

3. *In* and *sub*, denoting *tendency*, are followed by the accusative; denoting *situation*, they are followed by the ablative.

4. The preposition on which an accusative depends is sometimes compounded with a verb ; as,

*Transire flumen*, To pass over a river.

5. *Nihil*, *neuter pronouns*, and *adjectives of quantity*, with verbs either active or neuter, are often put in the accusative without a preposition.

QUESTIONS.—How many prepositions are followed by the accusative? How many and what prepositions are followed by either the accusative or the ablative? What is the special rule for *in* and *sub*? What are the usual meanings of *in* with the accusative?—with the ablative? What is the rule for the accusative after a verb compounded with preposition?—for the accusative of *nihil*, &c.

#### EXERCISES.

- I. Pauci ad senectūtem veniunt.  
 Rosæ fulgent inter lilia.  
 Est locus prope amnem.  
 Ille ad mare in <sup>ra</sup> oppidum exspectavit.  
 Post me erat *Ægina*.

*Est deus in nobis.  
in Italiā migrāmus.*

*Alpes<sup>a</sup> nemo unquam cum exercitu ante Hannibālem transiē-  
rat.*

*Vulcānus tenuit insulā prope Siciliā.  
Post mortem hanc terram relinquimus.  
Cœlum transcurrit nimbus.  
Ego tē<sup>a</sup> manū<sup>b</sup> injiciam.*

(a) Lem. 97, 4. (b) Lem. 96, 1.

**II.** Hannibal sent ambassadors to  
the Roman senate.

Beyond the Rhine dwell the Ger-  
mans.

The way is dangerous on ac-  
count of the defiles.

Hercules sailed among the Argo-  
nauts.

The slaves were in the power of  
the prosecutor.

Megara was before me.  
I hold a letter in (my) hands.

Mount Jura is between the Se-  
quani and the Helvetii.

We will do nothing against your  
will.

He passed over the Euphrates.

Hannibal ad senātū Romānū  
legātū mittō.

Trans Rhenus incōlo Germānū.

Via sum periculōsus propter an-  
gustiæ.

Hercules navigo inter Argo-  
nauta.

Servus penes accusātor sum.

Ante ego sum Megāra.

In manus epistōla teneo.

Mons Jura sum inter Sequāni et  
Helvetii.

Contra voluntas tuus nihil facio.

Ille transeo Euphrātea.

## LESSON 98.

### ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

Nouns denoting duration of time or extent of space are put, after other nouns and verbs, in the accusative, and sometimes after verbs, in the ablative.

#### EXERCISES.

I. Romūlus septem et triginta annos regnāvit.

Ager multos annos quievit.—Vixi annos triginta.

Quædam bestiæ unum diem vivunt.

Tredēcim annis Alexander regnāvit.

Mulières Romānæ Brutum annum luxērunt.

Saguntini agḡerem duxērunt trecentos pedes longum.

Aliquantum viæ progressus erat,

|                                                  |                                |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| If. I was there two days.                        | Biduum ibi sum.                |
| Appius was blind many years.                     | Appius cæcus multus annus sum. |
| We have followed you ( <i>sing.</i> )            | Tu sequor nox diesque.         |
| night ( <i>plur.</i> ) and day, ( <i>plur.</i> ) |                                |
| We discoursed whole days.                        | Dies totus dissero.            |
| He extended two ditches fifteen                  | Duo fossa quindēcim pes latu-  |
| feet broad.                                      | perdūco.                       |
| We proceeded a hundred fur-                      | Stadium centum procēdo.        |
| longs.                                           |                                |

## LESSON 99.

## ABLATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

Eleven prepositions are followed by the ablative :

Absque, a, (ab, abs,) and de,  
Coram, palam, cum, ex, (e,)  
Sine, tenus, pro, and præ.

## REMARKS.

1. *A* and *e* are used only before consonants, *ab* and *ex* before either vowels or consonants.
2. *Cum* is annexed to the ablatives of the substantive pronouns, and sometimes to those of *qui* and *quis*; as, *me cum*, with me.
3. *Tenus* always stands after its noun, and sometimes takes a genitive plural.
4. The preposition on which an ablative depends is sometimes compounded with a verb; as, *Abesse urbe*, To be absent from the city; or with a verbal noun; as, *Omnibus portis eruptione facta*, A sally having been made from all the gates.

NOTE.—The following are the more common significations of the preceding prepositions :—

A, ab, or abs, from.—*by*, (before the doer of an action.)  
Absque, without, (little used.)  
Coram, before, in the presence of.  
Cum, with.  
De, concerning, about, of.  
E or ex, out of, from.  
Palam, before, in the presence of.  
Præ, before, in comparison with, by reason of.  
Pro, for.  
Sine, without.  
Tenus, as far as.

QUESTIONS.—How many and what prepositions are followed by the ablative? What is the distinction in the use of *a* and *ab*, *e* and *ex*? To what words is *cum* annexed? What is said of the position of *tenus*? What is the rule for the ablative after a verb compounded with a preposition? Where does *a* or *ab* signify *by*?

## EXERCISES.

## I. Ex urbe aufugio.

Omnia mea<sup>c</sup> porto mecum.  
 Præ mœrōre loqui non possum.  
 Socrātes de immortalitatē disseruit.  
 Caius ab amicis laudātur.  
 Alexander omnia oceāno tenus vicit.  
 Navitæ detrūdunt naves scopulo.  
 Ex vitâ discēdo tanquam ex hospitio non tanquam ex domo.  
 Timoleon Dionysium totâ Siciliâ depulit.  
 Athlētæ vino abstinuerunt.  
 Milites Romāni prælio excesserunt.  
 Me domo meā expuliisti.

(a) All my things, all my property. *Lxx. 91, 5.*

II. The shepherd drives (his) *Pastor præ sui ovis ago.*  
 sheep before him.

|                                                          |                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Plants cannot grow without air.                          | Sine aër planta cresco non p <small>ro</small> -sum. |
| No one has lived without grief,<br>(no one) without joy. | Nemo sine dolor, sine gaudium vivo.                  |
| You ( <i>plur.</i> ) are safe, if God is<br>with you.    | Tutus sum, si Deus tu-cum sum.                       |
| Hannibal passed over the Alps<br>with an army.           | Hannibal Alpes cum exercitus transeo.                |
| The Gauls retired from the battle.                       | Gallus prælium excēdo.                               |
| The hen broods (her) chickens<br>under (her) wings.      | Gallina pullus sub ala foveo.                        |

## LESSON 100.

## GENITIVE AFTER NOUNS.

A noun which limits the meaning of another noun, denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive.

REMARK 1.—A pronoun limiting the meaning of a noun is put in the genitive; as, *Pars tui*, A part of thee.

REMARK 2.—The genitive is *subjective* when it denotes the subject of the action, feeling, &c., implied in the limited noun; as, *Junonis ira*, The anger of Juno. It is *objective* when it denotes the object of such action, feeling, &c.; as, *Amor virtutis*, The love of virtue.

Note 1.—The genitive commonly stands before the word which it limits, unless the latter is emphatic.

Note 2.—When a noun is limited by an adjective and a genitive, the adjective stands first; as, *Omnis comitum ordo*, All the train of attendants.

**QUESTIONS.**—What are the terminations of the genitive singular in the several declensions?—of the genitive plural? What is the rule for the genitive after a noun? Where does the genitive commonly stand? What is the general rule for the position of oblique cases? When a noun is limited by an adjective and a genitive, which stands first? What is the rule for a pronoun limiting a noun? When is the genitive subjective? When is it objective?

## EXERCISES.

I. Deus est mundi creator.

Honor est præmium virtutis.

Luciniarum cantus delectat.

Roma totius orbis caput fuit.

India orientalis pavonis patria est.

Inopia est artium inventrix.

Plato Socratis auditor fuit.

Effigies deorum erant sacrae.

Sapientia est rerum divinarum et humanarum scientia.

Caput est omnium sensuum sedes.

II. The punishment of a murderer is just. Supplicium homicida justus sum.

The mind of the wise man will be tranquil. Animus sapiens sum serenus.

Apollo was the god of medicine. Apollo sum medicina deus.  
Mercury was the messenger of the gods. Mercurius sum deus nuntius.

The temples of the Greeks and Romans were sacred. Templum Græcū et Romanū sum (*imperf.*) sacer.

Greece was the native-country of many illustrious men. Græcia sum patria multus homo illustris.

Philosophy is the love of wisdom. Philosophia sum sapientia amor.

Hannibal was the son of Hamilcar, a general of the Carthaginians. Hannibal sum filius Hamilcar, dux Carthaginensis.

Romulus was the grandson of Numitor and the son of Rhea Silvia. Romulus sum Numitor nepos, et Rhea Silvia filius.

## EXAMPLE OF ANALYSIS AND PARSING.

*Honor est præmium virtutis*, Honor is the reward of virtue.

**ANALYSIS.**—This is a simple sentence, having a grammatical subject and a logical predicate. Its subject is *honor*, its grammatical predicate is *est præmium*; Less. 84, 3: *præmium*, which by itself denotes a reward of any kind, is limited by *virtutis* to a particular kind of reward, viz. that bestowed on account of virtue.

**PARSING.**—*Honor* is an abstract noun, N. and V. *honor*, G. *honoris*: of the third declension, masculine gender; it is found in the singular number, and is nominative to *est*; “The noun or pronoun,” &c.

**QUESTIONS.**—Why is *honor* a noun? Why an abstract noun? Why of the third declension? Why of the masculine gender? A. “Nouns in *e r, o r, o*,” &c. Less. 12. 1. Why singular number?

*Est.* See Less. 91.

*Praemium* is a common noun, N. Ac. and V. *prae-miūm*, G. *prae-miī*; of the second declension, neuter gender; it is found in the singular number, and is nominative, after *est*; “A noun in the predicate,” &c.

*Virtutis* is an abstract noun, N. and V. *virtus*, G. *virtutis*; of the third declension, feminine gender; it is found in the singular number, genitive case, limiting *prae-miūm*; “A noun which limits the meaning of another noun,” &c. Less. 100.

**QUESTIONS.**—Why is *virtus* a noun? Why an abstract noun? Why of the third declension? Why feminine gender? A. “Nouns, not increasing in *e s*,” &c. Less. 15. 1. Why in the singular number?

## LESSON 101.

### GENITIVE OR ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.

When a noun limiting the meaning of another noun denotes a *property*, *character*, or *quality*, it has an adjective agreeing with it, and is put either in the genitive or the ablative.

#### REMARKS.

- With nouns of *time* or *number* the *genitive* of quality is always used.
- When the quality is an *essential* one the genitive is commonly used; as, *Vir summae prudentiae*, A man of the greatest prudence.
- In the predicate of a sentence after *sum* or *fio*, the ablative of quality is more common than the genitive.

**NOTE.**—With the ablative of quality *sum* is often translated to *have* or to *possess*.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is the rule for the genitive or ablative of quality? With what nouns is the genitive always used? When the quality is an essential one, what case is commonly used? Which is commonly used in the predicate after *sum* or *fio*? How is *sum* often translated with the ablative of quality.

#### EXERCISES.

- Homo maximī ingenii.—Homines summae virtutis.  
Hæc est res magni laboris.—Fecit iter unius diēi.  
Cato filium summo ingenio summāque virtute amisit.  
Hector erat insigni virtute.—Fossa pedum trium.  
Incredibili sollicitudine sum de valetudine tuā.  
Vulgus ingenio mobili erat.

|                                                                            |                                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| II. Lysander was (a man) of the greatest bravery.                          | Lysander sum summus virtus.                 |
| Catiline was (a man) of great inconstancy.                                 | Catilina sum magnus inconstans.             |
| An armistice of thirty days has been made.                                 | Indutio triginta dies fio.                  |
| A thanksgiving of twenty-two days was decreed.                             | Supplicatio viginti duo dies decerno.       |
| I have great hope.                                                         | Sum magnus spes.                            |
| Pompey and Cæsar had not the same mind.                                    | Pompeius et Cæsar non sum idem mens.        |
| All (men) have peculiar good will towards you.                             | Omnis sum singularis benevolentia in tu.    |
| The pyramid was of eight hundred feet (i. e. was eight hundred feet high.) | Pyramis sum octingenti pes.                 |
| Be of good courage.                                                        | Sum bonus animus.                           |
| Cato possessed singular sagacity and industry.                             | Cato singularis sum prudentia et industria. |

## EXAMPLES OF ANALYSIS AND PARSING.

*Incredibili sollicitudine sum de valetudine tuâ, I have incredible anxiety concerning your health.*

ANALYSIS.—This is a simple sentence. Its subject is *ego* understood, Less. 90, N. 2; its grammatical predicate is *sum* with *homo* or the like understood, Less. 101; which is limited by *sollicitudine*, and this is limited both by the adjective *incredibili* and by *de valetudine*, and *valetudine* by *tuâ*.

PARSING.—*Sum* is the substantive verb, (conjugate it, &c.)

*Incredibili* is an adjective from *incredibilis*, *incredibile*,—of the third declension, and two terminations; it is found in the feminine gender, singular number, N. and V. *incredibilis*, G. *incredibilis*, D. and Ab. *incredibili*, Ac. *incredibilem*, in the ablative case, agreeing with *sollicitudine*; “Adjectives, adjective pronouns,” &c.

*Sollicitudine* is an abstract noun, N. and V. *sollicitudo*, G. *sollicitudinis*, &c.; it is found in the singular number, ablative case; “When a noun limiting,” &c. Less. 101.

*De* is a preposition followed by the ablative.

*Valetudine* is an abstract noun, from *valetudo*, N. and V. *valetudo*, G. *valetudinis*, &c.; of the third declension, feminine gender, singular number; it is found in the ablative case; “Eleven prepositions,” &c.

*Tuâ* is a possessive adjective pronoun, from *tuis*, *tua*, *tuum*, of the first and second declensions; it is found in the feminine gender, N. and V. *tua*, G. and D. *tua*, Ac. *tuam*, Abl. *tuâ*, singular number, ablative case, agreeing with *valetudine*; “Adjectives,” &c.

## LESSON 102.

## GENITIVE WITH SUM.

1. The noun on which the genitive depends is often wanting in the predicate after *sum*.

REMARK 1.—In translating the genitive after *sum*, the word *man*, *person*, or *animal*, is sometimes to be supplied, and sometimes *part*, *properly*, *nature*, *characteristic*, *duty*, *mark*, *sign*, *proof*, *custom*, or the like.

REMARK 2.—In this construction, when *part*, *property*, &c., are to be supplied, an infinitive is often the subject of the verb.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the genitive with *sum*? In translating the genitive after *sum*, what is to be supplied? What is often the subject of the verb, when *part*, *property*, &c., are to be supplied?

## EXERCISES.

## I. Prudentia est senectutis.

Paupēris<sup>a</sup> est<sup>b</sup> numerāre pecus.

Cujusvis hominis est errāre.

Inspiciens<sup>a</sup> est<sup>c</sup> in errōre perseverare.

Est<sup>c</sup> sapientis rustici supervacuas frondes vitis decerpēre.

Est<sup>c</sup> magistratūs malorum hominum temeritati<sup>d</sup> resistēre.

Est<sup>c</sup> nobilis natūræ semper sperāre.

Claudius somni brevissimi erat.

Formica est magni labōris.

II. It is a mark of avarice to desire too much. Sum avaritia nimius (*neut.*) desidēro.

It is the duty of men to pity the unfortunate. Sum homo misereor infelix.—

To strive in vain is a proof of the greatest folly. Frustrā nitor extrēmus dementia sum.<sup>c</sup>

It is a mark of a temperate man not to desire too much. Sum continens<sup>a</sup> non nimius (*neut.*) desidēro.

(a) Less. 91, 4. (b) *Numerare* is the grammatical subject, and *numerare pecus* the logical subject. (c) What is the grammatical, and what the logical subject of this verb? (d) What is the rule for this dative? (e) Less. 107.

## LESSON 103.

## GENITIVE AFTER PARTITIVES.

1. Nouns, adjectives, adjective pronouns, and adverbs, denoting a part, are followed by a genitive lenoting the whole.

2. *Nihil*, a neuter adjective of quantity, or a neuter pronoun, followed by a partitive genitive, is often to be translated by an adjective agreeing with its noun ; as,

*Nihil præmii*, No reward. *Tantum fidei*, So much fidelity. *Id temporis*, That time.

3. The partitive genitive after *nihil* and neuter adjectives and pronouns, is sometimes a neuter adjective of the second declension, used as a noun ; as,

*Nihil sinceri*, No sincerity. *Tantum boni*, So much good. *Si quid habes novi*, If you have any thing new.

NOTE 1.—The English signs of the partitive genitive are *of* or *among*.

NOTE 2.—Instead of a genitive after partitives, the ablative or the accusative with a preposition often occurs ; as, *Unus ex multis*, One of many.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the partitive genitive ?—for the translation of *nihil*, &c., when followed by a partitive genitive ? What sometimes supplies the place of a noun in the partitive genitive after *nihil*, &c.? What are the English signs of the partitive genitive ? What other construction may follow partitives ?

#### EXERCISES.

I. *Vulpes omnium bestiarum callidissima est.*

*Tarquinius omnium regum Romanorum postremus fuit.*

*Indus est omnium fluminum maximus.*

*Cicero erat oratorum Romanorum eloquentissimus.*

*Socrates fuit philosophorum Graecorum sapientissimus.*

*Catilina satis eloquentiae, parum sapientiae habuit.*

*In eo plus mali quam boni fuit.*

(a) An indeclinable neuter adjective of quantity, used substantively, the object of *habuit*. (b) *In eo*, "in him." Less. 42, 2.

II. The Belgians are the bravest of all the Gauls.

Syracuse was the largest of the Grecian cities.

This was the most grateful of all triumphs.

There is no one of the sisters.

I have this consolation. (2.)

I give the same advice. (2.)

No news has been brought to us. (3.)

There is much evil in example.

Crassus had sufficient severity.

*Gallus omnis fortis sum Belgæ.*

*Syracusæ (plur.) sum magnus  
Græcus urbs.*

*Hic sum omnis triumphus gratus.*

*Nullus sum soror.*

*Hic consolatio habeo.*

*Idem consilium do.*

*Nihil novus ad ego affero.*

*Sum multus malum in exemplum.*

*Crassus habeo severitas satis.*

## LESSON 104.

## GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which in English are followed by *of* or *in respect of*, are in Latin followed by a genitive.

**REMARK 1.**—This rule includes especially verbals in *ax*, participles in *ns*, and a few in *tus*, and adjectives denoting an affection of the mind.

**REMARK 2.**—Many adjectives included in this rule, instead of the genitive, are sometimes construed with the infinitive or a clause, or with the accusative or the ablative, either with or without a preposition.

**REMARK 3.**—Adjectives of *plenty* or *want*, and some others, are followed by either the genitive or the ablative.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is the rule for the genitive after adjectives? What does this rule include? What other constructions sometimes follow these adjectives? What is the rule for adjectives of plenty or want?

## EXERCISES.

Vetēres Romāni erant laudis avidi, pecuniae liberales.

Italia plena erat Graecarūn coloniarūm.

Pisistratus erat artium et literarū amantissimus.

Pompeius Magnus erat potestatis cupidissimus.

Conon rei militaris prudens fuit.

Soli sunt cantare periti Arcades.

Ille erat avidus in pecuniis.

Amor et melle et felle est secundissimus.

Gallia frugum hominumque fertilis fuit.

Pyrrhus belli peritus fuit, et perpetui imperii cupidus.

Homo solus est particeps rationis.

Pompeius paece omnium vitiōrum expers erat.

- |                                                              |                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| II. The ancient Germans were not fond of letters.            | Priscus Germānus non sum<br>(imperf.) amans littērāe.             |
| My mind is conscious of rectitude.                           | Meus mens sum rectum conscientius.                                |
| Caius was unmindful of a favor.                              | Caius sum immēmor beneficium.                                     |
| I am full of fear.                                           | Sum timor plenus.                                                 |
| Wild beasts are destitute of reason and speech.              | Fera sum expers ratio et sermo.                                   |
| The harbor is full of ships.                                 | Portus sum navis plenus.                                          |
| Cato was very patient of injuries.                           | Cato sum patiens injuria.                                         |
| The ancient Germans were patient of thirst, cold, and labor. | Antiquus Germānus sum patiens<br>sitīs, frigus, et labor. (plur.) |

## LESSON 105.

## GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

1. The *person* or *thing* which one *remembers* or *forgets*, is put either in the genitive or the accusative.
2. The *thing* of which one is *admonished*, is put in the genitive, or in the ablative with *de*.
3. The *crime* of which one is *accused*, *convicted*, *condemned*, or *acquitted*, is put in the genitive, and sometimes in the ablative with or without a preposition.
4. The *punishment* to which one is *condemned* is put in the genitive, the ablative, or the accusative with *ad* or *in*.

**NOTE.**—Verbs of remembering and forgetting are, *recordor*, *memini*, *reminiscor* and *obliviscor* :—of admonishing, *moneo*, and its compounds.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is the rule for verbs of remembering and forgetting?—of admonishing?—of accusing, &c.? In what case is the word denoting the punishment, after verbs of condemning? Name the verbs of remembering, &c.—of admonishing.

## EXERCISES.

|                                                   |                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| I. Recordamur præteritorum. <sup>a</sup>          | Cæsar pristinæ virtutis Helvetiorum reminiscitur. |
| Tua merita recordor.                              | Amicos nostros reminiscor.                        |
| Injuriarum obliviscamur.                          | Caius ad metalla condemnatus est.                 |
| Caius injurias oblitus est.                       | Judices Caium capitibus damnaverunt.              |
| Caius me egestatis <sup>b</sup> admonuit.         | Ille damnatus est longi laboris.                  |
| Memini constantiæ tue.                            | (a) Less. 91, 5. (b) sc. mea. Less. 91, 6.        |
| Ille damnatus est longi laboris.                  | Recordor ille dies.                               |
| II. I call to mind that day.                      | Obliviscor injuria, sed recordor beneficium.      |
| Thou forgettest injuries, but rememberest favors. | Ego promissum moneo.                              |
| Thou reminstest me of (my) promise.               | Memini amicus tuus.                               |
| I remember your friend.                           | Moneo de tuus constantia.                         |
| I am reminded of your constancy.                  | Caius caput damno.                                |
| Caius was condemned to death. <sup>a</sup>        | Ego furtum accuso.                                |
| Thou hast accused me of theft.                    | Convinco proditio.                                |
| Thou hast been convicted of treachery.            |                                                   |

(a) *abl.*

## LESSON 106.

## GENITIVE AFTER VERBS—(CONTINUED.)

1. *Sum*, and verbs of *valuing*, are followed by a genitive denoting *degree* of estimation ; as,

*Est magni*, It is of great value. *Virtutem magni aestimat*, He values virtue highly, or at a high price.

2. *Refert* and *intérêt* are followed by a genitive of the person or thing, whose concern or interest they denote.

## REMARKS.

1. After *sum* and verbs of valuing, the degree of value is commonly expressed by the genitive of a neuter adjective of quantity.

2. After *refert* and *intérêt*, the *degree* of interest or importance is expressed by the genitive of a neuter adjective, as *tanti*, *quanti*, &c., by a corresponding adverb, or a neuter noun or pronoun in the accusative.

3. The *subject* which interests or concerns one is expressed by an infinitive or a subjunctive clause.

4. Instead of the genitive of the substantive pronouns, after *refert* and *intérêt*, the possessive adjective pronouns *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, and *vestra*, are used.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for *sum* and verbs of *valuing*?—for *refert* and *intérêt*? By what part of speech is the degree of value commonly expressed? How is degree of interest, &c., expressed after *refert* and *intérêt*? How is the subject which interests, &c., expressed? Is the genitive of the substantive pronouns used after *refert* and *intérêt*?

## EXERCISES.

- |                                                                    |                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| I. Caius virtutem parvi aestimat.                                  | Mea multum int̄erest hoc scire.                     |
| Quanti est aestimanda virtus?                                      | Quid mea int̄erest?                                 |
| Int̄erest omnium recte facere.                                     | Int̄erest nostra, ut vos hoc accu-<br>ratè sciatis. |
| Humanitatis refert.                                                | Tua magni int̄erest hoc videre.                     |
| Tua nihil refert.                                                  |                                                     |
| II. That you ( <i>sing.</i> ) live happily<br>greatly concerns me. | Tu beatè vivo (R. 3) mea mul-<br>tum int̄erest.     |
| It is important for us, that I<br>should be present.               | Refert nostra, ego adsum. R. 3.                     |
| It more concerns the state than<br>me.                             | Magis respublica int̄erest quam                     |
| Caius valued my labor very<br>highly. ( <i>sup.</i> )              | Caius meus labor magnus aesti-<br>mo.               |
| The field is of very-little value.                                 | Ager est parvus.                                    |

## LESSON 107.

## GENITIVE AFTER VERBS—(CONTINUED.)

1. *Misereor* and *miseresco*, to pity, are followed by the genitive.

2. The impersonals *miséret*, *pánitet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, take a genitive of the object, and an accusative of the person whose feeling they denote.

**REMARK.**—An infinitive or a clause sometimes supplies the place of the genitive.

**NOTE.**—The accusative after these impersonals is generally to be translated as if it were the subject; as, *Eórum nos miséret*, We pity them.

3. Verbs which usually take the ablative, including such as denote *an affection of the mind*, those which signify *to fill, to abound, and to want*, with *potior*, to gain possession, sometimes take the genitive.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is the rule for *misereor* and *miseresco*?—for the impersonals *misere*, &c.? How is the place of the genitive sometimes supplied? How is the accusative to be translated after these impersonals? What other verbs sometimes take the genitive?

## EXERCISES.

|                                      |                                        |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| I. Miseremini <sup>a</sup> sociórum. | Fratri <sup>b</sup> me pudet pigetque. |
| Eórum nos miséret.                   | Me civitatis morum piget tædet.        |
| Eos ineptiarum pánitet.              | que.                                   |
| Miserescite regia.                   | Angor animi.                           |
| Tui me miséret.                      | Ejus justitiae miror.                  |
| Eget æris Cappadocum rex.            | Harum rerum abundamus.                 |

(a) Imperative.

|                                             |                                      |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| II. I pity (my) countrymen.                 | Misereor civis.                      |
| We pity the unfortunate soldiers.           | Miseresco infelix miles.             |
| I pity you <sup>a</sup> and (your) friends. | Miseret ego tu et amicus.            |
| You <sup>a</sup> repent of your negligence. | Tu pénitet negligentia.              |
| You <sup>a</sup> are weary of this labor.   | Tu tædet hic labor.                  |
| I repent of having done this. <sup>c</sup>  | Ego hic facio ( <i>R.</i> ) pánitet. |
| I need counsel.                             | Egeo consilium.                      |
| He obtains the kingdom.                     | Potior regnum.                       |
| He filled me with fear.                     | Ille ego formido compleo.            |
| These things make me weary of life.         | Hic res vita ego saturo.             |

(a) pluri. (b) sing. (c) neut.

## LESSON 108.

## GENITIVE, ACCUSATIVE, AND ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

1. The name of the town *at* or *in which* any thing is said to be or to be done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; if of the third declension or plural number, it is put in the ablative.

2. After verbs of motion, the preposition is omitted before the name of the town *to* or *from which* the motion proceeds—the name of the former is put in the accusative—of the latter, in the ablative.

**REMARK 1.**—*Domus* and *rūs*, and in the genitive *militia*, *belli*, and *humi*, are construed like names of towns.

**REMARK 2.**—The ablative of place, even when it is not the name of a town, is often used without a preposition.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is the rule for the name of the town *at* or *in which*?—for the name of the town *to* or *from which*? What other words are construed like names of towns? What is said of the ablative of place when it is not the name of a town?

## EXERCISES.

- |                                  |                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| I. Dionysius Corinthi pueros do- | Cicero Syracusis quæstor fuit. |
| cēbat.                           | Publius Ovidius Sulmone natus  |
| Quid Romæ faciem?                | est.                           |
| Hercules Tyri maximè colebā-     | Archias poëta Antiochiae natus |
| tur.                             | est.                           |
| Olim Athēnis Alcibiādes potens   | Post Codrum nemo Athēnis reg-  |
| fuit.                            | nāvit.                         |

(a) *Less. 89.*

(b) A Greek noun of the first declension. See *Less. 8, R. 2.*

- II. Hannibal tres modios annulōrum aureōrum Carthaginem misit.

Cæsar Romam profectus est.  
 Cæsar Tarracōne discēdit, et Narbōnem pervenit.  
 Dionysius Platōnem Athēnis arcessivit.  
 Meus pater rure jam reddit.  
 Caius tenuit se domi.—Ite domum.  
 Ille domi nostræ vixit.—Rure huc advenit.  
 Galli domos abiérant.—Rus ibo.  
 Consul Agrigentum legionē duxit.

## III.

|                                                                      |                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| There was a very celebrated temple of Apollo at Delphi.              | Delphi clarus Apollo fanum sum.                     |
| At Alexandria and Pergamus there were formerly very great libraries. | Alexandria et Pergamum olim magnus bibliotheca sum. |
| The fountain Arethusa was at Syracuse.                               | Fons Arethusa Syracusae sum.                        |
| I seem to be at Rome.                                                | Roma videor sum.                                    |
| I was waiting for letters at Thessalonica.                           | Litterae exspecto Thessalonica.                     |
| Demaratus fled from Tarquinii to Corinth.                            | Demaratus fugio Tarquinii Corinthus.                |
| I am banished from home.                                             | Domus exsilio.                                      |

## LESSON 109.

## DATIVE.

Adjectives and verbs, (except verbs of motion,) when followed in English by *to* or *for*, take the dative in Latin.

## REMARKS.

1. Nouns also and particles, when followed in English by *to* or *for*, sometimes take a dative.
2. The dative is sometimes used like a possessive genitive; as,  
*Cui corpus porrigitur*, Whose body is extended.
3. Some adjectives compounded with *con*, and verbals in *bilis*, are followed by a dative.
4. *Similis*, *dissimilis*, *par*, *proprius*, *superstes*, and some other adjectives, instead of a dative sometimes take the genitive.
5. Some adjectives having in English the sign *to* or *for*, are followed by the prepositions *ad*, *in*, *erga*, or *adversus*, with the accusative.
6. Some adjectives and verbs which take the dative, are followed in English by *with* or some other preposition instead of *to* or *for*.

QUESTIONS.—What is the general rule for the dative in Latin after adjectives and verbs? What other parts of speech sometimes take a dative? For what other case is the dative sometimes used? What is the rule for adjectives compounded with *con* and verbals in *bilis*? What is said of *similis*, &c.? How are some adjectives having the sign *to* or *for* sometimes construed? What other preposition is sometimes used instead of *to* or *for*?

## EXERCISES.

- I. Hic labor nobis non est difficilis.      Hoc consilium reipublicæ est periculosum.
- Ille locus insidiis est aptus.      Atticus mihi est amicissimus.

|                                                                              |                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>D</i> eus omnium saluti providet.                                         | Nox est somno opportuna.                               |
| <i>S</i> enatus populi saluti diligenter consuluit.                          | Laus virtuti debetur.                                  |
| <i>N</i> ihil unquam mihi fuit jucundus.                                     | Non nobis solum nati sumus.                            |
|                                                                              | Mea domus tibi patet.                                  |
| II. These labors are easy for us.<br>These plans are dangerous to the state. | Hic labor ego facilis sum.<br><i>(See above.)</i>      |
| We have always been very friendly to you. ( <i>plur.</i> )                   | Ego semper sum tu amicus.                              |
| You will provide for our safety.                                             | Tu noster salus provideo.<br><i>(Their own, suus.)</i> |
| The senate consulted for their own safety.                                   | Tu sero, tu meto.                                      |
| Thou sowest for thyself; thou wilt reap for thyself.                         | Dico tu frater.                                        |
| I am called a brother to you. ( <i>sing.</i> )                               | Sum ille ego semper deus.                              |
| He will always be to me a god.                                               | Vivo congruerter natura.                               |
| We live agreeably to nature.                                                 | Ego clam sum.                                          |
| It is unknown to me.                                                         |                                                        |

## LESSON 110.

## THE DATIVE WITHOUT TO OR FOR.

## 1. Verbs signifying,

To favor, serve, command, assist,  
Spare, trust, distrust, obey, resist,  
To hurt, heal, marry,\* envy, threaten,  
Persuade, be angry, please, and pardon,

take the dative without the sign *to* or *for*.

\* *Nubo*, which is used only of the bride.

2. After adjectives of likeness, which govern a dative, *to* is commonly omitted.

3. Many active verbs omit *to* before the dative of the person when it immediately follows the verb; as, Give *me* the book; otherwise they retain it; as, Give the book *to me*.

4. The adverb *obviām* takes a dative without *to* or *for*.

QUESTIONS.—What do those verbs signify after which the dative is used without *to* or *for*? After what adjectives is the sign *to* commonly omitted? When do many active verbs omit *to* before the dative of the person? What adverb takes a dative without *to* or *for*?

## **EXERCISES.**

- I. **Medici** gravibus morbis medentur.  
**Homines** paribus suis invident.  
**Julia** Pompeio nuperaat.  
**Mors** nulli parcit.  
**Boni homines** aliis non invident.  
**Non** irascor amicis meis.  
**Cui** persuasisti? Nemo tibi credit.  
**Impróbus** homo patriae legibus non parabit.  
**Mihi** ignosce. Illa mihi placet.  
**Reipublice** semper favi, et dignitati ac gloriæ tuae.  
**Hec civitas** ceteris gentibus imperat.

II. I envy no one.  
The soldiers spared the house of Pindar.  
Portia will marry Caius.  
You will not persuade me.  
Nobody will trust bad men.  
The poor envy the rich.  
Romulus was angry with his brother Remus.  
Dost thou threaten us?  
My consulship does not please Antonius.  
Caius is like (his) father.

Nemo invideo.  
Miles Pindarus domus parco.  
Portia nubo Caius.  
Ego non persuadeo.  
Nemo malus homo credo.  
Pauper dives invideo.  
Romulos irascor frater Remus.  
Ego minor?  
Meus consulatus Antoniū non placeo.  
Caius pater similis sum.

## LESSON III.

**DATIVE WITHOUT TO OR FOR—(CONTINUED.)**

### **Verbs compounded with**

**Ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob,**

### **Post, præ, and super, pro, and sub,**

commonly take the dative without the sign *to* or *for*.

NOTE 1.—The preposition in composition is often translated as it would be if separate, and standing immediately before the word which depends upon it; as, *Exercitum exercitui compardavit*, He compared army with army; as if it had been, *Exercitum cum exercitu compardavit*.

**NOTE 2.**—Some verbs of *spelling* and *taking away*, and compounds of *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *circum*, *dis*, and *contra*, sometimes take the dative.

**NOTE 3.**—Verbs compounded with prepositions, instead of the dative, often take the case of the preposition, which is sometimes repeated before its case, or a preposition of similar import is employed

**QUESTIONS.**—What is the rule for the dative after verbs compounded with prepositions? How is the preposition often translated? What other compounds and classes of verbs sometimes take a dative without *to* or *for*?

## **EXERCISES.**

- I. Nihil semper floret; etas etati succedit.  
Nobis bellum a te interfuerit.  
Xerxes Graecis bellum intulit.  
Omnibus his proeliis adfuit Dolabella.  
Cæsar Galliæ Brutum præfecit.  
Demostheneis magnis oratoribus successit.  
Quintus huic convivio non interfuit.  
Milo Clodio mortem intulit.  
Romani equitibus litteræ afferuntur.  
Cæsari diadema imponere voluit Antonius.  
Conferre hanc pacem cum illo bello.

- |                                                  |                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| II. The Romans made war upon the Carthaginians.  | Romanus Carthaginiensis bellum infero. |
| Sloth is hurtful to the mind.                    | Inertia mens obsum.                    |
| Numa succeeded Romulus.                          | Numa Romulus succedo.                  |
| Aristides was present at the naval battle.       | Aristides intersum pugna navalis.      |
| You ( <i>sing.</i> ) oppose my interests.        | Meus commodum obsto.                   |
| (He) imposed laws on the state.                  | Lex civitas imponeo.                   |
| (He) came suddenly upon the enemy.               | Repente supervenio hostia.             |
| They shall not take thee from me.                | Non ego tu eripio.                     |
| A frugal (man) differs from an avaricious (one.) | Parcus avarus discordo.                |

## LESSON 112.

## DATIVE WITHOUT TO OR FOR—(CONTINUED.)

1. Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male* are followed by the dative.
  2. The participle in *dus* is followed by a dative of the agent.

## REMARKS.

- (a) The dative of the agent is sometimes wanting, when a general truth is intended to be expressed, or the application is obvious. In such cases, *tibi*, *vobis*, *nobis*, *hominibus*, or the like, is to be supplied.

- (b) In English the preposition *by* is used before the word denoting the agent.

(c) The participle in *dus*, with the verb *sum* is translated :—

(1) By the present infinitive passive either with or without *must* or *ought*.

(2) By the present infinitive active with *must* or *ought*, the dative being translated as the subject, and the subject, if any, as the object of the verb; as,

*Adhibenda est nobis diligentia*, Diligence is to be used, or must be used by us :—or, We must use diligence.

3. Verbs of *motion*, and of *calling, inciting, &c.*, are followed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*, and rarely by the dative.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for verbs compounded with *satis*, &c.?—for the participle in *dus*? When may the dative of the agent be omitted? What words may in such cases be supplied? What preposition is used in English before the word denoting the agent? How is the participle in *dus* with *sum* to be translated? What is the rule for verbs of *motion*, &c.?

#### EXERCISE.

Tibi dii benefaciant omnes.

Cetōris satisfacio, mihi ipsi nunquam' satisfacio.

Adhibenda est nobis diligentia.

Semel calcanda est via leti. R. (c.)

Hic, milites, vincendum aut moriendum est.

Si vis me flere, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi. R. (c.) (2.)

Legendus mihi saepe est ille liber.

Moriendum certe est. R. (a) and (c.)

Ille ad templum Pallādis ibant.

Ille ad prætōrem homines traxit.

Clamor it cœlo.

## LESSON 113.

#### DATIVE WITH EST.

*Est* is followed by a dative denoting a possessor;—the thing possessed being the subject of the verb.

NOTE.—*Est*, when thus used, may generally be translated by the verb *to have*, with the dative as its subject, and the nominative as its object; as, *Est mihi liber* :—*mihi*, I, *est*, have, *liber*, a book.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for *est* with the dative? How is *est* with its dative and subject to be translated?

## EXERCISES.

- I. Leōni est præcipua generositas.  
 Castōri pilus est mollissimus.  
 Elephanto est proboscis eximiae longitudinis.  
 Multis serpentibus exitiale virus est.  
 Chameleonti figura est lacerte.  
 Branchia non sunt balænis nec delphinis.  
 Insectis omnibus sunt seni pedes.  
 Longæ régib⁹ sunt manus.  
 Est homini similitudo quedam cum Deo.

- II. Each has his own way. Suus quisque mos sum.  
 I also have friends. Sum et ego amicus.  
 I have a father at home. Sum ego domus pater.  
 We have mellow apples. Sum ego mitis pomum.  
 Spiders and scorpions have eight Aranea et scorpio octo pes sum.  
 feet.  
 The fig, the vine, and the plane- Latus folium sum ficus, vitis, et  
 tree have very broad leaves. platanus.  
 The myrtle, the pomegranate, Angustus folium sum myrtus, pu-  
 and the olive have narrow nica, et olea.  
 leaves.
- 

## LESSON 114.

## TWO DATIVES.

*Sum*, and many other verbs, take two datives, denoting respectively *the object to which*, and *the end for which* any thing is, or is done.

NOTE 1.—In this connection *sum* may be translated *is, brings, gives, affords, causes, serves as or for, conduces or contributes to, &c.*

NOTE 2.—The dative of the *end* is often found without the dative of the *object*.

NOTE 3.—The dative of the *end* with *sum*, &c., may often be translated like a predicate nominative; as, *Est voluptati*, It is a pleasure.

NOTE 4.—The dative of the *person* is often expressed in English by a possessive adjective, agreeing with the dative of the *end*, or by a possessive case.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for two datives? How may *sum* in this connection be translated? Which of these datives is found without the other? How may the dative of the end with *sum* often be translated? How is the dative of the person often expressed in English?

## EXERCISES.

- I. **Hoc nobis est honōri.**  
**Tua valetūdo nobis est magnæ sollicitudini.**  
**Ampla domus saepē domino est dedecōri.**  
**Id tibi honōri habētur. N. 3.**  
**Mihi lībrum dono<sup>c</sup> pater dedit.**  
**Maturāvit consuli venire auxilio. N. 4.**  
**Divitiae multis fūerunt exitio. N. 3 and 4.**  
**Exitio est avidis mare nautis.**

(a) As a present.

- II. **Sedition almost caused ruin**      **Seditio prope urbs excidium sum  
to the city.**  
**This is thought an honor to us.**      **Hic honor duco ego.**  
**This conduces to your<sup>a</sup> advan-**      **Hic tu sum commōdum.**  
**tage.**  
**This contributed to Cæsar's<sup>b</sup>**      **Hic Cæsar honor sum.**  
**honor.**  
**It is a very great care to me.**      **Ego magnus sum cura.**  
**The ant serves for an example.<sup>d</sup>**      **Exemplum sum formica.**

(a) N. 4.      (b) N. 3.

## LESSON 115.

## VOCATIVE.

The vocative is used, either with or without an interjection, in addressing a person or thing.

**NOTE.**—The vocative, like the interjection, forms no part of a proposition, but shows to whom the discourse is addressed.

## INTERJECTIONS.

Most of the interjections may be followed by the vocative.

*En*, *ecce*, *O*, and *pro*, may be followed by the nominative, and *en*, *ecce*, *O*, *heu*, and *pro*, by the accusative.

*Heu* and *vae* are followed by the dative.

**QUESTIONS.**—How is the vocative used? What is the use of the vocative? What is an interjection? What case may follow most interjections? What interjections may be followed by a nominative?—by an accusative?—by a dative?

## EXERCISES.

- I. **Mercūri,<sup>a</sup> facunde nepos<sup>b</sup> Atlantiſ.**  
**O navis, reférant in mare te novi fluctus.**  
**Dianam tenērē dícite virgines.**

O diva, gratum quæ regis Antium.  
 Eheu! fugaces, Posthume, Posthume, labuntur anni.  
 O vir fortis atque amicus.  
 En quatuor aras!—Heu me infelicem!  
 O præclarum custodem!  
 Hei mihi!—Væ victis!

- |                                  |                                                                 |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| II. Whither, Bacchus, dost thou  | Quò ego, Bacchus, rapi.                                         |
| hurry me?                        |                                                                 |
| O happy thou (acc.) Bollanus!    | O tu, Bollanus, felix!                                          |
| (voc.)                           |                                                                 |
| Septimius about-to-go with me to | Septimius <sup>b</sup> Gades <sup>c</sup> adeo <sup>d</sup> ega |
| Cadiz.                           | cum.                                                            |
| Friend, whence comest thou?      | Amicus, unde venio?                                             |
| O immortal gods! (nom.)          | Pro deus immortalis!                                            |
| Ah me miserable! (acc.)          | Heu ego miser!                                                  |
- (a) Less. 9, Exc. 2. (b) Less. 89. (c) Less. 97, 4. (d) Future active participle.
- 

## LESSON 116.

### ABLATIVE AFTER NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, &c.

1. *Opus* and *usus*, signifying *need*, are usually limited by the ablative.

REMARK 1.—*Opus* and *usus* are sometimes construed with the nominative, the genitive, or the accusative.

2. *Dignus, indignus, contentus, prædictus*, and *fretus*, are followed by the ablative.

REMARK 2.—These adjectives often take an infinitive, or a clause, and *dignus* and *indignus* sometimes take a genitive.

REMARK 3.—*Dignor* and *digne* derivatives of *dignus*, are likewise construed with the ablative.

3. Perfect participles denoting *origin*, often take an ablative of the *source* without a preposition.

NOTE.—Participles denoting origin are *natus, satus, ortus, editus, genitus*, and the like.

4. *Utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, and their compounds, are followed by the ablative.

REMARK 4.—*Ulor*, &c., sometimes take an accusative, and *potior* is also found with the genitive. Less. 107, 3.

## 152 ABLATIVE AFTER NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, ETC.

5. Verbs signifying to *rejoice*, *glory* or *confide in*, *rely* or *depend upon*, *exchange for*, *mingle with*, *feast* or *live upon*, *consist of*, and some others, often take an ablative without a preposition.

QUESTIONS.—What is the construction of *opus* and *usus*? What is the rule respecting *dignus*, &c.?—respecting perfect participles denoting origin? What words are included in this rule? What is the construction of *utor*, &c.?—of words signifying to rejoice in, &c.?

## EXERCISES.

Corpore cibo ac potione opus est.  
Nunc animis opus est, nunc pectore firmo.  
Nunc viribus usus est, nunc manibus rapidis.  
Pauca memoriam digna evenere.  
Romulus imperio potitus est.  
Epicurus confirmat deos membris humani esse praeditos  
Pisces pinnis veluti remis utuntur.  
O puéri, casulis et collibus vivite contenti.  
Numidas plerunque lacry et ferina carne vescebantur.  
Elephantus proboscide ceu rostro longo utitur.  
Curio vobis fretus hoc fecit.  
Multæ bestiæ alii vescuntur.  
Orte Saturno, tibi cura magni Cæsaris data est.

(a) Less. 112.

(b) Less. 95, 3.

(c) *Remis* is connected to *pinnis* by the adverb *veluti*. Less. 93, 8.(d) Connected to *proboscide* by *ceu*. Less. 93, 8.

|                                                    |                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| II. There is need of magistrates.                  | Magistratus opus sum.                        |
| There is need of examples.                         | Exemplum opus sum.                           |
| We enjoy the plains and mountains.                 | Ego campus et mons fruor.                    |
| We are not deserving of censure.                   | Non sum dignus reprehensio.                  |
| The life which we enjoy is short.                  | Vita, qui fruor, brevis sum.                 |
| With these (things) I am content.                  | Hic sum contentus.                           |
| Many men abuse their leisure.                      | Multus homo otium suus abutior.              |
| Curio is possessed of the highest talents.         | Curio summus ingenium praeditus sum.         |
| Exert ( <i>sing.</i> ) all ( <i>your</i> ) powers. | Utor vis totus.                              |
| Learn ( <i>sing.</i> ) to be content with little.  | Disco parvus ( <i>neut.</i> ) sum contentus. |
| Augustus possessed alone the Roman government.     | Augustus imperium Romanus solus potior.      |
| Trusting to my own opinion I have erred.           | Meus opinio fretus erro.                     |
| I rejoice in your dignity.                         | Lætor tuus dignitas.                         |
| He glories in his victory.                         | Suus Victoria glorior.                       |
| I rely on his advice.                              | Is consilium nitor.                          |
| He exchanged sheep for horses.                     | Ovis muto equus.                             |
| They trusted in bodily strength.                   | Confido corpus ( <i>gen.</i> ) firmitas.     |
| They live upon flesh.                              | Caro vivo.                                   |

## LESSON 117.

## ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, &c.

1. Nouns denoting the *cause*, *manner*, *means*, and *instrument*, after adjectives and verbs, are put in the ablative without a preposition.

**Note 1.**—The voluntary agent of a verb in the passive voice, is put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*. Less. 124.

2. Verbs which in English are followed by *with*, commonly take the ablative in Latin without a preposition.

NOTE 2.—With the ablative of accompaniment, *cum* is usually expressed; as, *Cæsar cum omnibus copiis sequitur*, Cæsar follows with all his forces.

Note 3.—The ablative without a preposition is often used to denote that *in accordance* with which any thing is, or is done; as, *Nostra more*. According to our custom.

3. Verbs signifying *to abound*, and *to be destitute*, take the ablative without a preposition. See L. 107. 3.

4. A noun denoting that of which any thing is deprived, or from which it is freed, removed or separated, is often put in the ablative without a preposition.

5. A noun, adjective, or verb, may be followed by the ablative, denoting *in what respect* their signification is taken; as,

### *Pietate filius, A son in affection.*

**QUESTIONS.**—What is the rule for nouns denoting the cause, &c.?—for the voluntary agent of a verb in the passive voice?—for verbs which in English are followed by *with*?—for the ablative of accompaniment?—for that in accordance with which any thing is, or is done?—for verbs signifying to *abound*, &c.?—for a noun denoting that of which any thing is deprived, &c.?—for the noun denoting in what respect the signification of a noun, adjective, or verb is taken?

## **EXERCISES.**



(a) Less. 91, 6.

II. Terra se gramíne vestit.  
 Terróre implétur Africa.  
 Tyrii naves onérant auro.  
 Urbs redundat miltibus.  
 Villa abundat lacte, caseo, et melle.  
 Nudantur arbóres foliis.  
 Me possessionibus meis pepulisti.  
 Clodium diligo, et a Clodio diligor.  
 Cimbri et Teuiðni a C. Mario pulsi sunt.  
 Coróna a popúlo data est.  
 Ille e concilio multis cum milibus ibat.  
 Cæsar cum omnibus copiis Helvetios sequi cœpit.

|                                                                   |                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| III. Some insects are armed with stings.                          | Aliquis insectum aculeus arma.                    |
| The walnut is protected by a double covering.                     | Nux juglans geminus operimentum protégo.          |
| Magpies are distinguished by a long tail.                         | Pica longus insignis cauda sum.                   |
| The cock announces the coming day by crowing.                     | Gallus dies veniens cantus nuntio.                |
| The house of Tullus Hostilius was struck by lightning.            | Domus Tullus Hostilius fulmen ico.                |
| Men cannot do without air.                                        | Aër homo careo non possum.                        |
| The king was vanquished in war.                                   | Rex bellum vincio.                                |
| Our garden abounds in flowers.                                    | Hortus noster flos abundo.                        |
| Themistocles was banished from Athens by the votes of the people. | Themistocles populus suffragium Athēnæ ejicio.    |
| Carthage was destroyed by Scipio.                                 | Carthago a Scipio deleo.                          |
| Agrigentum a city of Sicily, was destroyed by the Carthaginians.  | Agrigentum, Sicilia urba, a Carthaginensis diruo. |
| Deiotarus was called king by the senate.                          | Deiotarus rex a senatus appello.                  |

(a) Less. 108. 2.

## LESSON 118.

### ABLATIVE OF PRICE AND TIME.

#### 1. The price of a thing is put in the ablative.

Exc.—The genitives *tanti*, *quanti*, and their compounds, and also *pluris* and *minoris*, are used to denote a price.

REMARK 1.—The ablative of price is often an adjective of quantity or value without a noun; as, *magnu*, *parvo*, *vili*, &c

2. A noun denoting the time *at* or *within which* any thing is said to be, or to be done, is put in the ablative without a preposition.

**REMARK 2.**—A precise time is often denoted by *ante*, *post*, or *ab hinc* with the accusative or the ablative; as, *Paucos post dies. Paucis ante diebus. Abhinc annos or annis decem*;—or by the neuter accusative *id* with the genitive.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is the rule for the price of a thing? What words are excepted? How is the ablative of price often expressed without a noun? What is the rule for the ablative of time? How is a precise time often denoted?

## EXERCISES.

I. Vendidit hic<sup>a</sup> auro patriam.

Magno pretio virtus aestimatur.

Reges pacem ingenti pretio mercabantur.

Isocrates unam orationem viginti talentis vendidit.

Vendidi meam domum pluris.

Parvo pretio ea<sup>b</sup> vendidi.

Hieme ursi in antris dormiunt.

Postero die Helvetii castra<sup>c</sup> ex eo loco movent.

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.

Proximo triennio omnes gentes subegit.

Consul fuit abhinc annos quindescim.

Mortuus est aliquo ante annos.

Venit id temporis.—Veniet ad id dieti.

(a) *Hic*, this (man). *Lem. 91, 4.* (b) *Ea*, those (things). *Lem. 91, 5.*  
(c) *Lem. 91, 6.*

II. The book cost me (i. e. was      Liber ego<sup>a</sup> consto decussis.

or stood to me at) ten ases.

The house is of great value.

He sold his house for a large sum.

The same day ambassadors came to Cæsar.

We sailed in the winter.

He sold the farm for less.

Domus consto ingens merces.

Vendo suus domus grandis pecunia.

Idem dies legatus ad Cæsar venio.

Hiems navigo.

Ager parvus vendo.

(a) *Lem. 109.*

## LESSON 119.

## CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

I. The comparative degree is followed by the ablative when *quam* is omitted,

2. When *quām* is expressed after a comparative, the things compared are put in the same case. Less. 88, 2.

NOTE 1.—*Quām* is sometimes understood after *plus*, *minus*, and *superius*.

3. The *degree* of difference between objects compared is expressed by the ablative after comparatives, and words implying comparison.

NOTE 2.—*By* may commonly be used in English before the ablative denoting degree of difference; as, *Dimidio minor*, Less by half.

NOTE 3.—The comparative degree may sometimes be translated by the positive with *too* or *rather*; as *tristior*, rather sad.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the construction of the comparative when *quām* is omitted—when *quām* is expressed? With what words is *quām* sometimes understood? What is the rule for the degree of difference between objects compared? What preposition may be used in English before the ablative denoting degree of difference? How may the comparative sometimes be translated?

#### EXERCISES.

I. Nihil est optabilius sapientia.

Nulla bellua prudentior est elephanto.

Argentum vilius est auro.

Nihil est dulcius verā gloriā.

• Graeca lingua est difficilior quām Romāna.

Senectus imbecillior est quām adolescentia.

Quo<sup>+</sup> plus habent, eo<sup>+</sup> plus cupiunt.

Quo quis<sup>b</sup> indoctior est, eo impudentior.

Hibernia dimidio (N. 2) minor est, quām Britannia.

Vēnit multo ante lucis adventum.—Post paulo discessit.

Multo prestat.—Liberius vivēbat. (N. 3.)

(a) *Quo—eo*, “by how much—by so much,” or “the more—the more.”

(b) *Quis* for *all quis*, any one.

II. Nothing is more amiable than virtue.

Nothing is more laudable than clemency.

A disgraceful retreat is worse than death.

The swan is larger than the goose.

The swan is much larger than the goose.

The wild goat is a little less than the stag.

Good examples are more useful than precepts.

I say that the swan is larger than the goose.

(a) Less. 40, 3.

(b) Less. 94, 3.

(c) Less. 94, 1.

## LESSON 120.

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

A noun and a participle are put in the ablative absolute, to supply the place of a dependent clause.

**REMARK 1.**—Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, may be put in the ablative absolute, when in English the participle *being* is to be supplied between them; as,

*Romanum venit Mario consilie*, He came to Rome, Marius being consul, i. e. in the consulship of Marius.

**NOTE 1.**—The ablative absolute in Latin may commonly be translated by the nominative absolute in English.

**NOTE 2.**—When it denotes time, it is sometimes translated by a clause beginning with *when*, *while*, *after*, &c., and sometimes the participle or adjective is turned into a corresponding noun limited by the other noun; as,

*Romulo regnante*, while Romulus reigned, or, in the reign of Romulus. *Hannibale vivo*, while Hannibal was alive, or, during the life of Hannibal.

So also the latter noun is sometimes changed; as,

*Mario consilie*, while Marius was consul, or, in the consulship of Marius.

**REMARK 2.**—The tense of a participle is present, past, or future in reference to that of the verb with which it is connected. Hence,

**REMARK 3.**—When in translating a participle, it is changed to a verb, the tense of that verb will be determined by the tense of the leading verb.

**NOTE 3.**—When the act denoted by a perfect passive participle was performed by the subject of the leading clause, it can be translated by a perfect active participle agreeing with such subject, or by a clause having its verb in the active voice; as,

*Galli, re cognita, obsidiōnem relinquunt*, The Gauls, *having learned* the fact, abandon the siege; or, When the Gauls had learned the fact, &c. See also *Less. 122.*

**QUESTIONS.**—What is the rule for the ablative absolute? When may two nouns or a noun and an adjective be put in the ablative absolute? How may the ablative absolute be translated? How, when it denotes time? To what does the time of a participle refer? When a participle is translated by a verb, how is its tense to be determined? When may the perfect passive participle be translated by the perfect active participle, or the present or pluperfect active?

## EXERCISES.

1. Bacchus, debellatā Indiā, Cretamē vénit.

Græci Thermopylas, advenientibus Persis, occupavēre.

Maximus terræ motus, regnante Romæ<sup>b</sup> Tiberio, accidit.

Crescente periculo, crescunt vires.

Virtute exceptā, nihil amicitiā p̄estabilius est.

Xerxes, Thermopylis expugnat̄is, protinus Athēnas accessit.

(a) *Less. 106, 2.*      (b) *Less. 108, 1.*

**Hæc oratione habita, concilium dimisit.**

Natus est Augustus, M. Tullio Cicerone et Antonio consulibus  
Romani tui non videbantur, Hannibale vivo.

- |                                                                                  |                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| II. The sun rising, the stars flee.                                              | Sol oriens, stella fugio.                                             |
| When autumn approaches, storks<br>desert cold countries.                         | Adventans autumnus, ciconia<br>frigidus terra desero.                 |
| After Troy had been taken and<br>sacked by the Greeks, Æneas<br>came into Italy. | Troja a Græcus expugnatus et<br>vastatus, Æneas in Italia ve-<br>nio. |
| Archilochus lived in the reign of<br>Romulus.                                    | Archilochus vivo, regnans Rom-<br>ulus.                               |
| When the sun rises, the stars flee.                                              | _____                                                                 |
- 

## LESSON 121.

### PARTICIPLES.

1. Active and deponent verbs have four participles, two in the active voice and two in the passive; the active ending in *ns* and *rus*, the passive in *tus*, (rarely *sus* or *xus*,) and in *dus*.

NOTE 1.—The future passive participle of neuter deponents is only used impersonally.

2. Neuter verbs have the participles of the active voice.

NOTE 2.—Some neuter verbs have the participles of the passive voice, but used impersonally.

3. The present in *ns* is translated by the English participle in *ing*; as,

*Scribens*, writing.

4. (a) The future in *rus* is commonly translated *about* or *going*, with the present infinitive; as,

*Scripturus*, about to write, or going to write.

(b) The participle in *rus* joined to the tenses of the verb *sum* through its various moods, forms the first periphrastic conjugation, denoting *intention* or *being upon the point of doing* a thing. In this connection also, the participle is translated by the infinitive active.

5. (a) The perfect in *tus* is translated by the English participles of the passive voice ; as,

*Amandus*, loved, being loved, or having been loved.

(b) The perfect passive participle sometimes supplies the place of a verbal noun ; as,

*Ante Romam conditam*, Before the building of Rome.

6. (a) The future in *dus* is commonly translated by the present infinitive passive ; as, *amandus*, to be loved.

(b) The participle in *dus* joined to the tenses of the verb *sum* through its various moods, forms the second periphrastic conjugation, denoting *necessity* or *propriety*. In this connection it is translated *must be* or *ought to be* ; as,

*Delenda est Carthago*, Carthage must be, or ought to be destroyed.

7. The perfect participles of deponent verbs have an active signification ; as,

*Miratus*, having admired.

8. The perfect active participles of English verbs, when no corresponding deponent verb is found in Latin, are translated into Latin by means of the ablative absolute or the subjunctive mood ; thus,

"Cæsar having conquered the Gauls," may be translated :

*Cæsar, vicit Gallis*, (literally, Cæsar, the Gauls being conquered,) or *Cæsar quum Gallos vicisset*, When Cæsar had conquered the Gauls.

REMARK.—In the former case the Latin passive participle is substituted for the English active, and that, together with the object of the English participle, is put in the ablative.

9. Participles are followed by the same cases as their verbs.

NOTE 3.—When the participle is intended to denote the same time as the verb with which it is connected, it is put in the present ; to denote an earlier time it is put in the perfect, to denote a later time it is put in the future.

QUESTIONS.—How many participles have active and deponent verbs ? How is the future passive participle of deponent verbs used ? What participles have neuter verbs ? How are the passive participles of neuter verbs, when found, used ? How is the present in *ns* translated—the future in *rue* ? How is the first periphrastic conjugation formed ? How is the perfect in *tus* translated ? Of what does it sometimes supply the place !—the future in *dus* ? How is the second periphrastic conjugation formed ? What signification have the perfect participles of deponent verbs ? How are the perfect active participles of English verbs trans-

lated into Latin? When the ablative absolute is employed, what Latin participle is used? What cases follow participles? What participle is used for the purpose of denoting the same time as the verb with which it is connected?—to denote an earlier time?—a later time?

## EXERCISES.

|                                                                          |                                                        |                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| I. Epistōlam scriptūrus sum.                                             | Parentes venerandi sunt a libēris.                     |                             |
| Hoc dicens ille telum mittit.                                            | Scipio, Carthaginē delētā, in Italiam rediit.          |                             |
| Accusatus rei capitalis.                                                 | Scipio quum Carthaginēm delerisset, in Italiam rediit. |                             |
| Catulōrum oblitera leāna.                                                | Sum hic liber lego.                                    |                             |
| Deus a nobis est colendus.                                               | Caius moneo.                                           |                             |
| II. I am about to read this book.                                        | Video Turnus fugio.                                    |                             |
| Caius ought to be advised.                                               | Cæsar hic dicococoncilium dimitto.                     |                             |
| I have seen Turnus fleeing.                                              | He having forgotten his promises,                      | Ille promissum obliviaſcor. |
| Cæsar having said this (literally these things,) dismissed the assembly. | Cicero having been elected consul.                     | Cicero creo consul.         |
| The tree being strip of its leaves.                                      | Arbor folium nudo.                                     |                             |
| The sea abounding in monsters.                                           | Pontus bellua scateo.                                  |                             |
| Sempronia having married Caius.                                          | Sempronia Caius nubo. Lessius.                         |                             |
|                                                                          | 110.                                                   |                             |

## LESSON 122.

## TRANSLATION OF PARTICIPLES.

Participles may be translated in various ways according to their connection.

1. Participles can be translated literally; as,  
*Mihi ad focum sedenti*, To me sitting by the fire-side.
2. Literally, but with some particle prefixed; as,  
*Mihi ad focum sedenti*, To me while, when, because, though, if, &c., sitting, &c.
3. By a relative clause; as,  
*Mihi ad focum sedenti*, To me, who am sitting, or who was sitting, &c.
4. By the English gerundive with *by* or *from*; as,  
*Lei rugiens puerum terruit*, The lion by roaring terrified the boy.

5. By a noun or pronoun and verb with some particle prefixed ; as,

*Mihi ad focum sedenti*, To me while, when, because, as, though, if, since, &c., I sit, am sitting, sat, was sitting, &c.

6. The perfect participle may be translated in a similar manner and also with *after* ; as,

*Homo lapide ictus*, A man having been struck, when struck, if struck, who was struck, or had been struck, by being struck, when he was or had been struck, after he was or had been struck, after being struck, &c.

7. *Non* or *haud*, not, with a participle may sometimes be translated by *without*. with the English gerundive ; as,

*Ille non ridens sermonem audivit*, He heard the speech without laughing.

8. The participle when the act denoted by it is performed by the subject of the verb, may often be translated by a verb, and the following verb be connected with it by *and* ; as,

*Ridens exclamavit*, He laughed and exclaimed.

QUESTIONS.—What is the first mode of translating a participle?—the second?—the third?—the fourth?—the fifth?—the sixth? How may *non* with a participle sometimes be translated? When may a participle be translated by a verb, and the following verb be connected by *and*?

#### EXERCISE.

Translate the following sentences in all the ways above mentioned which their connection will permit:

Pii homines ad felicitatem perpetuò duratūram pervenient.

Leos̄uriens rugit; satiatus innoxius est.

Xerxes a Græcis victus in Persiam refūgit.

Hæc poma sedens decerpsi.

Equum emptūrus cave ne decipiāris.<sup>a</sup>

Victi hostes in Persiam refūgient.

Ocūlus, se non videns, alia videt.

Ad cœnam vocāus, nondum vēnit.

Dionysius, a Syracūsis expulsus, Corinthi pueros docēbat.

Tu quōque littoribus nostris aeternam mōriens famam dedisti.

Cresus a Cyro victus, regno spoliatus est.

Comprehensum hominem illi Rōmam duxerunt.

Haud plurā locūta Dea fugit.

Cn. Pompeius ex urbe profectus iter ad legiōnes habebat.

Omne mālum nascens<sup>b</sup> facile opprimitur.

(a) Less. 133, 1. (b) when it is springing up, i. e., at its birth

## LESSON 123.

## X GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

1. Gerunds, and supines in *um* partake of the nature both of verbs and nouns. As verbs they govern the cases of nouns following them and are limited by adverbs, and as nouns they are governed by other words.
2. Gerunds, and supines in *um* are followed by the same cases as their verbs.
3. Gerunds are governed like other nouns in the same situation.
4. Particles in *dus* of active verbs may be used instead of their gerunds, and when so used are called *gerundives*.
5. After *ad* the gerund or gerundive may be translated by the infinitive active.
6. Supines in *um* follow verbs of motion, and denote the purpose.
7. Supines in *um* are translated by the present infinitive active.
8. The supine in *u* is a verbal noun in the ablative.
9. Supines in *u* follow adjectives signifying *easy* or *difficult*, *worthy* or *unworthy*, &c., limiting their meaning to a particular thing. Less. 117, 5.
10. Supines in *u* are translated by the present infinitive, either active or passive.

QUESTIONS.—With what two parts of speech may gerunds and supines in *um* be classed? What cases follow gerunds and supines in *um*? How are gerunds governed? What are gerundives? How may the gerund or gerundive after *ad* be translated? What do supines in *um* follow? What do they denote? How are they translated? In what case are supines in *u*? What do they follow? How are they translated?

## EXERCISES.

## I. Translate into English—

*Effor studio patres vestros videndi.*

*Videndi* depends on *studio* (Less. 100), and its object is *patres*.—*Studio*, with the desire. Less. 117.

*Hæc charta inutilis est scribendo.*

*Scribendo*, for writing. Less. 109.

*Locum oppido condendo cepit.*

*Condendo oppido*, for building a town,—the gerundive agreeing with *oppido*, instead of the gerund. Less. 123, 4.—*oppido* depends on *cepit*. Less. 109.

*Consilium urbis delendæ cepit.*

*Delenda*, of destroying;—a gerundive: *urbis* depends on *consilium*. Less. 100.

*Consilium urbem delendi cepit.*

Translated like the preceding, but *urbem* is the object of the gerund *delendi*, which depends on *consilium*. Less. 100.

*Ad poenitendum prop̄orat, qui cit̄o judicat.*

*Ad penitendum*, to repent. Less. 123, 5. Before *prop̄orat* supply *se*, he.

*Fama crescit eundo.* Less. 117, 1.

*Euryptylum scitatum oracula Phœbi mittimus.*

On what does *scitatum* depend? Less. 123, 6. On what does *oracula* depend? Less. 123, 2.

*Philippus ludos spectatum ibat.*

*Mirabile dictu.*

Wonderful to tell, or to be told. *Dictu* limits *mirabile*, which is used substantively, Less. 91, 5; *est* being understood.

*Res factu facilis.*

*Locus erat aditu difficilis.*

## II. Translate into Latin—

I have a hope of seeing (my) country.

Express this first by a gerund, and secondly by a gerundive.

Pure water is useful for drinking

He was recalled for the purpose of defending (his) country.

Express the purpose first by a gerund, and secondly by a gerundive with *gratia*. Express the same by *ad* with first a gerund, secondly a gerundive. Express the same by a supine.

## VOCABULARY.

I have, *habeo* or *est mihi*.

To see, *video*, *ēre, di, sum*.

Hope, *spes, ei, f.*

To drink, *bibo*, *ere, bibi, bibitum*.

Pure, *purus, a, um*.

Water, *aqua, a, f.*

One's country, *patria, a, f.*

Useful, *utilis, a*.

To recal, *revideo, ēre, ēvi, ētum*.

For the purpose, *gratia*.

To defend, *defendo, ēre, di, sum*.

## LESSON 124.

### CONSTRUCTION OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.

As the active and passive voices are only different modes of expressing the same action, they may be interchanged without affecting the sense. In doing this the following rules are to be observed:—

1. The subject of the active voice, if a person, is expressed in the passive by the ablative with *a* or *ab*, otherwise by the ablative without a preposition.
2. The object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive.
3. If the active voice has two accusatives, the passive retains that of the thing.
4. All the cases which follow a verb in the active voice, except the accusative of the object, are retained in the passive.

**REMARK.**—When the object of the active voice, or the agent of the passive, is omitted, being indefinite, the voices cannot be interchanged; as, 'He eats and drinks.' 'The house was consumed.' In each of these cases, if a change of the voice is attempted, the verb will be found to have no subject.

**QUESTIONS.**—How is the subject of the active voice expressed in the passive?—the object of the active? What is the rule when the active voice has two accusatives? What is the rule for the cases, other than the accusative, which follow a verb in the active voice? When is it impossible to change the active into the passive voice? When, to change the passive into the active?

#### EXAMPLES.

Active. *Scipio Carthaginem delēvit*, Scipio destroyed Carthage. Less. 96, 1.

Agent, *Scipio*. Action, that of *destroying*. Object, *Carthage*.

Passive. *Carthago a Scipiōne deleta est*, Carthage was destroyed by Scipio.

Here the action is still that of *destroying*, the agent is still *Scipio*, and the object, *Carthage*.

Act. *Rogo te nummos*, I ask you for money. Less. 96, 3.

Agent, (Ego,) *I*. Action, *asking*. Object, *money*.

Pass. *A me rogātus es nummos*, You are asked for money by me.

Here the agent, the action, and the object remain the same as before.

Act. *Caius hunc librum mihi dedit*, Caius gave this book to me. Less. 109.

Pass. *Hic liber mihi a Caio datus est*, This book was given to me by Caius.

In this sentence the same changes are made as before in the agent, the verb, and the object, but the dative after the verb remains unchanged.

Act. *Scipio terrōre Africam implet*, Scipio fills Africa with terror. Less. 117, 2.

Pass. *Terrōre Africa a Scipiōne implētur*, Africa is filled with terror by Scipio.

In the following exercise the voice of the verbs is to be changed according to the preceding rules.

## EXERCISE.

*Fures merent pñnam,* Thieves deserve punishment.

*Venbus arbøres agitat,* The wind shakes the trees.

*Vento nudantur arbøres foliis,* The trees are stripped of their leaves by the wind. *Leas.* 117, 4.

*Tibi hoc promitto,* I promise you this.

*Roma a Romulo et Remo condita est,* Rome was founded by Romulus and Remus.

*Tu ad pugnam me provocas,* You challenge me to the contest. *Leas.* 112, 3.

---

## LESSON 125.

## DIRECT QUESTIONS.

1. A question is sometimes indicated by an interrogative pronoun or adjective, or by an adverb of place, time, or manner. When neither of these occurs, the interrogative particles *ne*, *num*, or *an*, are commonly employed.

2. *Ne* is always annexed to some word, and if there is a *non* in the sentence, it is annexed to that.

3. *Num* and *an* in direct questions are commonly used when a negative answer is expected, and *an* commonly indicates *impatience* or *indignation*.

4. *Nonne* commonly indicates that an affirmative answer is expected.

NOTE 1.—In translating a question, *did* is used in the perfect indefinite, *have* in the perfect definite:

NOTE 2.—In translating a single direct question the interrogative particle is omitted.

QUESTIONS.—By what means may a question be indicated? How is the interrogative *ne* always used? What kind of answer is expected when *num* or *an* is used? What does *nonne* indicate? What is the distinction in the use of *did* and *have* in translating the perfect? When are the interrogative particles omitted in translating?

## EXERCISE.

*Quis non paupertatem extimescit?*

*Unde lucem suam habet luna?*

*Quid feret crastinus dies?*

*Quare vitia sua nemo confitetur?*

*Ubi aut qualis est tua mens?*

Num scimus, quō se confirant<sup>e</sup> aves peregrinantes ?  
 An tu me tristem esse putas ?  
 Nonne putas me verē felicem esse ?

(a) Less. 129.

Name the interrogative word in each of the preceding sentences.

---

### LESSON 126.

#### IMPERATIVE, AND SUBJUNCTIVE FOR THE IMPERATIVE.

1. The imperative in the *second person* expresses a *command*, an *exhortation*, or an *entreaty*; in the *third person* it expresses a *command* only.
2. The present and perfect subjunctive are often used to express a *wish*, an *exhortation*, a *request*, a *command*, a *permission*, or a *concession*.
3. With the imperative or the subjunctive used for the imperative, *not* is expressed by *one*.
4. *Fac* or *cave* with the subjunctive, or *noli*, *nolito*, &c., with the infinitive, is often used instead of the simple imperative: as,

*Fac crudias*, Instruct. *Cave existimes*, Do not think.  
*Noli putare*, Do not suppose.

5. The subjunctive denoting a wish often follows *utinam*, *uti*, or *O si*.

QUESTIONS.—For what purposes is the imperative used in the second person?—In the third? For what purposes are the present and perfect subjunctive often used? How is *not* expressed with imperatives? What compound forms are often used instead of the simple imperative? What particles does the subjunctive of wishing often follow?

#### EXERCISE.

Ne reprehende errōres aliorū, sed emendes potius tuos.

Ne tentes, quod effici non possit.<sup>a</sup>

Cave ne quid temere dicas,<sup>b</sup> aut facias.

*Aequam memento servāre mentem.*

Virgines vestales in urbe custodiunt ignem sempiternum.

Utinam lacrymis minueretur miseria.

Fac. ne quid aliud cures hoc tempore.

Nolito, tibi<sup>c</sup> me<sup>c</sup> maledicere<sup>d</sup> posse,<sup>d</sup> putare.<sup>d</sup>

(a) Less. 133. (b) Less. 112. (c) Less. 96, 3. (d) On what does this infin-  
itive depend.

## LESSON 127.

## DIRECT AND INDIRECT QUOTATION.

1. There are two modes of quoting the language of another—the *direct*, and the *indirect*.

2. When after a verb of *saying*, we use only the language of the person from whom we quote, without addition or alteration, the quotation is direct : (*oratio directa.*)

3. When in English, after the verb of saying, we introduce the quotation by the particle *that*, the quotation is indirect : (*oratio obliqua.*)

Thus, if in quoting the language of Cæsar, we say, Cæsar said, "I came, saw, and conquered," this is a direct quotation. If we say, Cæsar said, that 'he came, saw, and conquered,' this is an indirect quotation.

**REMARK.**—*Inquam* and usually *aio*, introducing a direct quotation, follow one or more of the words quoted.

In changing the direct into the indirect form in Latin, the following Rules are to be observed :—

I. In indirect quotation, the verb following the verb of saying is put in the infinitive, and its subject in the accusative ; as,

*Dixit se venturum esse*, He said that he was about to come.

II. In indirect quotation, the verbs of dependent clauses connected by relatives and particles, are put in the subjunctive ; as,

*Aliquis dixit, qui nihil sciat, cum nihil timere*, Somebody has remarked, that he who knows nothing fears nothing.

III. In indirect quotation, pronouns of the first person are changed to the third ; as,

(Direct,) *Caius dixit, Ego tibi librum dabo*, Caius said, I will give a book to you.

(Indirect,) *Caius dixit se tibi librum datūrum (esse.)* Caius said, that he would give a book to you.

IV. In indirect quotation, the reflexives *sui* and *suus* commonly refer to the person whose language is quoted : as,

*Caius dicit se suos servos ad te cito missūrum (esse.)* Caius says, that he will shortly send his servants to you.

NOTE 1.—The verb of saying is in Latin often omitted or implied in a verb of different signification, where in English *said* or *saying* must be supplied.

NOTE 2.—When the infinitive denotes the same time as the verb of saying on which it depends, it is put in the present; when it denotes an earlier time, it is put in the perfect; when it denotes a later time, it is put in the future.

QUESTIONS.—How many mōdes are there of quotation? When is a quotation said to be direct? When indirect? What is the rule for the position of *inquam* and *aio?* In indirect quotation what is the rule for the mood of the verb following the verb of saying?—for its subject?—for the verbs of dependent clauses connected by relatives or particles?—for pronouns which in the direct form are of the first person?—for the use of *sui* and *suus?* What is said of the omission of the verb of saying? What of the tense of the infinitive?

#### EXERCISE.

Change the form of the following quotations from the direct to the indirect or the reverse:

*Caius dicit, "Ego epistolam scribo,"* Caius says, "I am writing a letter."

DIRECTIONS.—For the changes of *ego*, see above Rules I., III., and IV., for that of *scribo*, see Rule I. and Note 2.

*Caius dixit, "Ego epistolam scribo,"* Caius said, "I am writing a letter."

*Caius dicit, "Ego epistolam ad te misi,"* Caius says, "I have sent a letter to you."

*Caius dixit, "se epistolam ad te misisse,"* Caius said, that 'he had sent a letter to you.'

*Caius dixit, "se filios suos ad te missūrum (esse.)"* Caius said, that 'he would send his sons to you.'

*Caius scribit "se cras venturūm (esse.)"* Caius writes, that 'he shall come to-morrow.'

*Socrates dicere solebat, "omnes in eo, quod scirent, satis esse eloquentes,"* Socrates was accustomed to say, that 'all are sufficiently eloquent in that which they understand.'

*Allobrogēs demonstrant, "sibi preter agri solum nihil esse reliqui,"* The Allobrogēs represent, that nothing is left for them except the bare soil, (literally, the soil of (their) land.)

*Dumnōrix dixit "liberum se liberaque civitatis esse,"* Dumnorix declared that he was free and of a free state.

*Caius dixit "se plus daturum fuisse, si plus habuisset,"* —that he would have given more, if he had had more.

(a) Less. 91, 4, and 95, 3. (b) Rule II. (c) Rule 3. (d) Less. 103, 3. (e) Less. 102, 1 and R. 1. (f) Subjunctive in *oratio directa*. Less. 131, 1 and (a).

## LESSON 128.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## ESSENTIAL PART—INDIRECT ALLUSIONS.

I. A dependent clause has its verb in the subjunctive, when connected, *as an essential part*, with a proposition whose verb is in the infinitive or the subjunctive.

NOTE 1.—Such clauses may be connected by relatives, relative adverbs, or conjunctions.

REMARK.—The subjunctive in Latin expresses what is *contingent* or *hypothetical*; and is translated into English by the subjunctive or the potential, and sometimes by the indicative or the imperative.

II. 1. A dependent clause containing an indirect allusion to the thoughts or language of another, has its verb in the subjunctive.

NOTE 2.—Clauses containing an indirect allusion are often connected by a relative or by the conjunctions *quod* or *quia*, and are commonly translated by the indicative.

2. The opinion entertained by the writer, that the sentiment or allegation, to which he alludes, is just and true, is sometimes indicated by the indicative mood.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the verb of a clause connected as an essential part with an infinitive or a subjunctive? How may such clauses be connected? What does the subjunctive in Latin express? How may 't be translated? What is the rule for the subjunctive in Indirect Allusions? By what connectives are such clauses united with the leading clause? What does the indicative in such clauses denote?

## EXERCISE.

Eo simus animo,<sup>a</sup> ut nihil in malo ducāmus,<sup>b</sup> quod sit a natura constitutum.

*Let us be of such a mind, as to reckon nothing among evils, which has been appointed by nature.*

Mos est Athēnis laudāri in concione eos, qui sint in præliis interfici.

Quid potest tam apertum,<sup>c</sup> quām esse aliquod numen, quo haec<sup>d</sup> regantur.

Socrates accusatus est, quod corrumpōret juventatēm.

*Socrates was accused, because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth.*  
Nemo voluptatēm, quia voluptas sit, aspernātur.

Plato escam voluptatēm appellat, quod ea homines capiantur.

Lysander accusatus est, quod sacerdotes fani corrumpōre conatus esset.

Phrygii ostendunt platānum, ex quā pependōrit Marsyas.

Queritur genus humānum, quōd forte regātur.  
 Aulo omnes infesti erant, quōd armātus dedecōre salūtem quāsiv-  
 erat?

(a) Less. 101, 3. (b) Lcsm. 133, 1 and 2. (c) sc. esse. (d) Less. 91, 5. (e) Why  
 is the indicative used.

## LESSON 129.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## INDIRECT QUESTION.

1. Dependent clauses containing an indirect question take the subjunctive.

NOTE.—A question is indirect when its purport is stated without the interrogative form.

2. The subjunctive in indirect questions is commonly translated by the indicative.

3. The clause containing the indirect question may be either the subject or the object of the leading verb.

QUESTIONS.—In what mood is the verb of an indirect question? When is a question indirect? How is the subjunctive in indirect questions translated? What relations may the clause containing the indirect question have to the principal verb?

## EXERCISES.

I. Qualis sit animus, ipse animus nescit.

Quis ego sim, me<sup>a</sup> rogitas?—Vita, quām sit brevis, cogita.

Non refert,<sup>b</sup> quām multis sed quām bonos libros habeas ac legas.

Incertum<sup>c</sup> est,<sup>b</sup> quām longa cujusque vita futūra sit.<sup>d</sup>

Dici vix potest,<sup>e</sup> quanta sit vis musicæ.

Cato, quid quoque die dixisset, audisset, egisset, commemorabat.  
 vespéri.—Haud scio, an mutet<sup>f</sup> animum.

Non intelligunt<sup>g</sup> homines, quām magnum vectigal sit parsimonia  
 Nescio! unde sol ignem habeat.

Ratio docet, quid faciendum<sup>h</sup> fugiendumve sit.

Queritur, cur doctissimi homines de maximis rebus dissentiant.  
 Quid quaque nox aut dies ferat, incertum est.

Haud scio, an hæc omnia vera sint.

Temporis fuga quām sit irreparabilis, quis dubitat?

Vide, quām sit vaga volubilisque fortuna.

(a) Less. 96, N. 6. (b) Is the indirect question in this sentence the *subject* or the *object* of the leading verb? (c) With what does this adjective agree? Less. 91, 7. (d) *Futura sit*, will be. (e) "Used to call to mind." Less. 47, N. 2. (f) Less. 121, 6. (g) "Will change."

|                                                                                        |                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| If. Inform me where the gods are.                                                      | Doceo ego, ubi sum deus.                                                          |
| He knows-not what he has read.                                                         | Ille nescio, quis lego.                                                           |
| Whether we shall live till even-<br>ing, God only knows.                               | An ad vesp̄era vict̄urus sum,<br>Deus solus scio.                                 |
| It is asked, whether there is one<br>world or more.                                    | Quārō, unusne mundus sum, an<br>plus, (plur.)                                     |
| Tell me <sup>b</sup> how many wars the<br>Romans carried on with the<br>Carthaginians. | Dico <sup>a</sup> ego <sup>b</sup> quot bellum Rōmānū<br>cum Carthaginensis gero. |
| I know-not what to say.                                                                | Quis dico, nescio.                                                                |
| Learn what it is to live.                                                              | Disco (sing.) quis sum vivo.                                                      |

(a) *Dico, duco, and facio*, drop the final *e* in the second person singular of the imperative, making *dic*, *duc*, and *fac*.

(b) Less. 110, 3.

#### ANALYSIS AND PARSING.

*Qualis sit animus, ipse animus nescit*, The mind it-self knows not, what the mind is.

This is a compound sentence consisting of a leading clause, *ipse animus nescit*, and a dependent clause, *qualis sit animus*.

**ANALYSIS.**—*Animus* is the grammatical subject of the leading clause, and *ipse animus* the logical subject. *Nescit* is the grammatical predicate, and *nescit* with the dependent clause is the logical predicate.

In the dependent clause, *animus* is the subject and *qualis sit* the predicate, both of which are grammatical.

**PARSING.**—*Ipse* is an intensive (i. e. an emphatic) pronoun, (Less. 41), from *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*; N. *ipse*, G. *ipsum*; it is found in the masculine gender, singular number, nominative case, agreeing with *animus*; “Adjectives, adjective pronouns,” &c.

*Animus* is a common noun, &c. &c., nominative to *nescit*. Less. 90, 1.

*Nescit* is an active verb, &c. &c., agreeing with its subject-nominative *animus*, Less. 90, 2: its object is the dependent clause. Less. 96, R. 2.

*Qualis* is an adjective of the third declension and two terminations, from *qualis, quale*; N. and V. *qualis*, G. *qualis*; it is found in the masculine gender, singular number, nominative case, agreeing with *animus*. Less. 91, 1.

*Animus*, parsed as in the leading clause; nominative to *sit*.

*Sit* is the substantive verb, from *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*; it is found in the subjunctive mood, present tense, (*sim, sis, sit,*) third person singular, agreeing with *animus*. Less. 90, 2.

**QUESTION.**—Why is *sit* in the subjunctive mood? A. Because “Dependent clauses,” &c. Less. 129, 1.

## LESSON 130.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## DOUBLE QUESTIONS.

In double questions, whether direct or indirect, the first is either introduced by *utrūm*, *num*, or the enclitic *ne*, and the second by *an*; or the first has no interrogative particle, and the second is introduced by *an* or *ne*.

**NOTE.**—In indirect questions the interrogative particle in the first question is translated *whether*, in the second *or*. *Necne* in the second question is translated *or not*. In direct questions the first particle is not translated, the second is *or*.

**QUESTIONS.**—In double questions how may each question be introduced? In indirect questions how is the interrogative particle in the first question translated?—In the second? What is the rule for translating these particles in direct questions?

## EXERCISE.

Utrūm major est sol, an minor, quām terra?  
 Casune mundus est effectus, an vi divinā?  
 Num sol mobilis est, an immobilis?  
 Sumusne mortāles, an immortāles?  
 Queritur, unusne sit mundus, an plures.  
 Nihil<sup>a</sup> refert, utrūm sit aureum<sup>b</sup> pocūlum, an vitreum.<sup>b</sup>

(a) *Less. 106, R. 2.*      (b) A predicate adjective.

## LESSON 131.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## CONDITION AND CONCLUSION.

1. A condition or supposition, when represented either as unfounded, or as merely assumed without reference to its reality, has its verb in the subjunctive.

2. When the writer would represent the thing supposed as really true, the verb of the conditional clause is put in the indicative.

**NOTE.**—The principal particles connecting conditional clauses are:—

|                                                      |                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Si, if.</i><br><i>ni or nisi, unless, if not.</i> | <i>etsi, tametsi,</i><br><i>etiam si, and licet,</i> { <i>although</i> |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|

tamquam, quasi,      quamvis, however.  
 ac si, ut si, velut si,      modò, dum,      and dummodo, provided.  
 veluti, and ceu,

(a) After *si* and its compounds the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive imply that the supposition is unfounded, and the same mood and tenses in the conclusion imply that the latter is invalid because the former is so.

(b) The pluperfect subjunctive after *si* is translated by the English indicative.

(c) The conditional clause with *si* is frequently not expressed but implied.

(d) The present and perfect in a conditional clause imply that the thing supposed may or may not exist or have existed, and the same tenses in the conclusion imply a similar uncertainty.

**QUESTIONS.**—When is the verb of a conditional clause put in the subjunctive? When in the indicative? What are the principal particles connecting conditional clauses? What is implied by the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive after *si* and its compounds? When are verbs in the subjunctive in conditional clauses translated by the indicative? What clause is frequently not expressed? What is implied by the present and perfect in conditions and conclusions?

#### EXERCISE.

*Nisi Alexander essem, essem libenter Diogēnes, If I were not Alexander, I would gladly be Diogenes.*

The imperfect subjunctive in the conditional clause, *Nisi Alexander essem*, implies that the supposition that the speaker was not Alexander is false, or in other words, that he is Alexander; the same mood and tense in the conclusion, *Essem libenter Diogenes*, imply that he would not gladly be Diogenes, because the supposition, on which depended his willingness to be so, is not true. Rem. (a).

*Hæc si vidēres, lacrýmas non tenēres.*

*Vidēres*, shouldst see. *Non tenēres*, wouldst not refrain from. *Hæc*, see Less. 91, 5.

*Si hæc civitas est, civis sum ego.*

What does the indicative *est* here imply? Less. 131, 2.

*Socrātes servo aiēbat, " Cædōrem te, nisi irascōrer."*

Is this sentence, quoted from Socrates, a direct or an indirect quotation? Less. 127. Which is the conditional clause? What does it imply? Why is *servo* in the dative? What is the object of *aiēbat*? Less. 96, R. 2.

*Non est magnus pumilio, licet in monte constitōrit.*

*Constitōrit*, may have placed himself, i. e. though he stand. The condition is here assumed without reference to its reality, that is, it is not implied that he does, or that he does not stand upon a mountain. Less. 131, 1.

*Si diutius vixisset, neminem habuisset parem.*

*Magno me metu liberabis, Catilina, dummodo inter me atque te murus intersit.*

*Vita brevis est, etiamsi supra centum annos duret.*

*Si vis amāri, priùs ama.*

*Si voluisses amāri, priùs amavisses.*

(a) Less. 117, 4.      (b) Less. 118.

## LESSON 132.

## SUBJUNCTIVE WITH ADVERBS OF TIME.

1. *Dum, donec, and quoad, until, and antequam and priusquam, before, are commonly followed by the subjunctive.*

2. *Cum or quum is commonly followed by the subjunctive ; but when it denotes time merely, with no reference to a cause, the verb is put in the indicative, unless it be in the imperfect or pluperfect tense.*

**REMARK 1.**—The subjunctive after adverbs of time is commonly translated by the indicative; as, *Quum sciret*, when he knew.

**REMARK 2.**—*Quum* introducing a second clause, is commonly to be translated at the beginning of the first clause.

**QUESTIONS.**—By what mood are *dum, donec, etc.*, commonly followed ? What is the rule respecting *cum* or *quum* ? How is the subjunctive commonly translated after adverbs of time ? Where is *quum* to be translated when it introduces a second clause ?

## EXERCISE.

*Rhenus servat nomen, donec oceano misceatur.  
Dum hic veniret, locum relinquere nolui.*

*Alexander cum Gazam obsidet, sagittâ ictus est.*

*Darius cum Athenienses punire vellet, classem in Græciam misit.*

*Saturnus cum fugatus esset a filio, in Italiam venit.*

*Ino cum in Ægyptum delata esset, Isis est facta.*

*Alexander cum Thebas vastaret Pindari domo pepert.*

## LESSON 133.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PURPOSE, OBJECT, AND RESULT.

1. A clause denoting the purpose, object, or result of a preceding proposition, takes the subjunctive after *ut, ne, quo, quin, quominus*, or a relative.

## PURPOSE.

2. The subjunctive denoting a purpose or object is translated by the English potential or the infinitive ; as. *Edo. ut vivam, I eat to live, or that I may live.*

3. *Ut* is sometimes omitted after verbs signifying *to be willing* or *unwilling*, *to permit*, *ask*, *advise*, *remind*, &c.; as,

*Quid vis faciam?* What do you wish me to do?

NOTE 1.—*That not* is usually expressed by *ne*.

4. After words denoting fear, *ne* is rendered *that* or *lest*, and *ut*, *that not*; and the subjunctive present is generally to be translated by the indicative future.

5. *That* before a comparative is expressed by *quò*; as, *Adjūta me, quò id fiat facilius*, Aid me, that it may be done more easily.

6. *That or but that*, after negative propositions and questions implying a negative, is expressed by *quin*; as,

*Sapiens nunquam dubitabili, quin immortalis sit animus*, A wise man will never doubt, that the mind is immortal.

7. *That not*, after verbs of hindering and refusing, is expressed by *quominus*.

NOTE 2.—*Quin* and *quominus* are often translated by *from* with the English *gerundive*; as, *Non me impedit, quominus id faciam*, You will not hinder me from doing that.

QUESTIONS.—What is the rule for the mood of the verb in a clause denoting a purpose, &c.? How is the subjunctive denoting a purpose or object to be translated? After what verb is *ut* sometimes omitted? How is *that not* usually expressed? How are *ne* and *ut* rendered after words denoting fear? How is the present subjunctive to be translated after words denoting fear? How is *that* expressed before a comparative? When is *that or but that* expressed by *quin*? How is *that not* expressed after verbs of hindering and refusing? How are *quin* and *quominus* often translated?

#### EXERCISES.

I. *Queso, ut me benignè attentèque audiatis.*

*Nunquam efficies, ut cancri rectà procédant.*

*Si vis vidēri doctus, opérām da, ut sis.<sup>a</sup>*

*Aqua marina salsa est, ne putrescat.*

*Quid obstat, quominus nos bæti simus?*

*Negari non potest, quin turpius<sup>b</sup> sit fallere quām falli.*

*Ocūli palpēbris sunt muniti, ne quid incidat.*

*Vereor, ut pax firma sit.*

*Vereor, ne fames in urbe sit.*

*Timeo, ne non impētrem.*

*Lacedæmonii legatos misērunt, qui eum accusarent.*

*Pyrrhus ad Romānos legatum misit, qui pacem petēret.*

(a) What is to be supplied? (b) What does this adjective qualify?

- II. The body needs many things, Corpus multus egeo res, ut  
that it may be well. valeo.  
 There was a law among the Sun (*imperf.*) lex apud Tauri,  
Tauri, that strangers should ut hospes Diana immolo.  
be sacrificed to Diana.  
 We eat to live; you (*plur.*) live Ego edo, ut vivo; tu vivo, ut  
to eat. edo.
- 

## LESSON 134.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## RESULT OR CONSEQUENCE.

1. The Latin subjunctive denoting a result is commonly translated by the English indicative, but the imperfect by the perfect indefinite.

2. The relative, in clauses denoting a result, may often be translated *as*, and *quin, as not*, with an infinitive.

3. A dependent clause denotes a result after *tam*, *talis*, and other words denoting *such*, *so*, *so great*, &c., or *ille*, *is*, &c., in the sense of *such or so*.

4. After verbs signifying *to be*, *to be found*, &c., when their subject is indefinite, and likewise after general negatives, or interrogative clauses implying a negative, a relative clause denoting a result may follow without the sign *such or so*.

**NOTE 1.**—In all cases, however, the subjunctive denoting a result depends upon a clause implying a character, quality, or other circumstance, from which, as a cause, the result or consequence is supposed to follow.

**NOTE 2.**—In some interrogative sentences a verb and relative seem to be implied; as, *Quis dubitet?* i. e. *Quis est, qui dubitet?* Who can doubt?

**QUESTIONS.**—How is the Latin subjunctive denoting a result to be translated? How are the relative and *quin* often translated in clauses denoting a result? When may a subjunctive denoting a result be used without the sign *such* or *so*? What is always implied in the clause on which the subjunctive denoting a result depends? What seem to be implied in some interrogative sentences?

## EXERCISE.

Stellarum tanta multitudo est, ut numerari non possint.  
 In Alpibus tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquecat.  
 Nemo est tam bonus ac providus, quin interdum peccet.\*  
 Nemo est tam stultus quin haec fateatur.  
 Quis tam durus est, qui precibus non flectatur ?  
 Draco leges, quibus Athenienses utebentur, primus omnium tulit.  
 Caius non erat, qui id dicerebat.  
 Non tu es es, qui, qui sis, nescias.  
 Fuērunt eā tempestate, qui dicērent.  
 Nemo est, qui haud intelligat.  
 Quis est, qui hoc ignoret ?  
 Pompeius idoneus non est, qui impōtret.<sup>b</sup>

(a) Lesson 134, 2. (b) *Qui impōtret*, to obtain. So the relative with *dignus*, *indignus* and *optus*, and the subjunctive.

---

## LESSON 135.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## CONNECTION OF TENSES.

1. The present subjunctive or perfect definite is used in dependent clauses, when the verb on which it depends is in the present, the perfect definite, or a future.
2. The imperfect or pluperfect follows the imperfect, the perfect indefinite, or the pluperfect.

|                   |                                        |                                                                                      |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i>   | <i>Vēnit, He comes or is coming,</i>   | } <i>ut portas<br/>claudat,<br/>to shut, or<br/>that he may<br/>shut, the gates.</i> |
| <i>Perf. Def.</i> | <i>Vēnit, He has come or is come,*</i> |                                                                                      |
| <i>Future.</i>    | <i>Veniet, He will come,</i>           |                                                                                      |

*Fut. Perf.*    *Venerit, He will have come,*

|                     |                                           |                                                                                 |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Imperf.</i>      | <i>Veniēbat, He was coming,</i>           | } <i>ut portas<br/>claudēret, to<br/>shut, or<br/>he might shut, the gates.</i> |
| <i>Perf. Indef.</i> | <i>Venit, He came,</i>                    |                                                                                 |
| <i>Pluperf.</i>     | <i>Venērat, He had come or was come,*</i> |                                                                                 |

\* *Is* and *was* are sometimes used instead of *has* and *had* in forming the perfect and pluperfect tenses of neuter verbs of motion.

NOTE.—The imperfect may likewise follow the *historical present*. as, *Legātos mittunt, ut pacem impetrārent.*

QUESTIONS.—After what tenses may the present and perfect definite be used?—the imperfect or pluperfect? What tense may follow the historical present?

## EXERCISE.

The porter is coming to open Janitor venio, ut porta aperio.  
the gate.

The porter is come to open the  
gate.

Let the porter come to open the  
gates.

The porter will come to open  
the gates.

I am not so stupid as to say that.  
I have not been so stupid as to  
say that.

I had not been so stupid as to  
say that.

I was not so stupid as to say that.  
I am not so stupid as to have  
said that.

There were (some) who said. Sum, qui dico.  
The porter will have come to  
open the gates.

# A P P E N D I X.

---

## LESSON A.

### DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

**Note.**—In the following rules, when liquids are mentioned, only *l* and *r* are intended, and even *l* is not here considered as a liquid when following *g* or *t*.

#### I.—SIMPLE WORDS.

**A.**—*A single Consonant, or a Mute and a Liquid, between two Vowels.*

1. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, between the last two vowels, must be joined to the latter; as, *t* in *pa'-ter*, *cr* in *a'-cris*, and in *vol'-ū-crus*.

*Exo.*—*Tibl-i* and *sibl-i* are commonly excepted.

2. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, between the vowels of two unaccented syllables, must be joined to the latter; as, *r* in *tol''-e-ra-bil'-i-us*, *gr* in *per''-e-gri-na'-ti-o*.

3. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, before the vowel of an accented syllable, must be joined to the accented vowel; as, *t* in *i-tin'-ē-ra*, *gr* in *a-gres'-tis*.

4. A single consonant *after* the vowel of any accented syllable, except a penult, must be joined to the accented vowel; as, *m* in *dom'-i-nus*.

5. *H* between two vowels is joined to the latter, unless it follows *c*, *p*, or *t*, with which it unites; as, *mi'-hi*, *tra'-hē-re*, *mach'-i-na*.

6. When *x* alone comes between two vowels, in writing syllables it is united to the former, but in pronouncing them it is divided; as, *sax'-um*, *ax-il'-la*; pronounced, *sac'-sum*, *ac-sil'-la*.

**B.**—*Two Consonants between two Vowels.*

7. Any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid, between the last two vowels, must be separated; as, *rp* in *cor'-pus*, *sc* in *ad''-o-les'-cens*.

8. Any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid, coming before the vowel of an accented syllable, must be separated; as, *rm* in *ger-mā'-nus*.

9. Two consonants coming after the vowel of any accented syllable, except the penult, must be separated; as, *rs* in *ca-ter'-va*, *fl* in *ref'-lu-a*.

#### EXCEPTIONS TO THE FOURTH AND NINTH RULES.

**Exo.** 2. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, after an accented *a*, *e*, or *o*, and before two vowels, of which the first is *e* or *i*, must be joined to the syllable following the accent; as, *d* in *ra'-di-us* and *ni'e'-*

*di-us, e in do'-ce o, r in ha'-re-o, and tr in pa'-tri-us, E-re'-tri-a, and E-no'-tri-a.*

Exc. 3. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, after an accent-ed *u*, must be joined to the following vowel; as, *r* in *lu'-ri-dus* and *au'-re-us*, and *pl* in *du'-pli-co*.

REM.—*Pub'-li'-cus*, its compounds and derivatives, and a few other words, on account of English analogy, follow the 9th rule.

#### C.—Three Consonants between two Vowels.

10. When three consonants come between any two vowels, the two last, if a mute and a liquid, are joined to the latter vowel; otherwise the last only; as, *str*, in *fe-nez'-tra*, *mpt* in *emp-tō'-ris*.

#### II.—COMPOUND WORDS.

11. The members of a compound word are separated, if the former part ends with a consonant; as, *ab* in *ab-ed'-as*: *præter* in *præ-ter'-e-a*: but if the former part ends with a vowel, the compound is divided like a simple word; as, *def'-z-ro* and *dil'-i-go*, compounded of *de* and *faro*, *di* and *lego*.

### LESSON B.

#### THIRD DECLENSION.

##### MASCULINES.

###### Exceptions in Gender.

- er . . . . Names of plants in *er* are neuter,  
With *iter*, *spinther*, *ver*, and *tuber*,  
*Cadáver*, *verber*, *laser*, *uber*.
- or . . . . *Marmor*, *axqor*, *ador*, *cor*,  
Are neuter, though they end in *or*;  
And one is feminine—*arbor*.
- o . . . . Make feminine Greek nouns in *o*,  
And Latin noun for flesh—*cario*.
- os . . . . Call neuter *epos*, *melos*, *os*,  
But feminine *cos*, *eos*, *dos*.
- nis . . . . *Finis* and *canis*, *annis*, *cinis*, *chunis*,  
Are sometimes feminine, and so is *funis*.
- es . . . . *Aes*, brass, is neuter; feminine are these,  
*Quies* and compounds, to which add *seges*,  
*Merges* and *merces*, also *compes*, *teges*:  
Common, *interpres*, *ale*, *miles*, *obees*,  
*Satelles*, *heres*, *comes* too, and *hospes*.
- ex . . . . Neuter in *ex* the herb called *atriplex*,  
And feminine *supeller*, *sex*, and *nex*,  
*Precis* from *prez* (supposed), *forfex* and *lex*  
So sometimes *cortex*, *imbres*, *obex*, *rumex*,  
With *silex*, flint, and rarely *grex* and *pumex*.

- n . . . . Four nouns are feminine in *on*,—  
*Aēdon, halcyon, sindon, icon*:  
 And neuter likewise four in *en*,—  
*Unguen, gluten, pollen, inguen*.
- 

## LESSON C.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

## MASCULINES.

*Exceptions in Declension.*

- n and r . *Pecten* and nouns in *cen* have *inis*.  
 Some Greek nouns in *on* have *ontis*.  
*Cor*, the heart, has *cordis*.
- c . . . . Patrials in *o* have *ōnis*; as, *Macedo, Macedōnis*.  
*Anio* and *Nerio*, proper names, have *ēnis*.  
*Caro*, flesh, has *carnis*. *Apollo, homo, nemo*, and *turbo*, have  
*inis*.  
 Some Greek nouns in *o* are either declined like *sermo*, or they  
 have *ō* in the genitive, and *o* in all their other cases singular;  
 as, *Dido, Ī. Didēs, D. Dido, &c.*
- es . . . . *Quies* and its compounds, with a few Greek nouns make *ētis*.  
*Obses* and *præses* have *īdis*.  
*Heres* and *merces* have *ēdis*; *pes* and its compounds, *ēdis*.  
*Ceres* has *Cerēris*; *bess*, *bessis*; *præs*, *prædis*; and *aes*, *eris*.
- os . . . . *Custos*, a keeper, has *custōdis*; *bos*, an ox, *bovis*; and *oe*, a  
 bone, *osseis*.  
 Some Greek nouns, as *heros, Minos, Tros*, have *ōis*.
- ex . . . . *Grex, lcx, and rex* form their genitive in *ēgis*; *remex*, in *īgis*.  
*Fēnīsex* and *neser* have *ēcis*; *narthex* and *vervez* have *ēcīs*.  
*Senex* has *senis*, and *supellex*, *supellectīlis*.
- 

## LESSON D.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

## FEMININES.

*Exceptions in Gender.*

- \* . . . . *Phœnix* and *calix, fornix, anthrax, corax*,  
 Are masculine; so *tradux, sorix, thorax*,  
 The parts of *as* in *unx*, Greek nouns in *ux* and *cordax*,  
 And sometimes *perdix, calx*, with *lynx*, and *limax*.

- as . . . . *As, adamas, and elphas,*  
 Are masculines that end in *as* ;  
 Neuters, *vas (vasis), nefas, fas.*
- is . . . . Masculines that end in *is*  
 Without increase, are *mugilis,*  
*Orbis, compounds of as,\* aquilis,*  
*Vermis, unguis, and annulis,*  
*Fascis, axis too, and ensis,*  
*Fustis, torris, vectis, mensis,*  
*Postis, sentis, callis, collis,*  
*Cotis or caulis, piscis, follis :*  
 Common, *canalis, anguis, scrobus, torquis, corvis.*  
 Masculines that end in *is*  
 With an increase are, *cuctinis,*  
*Cenchris, a serpent, sanguis, glis,*  
*Vomis and lapis (lapidis) :*  
 Common, *tigris, the tiger, pulvis, pollis.*
- \* impure *Chalybe, hydrope, merope, epope,*  
*Confluens, profluens, and elope,*  
*Bidens, a hoe, the serpent sepe,*  
 With *ortens, occidens, and gryps,*  
 And parts of *as, as quadrans, tricns,*  
 Are masculines ; so likewise *torrents,*  
 And sometimes *rudens, serpens, adeps,*  
 With *scrobs, stirps, animans, and forceps.*
- do and go *Cupido, margo* too, as authors show,  
 Are sometimes masculine, and always so  
 Other disyllables in *do and go,*  
 With *uneda, a fruit, and harpago.*
- io . . . . *Io, in nouns corporeal, must go*  
 With other masculines that end in *o.*  
 \* sc. *centusis, decussis, and semissis.*

## LESSON E.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

#### FEMININES.

##### *Exceptions in Declension.*

- as . . . . The following are irregular : *as, assis, a piece of money;*  
*mas, maris, a male ; vas, vadiis, a surety ; vas, vasis, a ves-*  
*sel ; and anas, andis, a duck.* Masculine Greek nouns have  
*antis ; feminines, itis ; and neutera, itis.* *Melias* has *Meli-*  
*nis.*

- i** . . . . *Capis, cassis, cuspis, lapis, and promulsis* increase in *īdis*.  
*Dis, lis, Quiris, and Samnis* increase in *ītis*.  
*Cinis, cucūmis, putris, and vomis* increase in *ēris*.  
*Polis* and *sanguis* have *īnis*, *gīs* has *glīris*.  
 Some Greek nouns have *īs*, others have *īdis*; *tigris* has both  
*īs* and *īdis*. *Charis* has *ītis*, *Salāmis* has *ītis*, and *Simois*  
 makes *Simōntis*.
- u** . . . . *Tellus* has *tellūris*. Some Greek names of cities in *us* have  
*untis*, and Greek nouns in *pus* have *pōdis*; as, *tripus*, *tripō-*  
*dis*.
- x** . . . . Some Greek proper names in *ax* have *actis*. *Onyx* and *sard-*  
*ōnyx* have *ōnis*.
- impure Nouns in *epe* change *e* into *i*; as, *princeps*, *principis*; but  
*seps* has *sepis*, and *aceps*, *auctipis*. *Gryps* has *gryphis*.  
*Frone*, foliage, *glans*, *juglans*, *lens*, a nut, and *librīpens* change  
*e* into *ēs*. *Tyryns* has *Tyrynthis*.  
 do and go *Comedo*, *unēdo*, and *harpago* have *ōnis*.

## LESSON F.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

## NEUTERS.

## Exceptions in Gender.

- ur** . . . . Three nouns are masculine in *ur*,  
*Vultur*, *turtur* and *furfur*;
- l** . . . . And three are masculine in *l*,  
*Mugil*, the mullet, *sal\** and *sol*.
- us and ur** One noun is masculine in *us*,  
 The hare, in Latin called *lepus*;  
 While *fur*, a thief, and two in *ur*,  
 Are common, to wit, *grus* and *mus*.  
 \* *Sal* in the singular is sometimes neuter.

## Exceptions in Declension.

- . . . . In *uris* form *crus*, *jus*, *mus*, *pus*, *rus*, *fus*;  
 While two make *uis*, to wit, *grus* and *sus*.

## LESSON G.

## REMARKS ON PARTICULAR CASES.

## GENITIVE SINGULAR.

1. In the Augustan age, the genitive of proper names in *es*, derived  
 from the Greek, is frequently *i* instead of *is*; as, *Ioscrīti*, *Aristotēli*.  
 2. The poets often make use of the Greek genitive in *es*, especially in

nouns in *is*, *as*, *ys*, and *eus*. So even in prose, *misy*, *misyos*, &c., and *Pan*, *Panos*.

## ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

I. Some Latin nouns in *is* not increasing have *im*.

1. Many proper names in *is*  
Have *im* or *in*, as *Tibēris*;  
And so the plant called *cappōris*.
2. These nouns have *im* alone; *sitis*,  
*Amussis*, *buris*, *cannabis*,  
*Mephitis*, *pelvis*, *cucūmis*,  
*Ravis*, *sinapis*, *tuesis*, *vis*.
3. These *im* prefer; *secūris*, *puppis*,  
*Febris*, *semestria*, *festis*, *turris*;
4. But these choose *em*; *pars*, *messis*, *clavis*,  
*Dipennis*, *crates*, *lens*, and *navis*.  
(a) *Cucūmis* increasing makes *cucumōrem*.

5. The ancients occasionally formed the genitive of some other nouns in *im*.

II. Greek nouns sometimes retain the Greek accusative in *in* and *a*, but often end, as in Latin, in *em* or *im*.

1. Greek nouns in *is*, *idis*, or *idos*, especially proper names, commonly have *im* or *in* rather than *idem*; as, *Paris*, *Parim*; but nouns in *is* especially in *itis*, more rarely have *im* or *in*; and feminine patronymics and gentile nouns in *is*, *idie*, have only *idem*.

2. Greek nouns in *is* not increasing, and also in *ys*, (gen. *yis* or *yos*), change *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *poēsia*, *poēsin*; *Tethys*, *Tethyn*.

3. The Greek accusative in *a* instead of the Latin in *em*, is often used by Latin writers, especially by the poets: as, *heros*, *herōa*; so, *aēra*, *aēhra*, *Pana*.

4. Nouns in *eus* often have an accusative in *ea*; as, *Tydea*: so, *Periclea* from *Pericles*.

5. Some Greek proper names in *es*, Gen. *is*, have both *em* and *en*; as, *Achillem* and *-en*. Some too which have either *ētis* or *is* in the genitive have *elem*, *em* or *en*; as, *Thalen*.

## VOCATIVE SINGULAR.

Most Greek nouns, whose nominative ends in *s*, drop *s* in the vocative.

## LESSON H.

## REMARKS ON PARTICULAR CASES.

## ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

I. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative.

But names of towns in *e*, with *baccar*, *hepar*, *far*,  
Have *e* alone; so, too, *sal*, *jubar*, *secar*, *per*  
*Rte*, a net, has either *i* or *e*,  
And poets make an ablative *marc*.

2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative.

But *Aras* or *Ardis*, *Bastis*, *Sicbris* and *cannabis*, have *e* or *i*.

3. Nouns, which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative.

But Greek nouns in *is*, *idis*, have *e* only.

4. Names of months in *er* or *is* have *i*. Adjectives in *is* used as nouns have *i* and sometimes *e*.

But when such adjectives become proper names they always have *e*, as does also *juvenis*, a youth, and *rudis*, a rod. *Aidis* has commonly *e*.

5. These, though they have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative, but often *e*.

Amnis, anguis, avis, <sup>a</sup> bilis,  
Canalis, <sup>a</sup> classis, collis, civis,  
Convallis, <sup>a</sup> finis, <sup>b</sup> ignis, pars,  
Supellex, tridens, corbis, sorbus,  
Strigilis, sordes, unguis, fustis,  
Vectis, rus, imber, orbis, postis.

To these add *vesper*, and some Greek nouns in *es*, Gen. *is*; as, *Achilles* or *Achilli*.

(a) Rarely *e*.      (b) Rarely *i*.

6. Some names of towns denoting the place where, have the ablative in *i*; as, *Carthagini*, at Carthage. In the most ancient writers some other nouns have the ablative in *i*.

## LESSON I.

### REMARKS ON PARTICULAR CASES.

#### NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. Neuters whose ablative singular ends in *i*, have *ia* in the nominative plural.

But *far* has *farræ*, and *aplustre* has either *a* or *ia*.

2. Some Greek neuters in *os* have *e* in the nominative plural; as, *melos*, *mele*: so *Tempe*.

#### GENITIVE PLURAL.

**RULE.**—The genitive plural commonly ends in *um*, sometimes in *ium*.

1. Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or both *e* and *i*, have *ium* in the genitive plural; as, *sedile*, (*i*), *sedilium*; *turris*, (*e* or *i*), *turrium*.

2. Nouns in *es* and *is* not increasing have *ium*; as, *rupes*, (*is*), *rupium*. But *ambiges*, *canis*, *juvenis*, *mugilis*, *proles*, *strues*, and *vates*, have *um*; *apis*, *strigilis*, and *pollicris*, commonly have *um*; and *cades*, *clades*, *mensis*, and *ses*, commonly have *ium*.

3. Monosyllables ending in two consonants have *ium*; as, *urbs*, *urbi*-*um*; *arcx*, *arcium*.

4. The following monosyllables also have *ium*: as, *mas*, *glis*, *lis*, *ps*.

(*oasis*), *vix*, *fœur* (*obs.*), *nix*, *nox*, *strix*, commonly *frœus* and *mus*, and sometimes *lar*.

5. (a) Nouns of two or more syllables in *as* or *es* have *tum*, and more rarely *um*; and names of nations in *as*, with *penates* and *optimates*, commonly have *ium*.

(b) Other nouns in *as* generally have *um*, but sometimes *tum*; as, *atlas*, *atatum* or *atallum*.

6. The following have *tum*: *caro*, *imber*, *linter*, *uter*, *venter*, *Quiris*, *Sannis*, usually *Inster*, and sometimes *patus*. *Bos* has *boum*.

7. A few Greek nouns, chiefly the titles of books, have sometimes *on*.

8. Names of feasts in *alia* have *tum*, but sometimes *ōrum*, after the second declension. So sometimes *ancile* and *vectigal*.

#### DATIVE AND ABLATIVE PLURAL.

1. *Bos* has *bubus* and less frequently *bebūs*, by contraction for *bovibus*. *Mus* has either *subbus* or *subus*.

2. Greek nouns in *ma* have it more frequently than *bus*.

3. The poets sometimes form the dative plural in *st*, and before a vowel in *sin*; as, *herōis*, *herōisin*.

#### ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

1. Masculines and feminines, having *tum* in the genitive plural, had sufficiently *is* or *eis* in the accusative plural; as, *civis*, *monitis*. So likewise the Greek accusatives *Trallis* and *Sardis*.

2. The accusative plural of Greek nouns often ends in *as* instead of *es*; as, *Arcadas*: so in barbarian names of nations; as, *Allobrogas*.

## LESSON J.

### IRREGULAR NOUNS.

1. Irregular nouns are either *variable*, *defective*, or *redundant*.

#### VARIABLE NOUNS.

2. A variable noun is one which is found of different genders or in different declensions.

3. Those which vary in { gender } are called { *heterogeneous*. } { *heteroclitic*. }

#### DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

4. Defective nouns are either *indeclinable*, *defective in case*, or *defective in number*.

5. Indeclinable nouns are called *aptotes*.

6. A noun found in one case only is called a *monop-*

*tote*,—in two only, a *diptote*,—in three only, a *triptote*,  
—in four only, a *tetraptope*,—in five only, a *pentaptope*.

7. A noun may want either the singular or the plural number.

8. Most *proper*, *abstract*, and *material* nouns want the plural.

**REMARK.**—Abstract nouns in Latin are sometimes used in the plural to denote a repetition of the same thing, or its existence in different objects.

9. The names of festivals, of festive games, of certain days in the Roman Calendar, and several names of places and books, want the singular.

#### REDUNDANT NOUNS.

10. A redundant noun is one which, in some or all of its parts, has two or more forms differing in gender, number, termination, or declension.

---

## LESSON K.

### DERIVATION OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

A *patronymic* noun is the name of a person, derived from that of his father or other ancestor, or the founder of his nation.

Masculine patronymics commonly end in *ides*, *ēdes*, *ādes*, and *iādes* ;—feminine, in *is*, *ēis*, *as*, and *īas*, rarely in *īne*.

A *patrial* noun is derived from the name of a country, and denotes an inhabitant of that country ; as, *Macēdo*, a Macedonian.

A *diminutive* denotes a small thing of the kind, or a small degree of the quality, denoted by the primitive. Diminutives generally end in *lus*, *la*, or *lum*.

A *verbal* noun or adjective is one which is derived from a verb ; as, *amor*, love, and *amator*, a lover, from *amo*, to love.

A *participial* adjective is one which is derived from a participle retaining its form ; as, *amans*, fond ; *doctus*, learned.

# THE LIFE OF JOSEPH.

---

## 1. Joseph's Childhood.

Jacōbus habuit duodēcim filios, inter quos erat Josēphus, quem pater diligēbat præ cetēris filiis, et huic dedit togam versicolorem.

Quam ob causam Josēphus erat invīsus suis fratribus,<sup>a</sup> præsertim postquam narrāvit eis duplex somnium, quo<sup>b</sup> futura ejus magnitudo portendebātur.

Odérant<sup>c</sup> ihūm tantopére, ut non possent<sup>d</sup> cum eo amīcē loqui.

## 2. His Dreams.

Hæc porro erant Joséphi somnia. "Ligabāmus," inquit, "simul manipūlos in agro: ecce manipūlus meus surgēbat, et stabat rectus; vestri autem manipūli circumstantes venerabantur meum.

"Postea vidi in somniis sólem, lunam, et undēcim stellas adorantes me."<sup>e</sup>

Cui<sup>f</sup> fratres respoñdērunt, "Quorsum spectant ista somnia? Num tu eris rex noster? Num subjiciēmur ditiēni<sup>g</sup> tuæ?"

Fratres igītūr invidēbant ei; at pater rem tacitus considerābat.

---

1. (a) Less. 109. (b) Less. 117, 1. (c) Less. 81, 4. (d) Less. 133.

2. (a) Less. 121, 9. (b) Less. 94, 5. (c) Less. 111. (d) Less. 110, 1.

*3. His Brethren resolve to kill him.*

Quādam die<sup>a</sup> quum fratres Josēphi pascērent<sup>b</sup> greges procul, ipse remanserat domi. Jacōbus misit eum ad fratres, ut sciret,<sup>c</sup> quomodo se habērent.<sup>d</sup>

Qui videntes Josēphum vénientem consilium cepérunt illius occidendi: “Ecce,” dicebant, “somniātor venit: occidāmus illum, et projiciāmus in puteum. Dicēmus patri, ‘Fera devorāvit Josēphum.’ Tunc apparēbit,<sup>e</sup> quid sua illa<sup>f</sup> prosint<sup>g</sup> somnia.”

*4. His Brother Reuben saves his life.*

Ruben, qui erat natu<sup>a</sup> maximus, deterrebat fratres a tanto scelere.

“Nolite,” inquiēbat, “interficēre<sup>b</sup> puērum: est enim frater noster: demittite eum potius in hanc foveam.”

Habebat in animo liberare Josēphum ex eōrum manib<sup>c</sup>, et illum extrahere e foveā, atque ad patrem reducere.

Re ipsā his verbis deducti sunt ad mitius consilium.

*5. He is sold by his Brethren.*

Ubi Josēphus pervenit ad fratres suos, detraxerunt ei<sup>a</sup> togam, quā<sup>b</sup> indutus erat, et detruserunt eum in foveam.

Deinde quum consedissent<sup>c</sup> ad sumendum<sup>d</sup> cibum, conspexerunt mercatōres, qui petebant AĒgyptum cum camēlis portantibus varia aromāta.

Venit illis in mentem Josēphum vendere illis mercatoribus.

Qui Josēphum emerunt viginti nummis<sup>e</sup> argenteis, eumque duxerunt in AĒgyptum.<sup>f</sup>

3. (a) Less. 118, 2. (b) Less. 132, 2. (c) Less. 133. (d) Less. 129, 1. (e) Less. 123, 4. (f) Less. 126, 2. (g) Less. 129, 3. (h) Less. 111.

4. (a) Less. 117, 5. (b) Less. 126, 4.

5. (a) Less. 111, N. 2. (b) Less. 117, 2. (c) Less. 132, 2. (d) Less. 123, 5. (e) Less. 118, 1. (f) Less. 97, 3.

**6. His Robe stained with Blood is sent to his Father**

Tunc fratres Josēphi tinxérunt togam ejus in sanguine hædi, quem occidérant, et misérunt eam ad patrem<sup>a</sup> cum his verbis : “ Invenimus hanc togam : vide, an toga filii tui sit.”<sup>b</sup>

Quam quum agnovisset,<sup>b</sup> pater exclamāvit : “ Toga filii mei est : fera pessima devorāvit Josēphum.” Deinde scidit vestem, et induit cilicium.

Omnes libéri ejus convenérunt, ut lenirent<sup>b</sup> dolorem patris ;<sup>c</sup> sed Jacōbus noluit accipere consolatiōnem ; dixitque, “ Ego descendam mōrens cum filio meo in sepulcrum.”

**7. He is sold to Potiphar.**

Putiphār AĒgyptius emit Josēphum a mercatoribus.

Deus autem favit Putiphāri<sup>a</sup> causa<sup>b</sup> Josēphi : omnia ei<sup>c</sup> prospérè succedébant.

Quamobrem Josēphus benignè habitus est ab hero, qui præfécit eum domui<sup>c</sup> suæ.

Josēphus ergo administrābat rem familiārem Putiphāris : omnia fiēbant ad nutum ejus, nec Putiphar ullius negotii curam gerébat.

**8. He is falsely accused and imprisoned.**

Josēphus erat insigni et pulchrā facie :<sup>a</sup> uxor Putiphāris eum pelliciebat ad flagitium : Josēphus autem impróbæ muliéri<sup>b</sup> assentiri nolébat.

Quādam die mulier oram pallii ejus apprehendit ; at Josēphus reliquit pallium in manib⁹ ejus, et fugit.

Mulier irāta inclamāvit servas, et Josēphum accusāvit apud virum, qui nimiūm credūlus Josēphum in carcērem conjēcit.

6. (a) Less. 91, 6. (b) Why in the subjunctive?

7. (a) Less. 110, 1. (b) Less. 117, 1. (c) Less. 111.

8. (a) Less. 101. (b) Less. 111.

*9. The Dreams of two of Pharaoh's Officers.*

Erant in eodem carcere duo ministri regis Pharaonis ; alter praerat pincernis,<sup>a</sup> alter pistoribus.

Utrique obvenit divinitus somnium eadem nocte.

Ad quos quum venisset<sup>b</sup> Iosephus mane, et animadvertisset<sup>c</sup> eos tristiores solito, interrogavit, quanam esset<sup>d</sup> mœstitia causa.

Qui responderunt : " Obvenit nobis somnium, nec quisquam est, qui illud nobis interpretetur."<sup>e</sup>

" Nonne," inquit Iosephus, " Dei solius est prænoscere res futuras ? Narrate mihi somnia vestra."

*10. Joseph interprets the Chief Butler's Dream.*

Tum prior Iosepho somnium suum sic exposuit.

" Vidi in quiete vitem, in qua erant tres palmites ; ea paulatim protulit gemmas ; deinde flores eruperunt, ac deinde uvæ maturescabant."

" Ego exprimebam uvas in scyphum Pharaonis, ei que porrigebam."

" Esto bono animo," inquit Iosephus, " post tres dies Pharao te restituet in gradum pristinum : te rogo, ut memineras<sup>f</sup> mei."

*11. He interprets the Chief Baker's Dream.*

Alter quodque narravit somnium suum Iosepho.

" Gestabam in capite tria canistra, in quibus erant cibi, quos pistores conficerent. Ecce autem aves circumvolitant, et cibos illos comedebant."

Cui Iosephus : " Hæc est interpretatio istius somnii. Tria canistra sunt tres dies, quibus elapsis, Pharao te feriet securi, et ad palum affiget, ubi aves carne tuâ passentur."

9. (a) Less. 111. (b) Why in the subjunctive ? (d) "To interpret," or "who can interpret," Less. 134, 4. (e) Less. 102, 1, and R. 1. (f) Less. 102, R. 2.

10. (a) Perf. subj. Less. 81, 4.

11. (a) Less. 120. (b) Less. 117, 2.

**12. *The Accomplishment of the two Dreams.***

Die tertio, qui dies natális Pharaónis erat, splendidum convivium parandum<sup>a</sup> fuit.

Quare rex meminit ministrorum<sup>b</sup> suorum, qui in carcere rem conjecti erant.

Præfecto pincernarum ejus munus restituit; alterum verò securi percussum suspendit ad palum. Ita res somnium comprobavit.

Tamen præfектus pincernarum oblitus est Josephi,<sup>c</sup> nec illius in se meriti<sup>d</sup> recordatus est.

**13. *Pharaoh's Dreams.***

Post biennium rex ipse somnium habuit.  
Nilo<sup>e</sup> flumini<sup>f</sup> adstare sibi videbatur; et ecce de flumine emergebant septem vaccæ pingues, quæ in palude pascebantur. Deinde ex eodem flumine exierunt aliæ vaccæ macilenteæ, quæ priores devorarunt.

Pharaon experrectus rursum dormivit, et alterum habuit somnium.

Septem spicæ plenaæ in uno culmo, enascebantur, aliæque totidem exiles succrescabant, et spicas plenas consumebant.

**14. *The Chief Butler speaks of Joseph to the King.***

Ubi illuxit, Pharaon perturbatus convocavit omnes Egyp̄tī conjectores, et illis somnium narravit; at nemo illud interpretari poterat.

Tunc præfектus pincernarum regi dixit: "Confiteor peccatum meum. Quum ego et præfектus pistorum essemus in carcere, uterque<sup>g</sup> eadem nocte somniavimus.

Erat ibi puer Hebræus, qui nobis sapienter interpretatus est somnia; rei enim interpretationem comprobavit."

12. (a) Less. 121, 6. (b) Less. 105, 1.

13. (a) Why in the dative? (b) Less. 89, 1. (c) Contracted from devorarunt.

14. (a) i. e. nos uterque, we each.

*15. Joseph interprets the King's Dreams.*

Rex arcessivit Josēphum, eīque utrumque somnium narrāvit. Tum Josēphus Pharaōni: "Duplex," inquit, "sommum unam atque eandem rem significat.

"Septem vaccæ pingues et septem spicæ plenæ sunt septem anni ubertatis mox venturi: septem verò vaccæ macilentaæ et septem spicæ exiles sunt totidem anni famis, quæ ubertatem secuturæ est."

Itaque rex,<sup>b</sup> præfice toti Ægypto virum sapientem et industrium, qui in horreis publicis partem frugum recondat,<sup>c</sup> et diligenter in subsidium famis secuturæ servet.

*16. Joseph is made Governor of Egypt.*

Consilium regi<sup>a</sup> placuit, quare dixit Josēphus: "Num quisquam est in Ægypto te<sup>b</sup> sapientior? Nemo certè illo munere<sup>c</sup> melius fungetur.

"En tibi regni mei curam trado."

Tum è manu sua annulum detraxit, et Josēphi digito<sup>d</sup> inseruit; veste<sup>e</sup> byssinæ induit illum, collo<sup>f</sup> torquem aureum circumdedit, eumque in curru suo secundum collocavit.

Josēphus erat triginta annos natus, quum summam potestatē a rege accépit.<sup>g</sup>

*17. He lays up Corn—the Famine begins.*

Josēphus perlustravit omnes Ægypti regiones, et per septem annos ubertatis maximam frumenti copiam congesit.

Secuta est inopia septem annorum, et in orbe universo fames ingravescēbat.

Tunc Ægyptii, quos premēbat egestas, adiérunt regem postulantes cibum.

15. (a) Less. 92. (b) Less. 115. (c) Less. 138.

16. (a) Less. 110, I. (b) Less. 119, I. (c) Less. 116, 4. (d) Why in the dative? (e) Less. 117, 2. (f) Less. 111, N. 2. (g) Less. 182, 2.

17 (a) Less. 97, 4.

Quos Pharaon ad Josēphum remittēbat.  
Hic autem aperuit horrea, et Agyptiis frumenta vendidit.

*18. Jacob sends his Sons into Egypt to buy Corn.*

Ex aliis quodque regionibus conveniebatur in Agyptum ad emendam annōnam.

Eādem necessitate compulsus Jacōbus illuc filios suos misit.

Itaque profecti sunt fratres Josēphi; sed pater domi<sup>c</sup> retinuit minimum natu, qui Benjaminus<sup>d</sup> vocabātur.

Timēbat enim, ne quid mali in itinēre ei accidēret.

Benjaminus ex eādem matre natus erat, quā' Jōsēphus,<sup>e</sup> ideōque ei longē carior erat, quām cetēri fratres.<sup>f</sup>

*19. Joseph treats them as Spies.*

Decem fratres ubi in conspectum Josēphi venērunt, eum prouī venerāti sunt.

Agnōvit eos Josēphus, nec ipse ab eis est cognitus.

Noluit indicare<sup>g</sup> statim, quis esset,<sup>h</sup> sed eos interrogāvit tanquam alienos: "Unde venistis et quo consilio?"

Qui respondērunt: "Profecti sumus e regiōne Chanaan, ut frumentum emāmus."<sup>i</sup>

"Non est ita," inquit Josephus, "sed animo hostili huc venistis: nostras urbes et loca Agypti parum munīta explorare vultis.

At illi: "Minime," inquiunt: "nihil mali meditāmur; duodēcim fratres sumus; minimus<sup>j</sup> a patre domi retentus est; alius verò non supērest."

*20. He detains Simeon.*

Illud Josēphum angēbat, quēd Benjaminus cum ceteris non adērat.

18. (a) Less. 81, 10 & 11. (b) Less. 123, 5. (c) Less. 108, 1 & R. (d) Less. 92, II, 1, 5. (e) Why in the subjunctive? (f) Supply ex. (g) What is understood?

19. (a) What is the object of this verb? Less. 129, 3. (b) Why in the subjunctive? (c) Less. 117, 1. (d) Supply natu

Quare dixit eis : " Experiār, an verūm dixeritis.<sup>a</sup> Ma  
neat<sup>b</sup> unus ex vobis obse<sup>c</sup>s apud me, dum huc frater ves-  
ter minīmūs adducātūr & cetēri abite cum frumento."<sup>d</sup>

Tunc inter se dicēre cōpērunt : " Meritō hæc patimūr :  
crudēles suimūs in fratrem nostrum ; nunc pœnam hujus  
scelēris luimūs."

Pūtābant hæc verba<sup>e</sup> non intelligi a Josēpho, quia per  
interprétem cum eis loquebātur.

Ipse autem avertit se parumper, et flevit<sup>f</sup>.

### 21. His Brethren return home.

Josēphus jussit fratrum saccos<sup>g</sup> tritico implēri, et pecu-  
niām, quam attulérant, in ore saccōrum repōni : addidit  
insūper cibaria in viam.

Deinde eos omnes dimisit prāter Simeōnem, quem re-  
tinuit obsidēm.<sup>h</sup>

Itaque profecti sunt frātres Josēphi, et quum ad patrem  
venissent,<sup>i</sup> omnia, quæ sibi accidērant, ei narravērunt.

Quum saccos aperiuissent,<sup>j</sup> ut frumenta effundērent,<sup>k</sup>  
mirantes reperērunt pecuniam.

### 22. Jacob refuses to send Benjamin.

Jacōbus ut audivit Benjamīnum<sup>l</sup> arcessi a præfecto<sup>m</sup>  
Ægypti, cum gemitu questus est.

" Orbum me libēris<sup>n</sup> fecistis : Josēphus mortuus est ;  
Simeon retentus est in Ægypto ; Benjamīnum abducēre  
vultis.

" Hæc omaia mala in me recidunt : non dimittam Ben-  
jamīnum ; nam si quid adversi ei accidērit in viā, non  
potero ei superstes vivēre, sed dolore oppressus moriar."

### 23. His Sons urge him to consent.

Postquam consumptū sunt cibi, quoꝝ attulérant, Jacōbus  
filiis suis dixit, " Proficisci mī itērum in Ægyptum, ut  
cibos emātis."

20. (a) Why the subjunctive ? (b) Less. 92. (c) Less. 132, 1. (d) Less. 96, 3

21. (e) Less. 96, 3. (f) As a hostage. Less. 89, 1. (g) Why the subjunctive ?

22. (a) Less. 96, N. 1. (b) Less. 117, N. 1. (c) Less. 104, R.

23. (a) In what mood ?

Qui respondérunt: "Non possūmus sine Benjamino adire præfectum<sup>b</sup> Ægypti; ipse enim jussit illum<sup>b</sup> ad se adduci."

"Cur," inquit pater, "mentiōnem fecistiis de fratre vestro minimo?"

"Ipse," inquiunt, "nos interrogāvit, 'an pater vivēret,<sup>d</sup> an alium fratrem haberēmus.'<sup>d</sup> Respondimus ad ea, quæ sciscitabātur; non potuimus præscire eum<sup>b</sup> dictūrum esse,<sup>e</sup> 'Adducite huc fratrem vestrum.'

#### *24. He yields to their entreaties.*

Tunc Judas, unus e filiis Jacobi, dixit patri: "Committe mihi puērum: ego illum in fidem meam recipio, ego servābo, ego illum ad te reducam; quod nisi fecero,<sup>f</sup> hujus rei culpa in me residēbit; si voluisses<sup>b</sup> eum statim dimittere, jam secundō huc rediissēmus."<sup>b</sup>

Tandem victus pater annuit: "Quoniam necesse est," inquit, "proficiscātur Benjāminus vobiscum; deferte viro munēra et duplum pretium, ne forte errōre factum sit, ut vobis prior pecunia redderētur."

#### *25. Joseph's Brethren return to Egypt.*

Nuntiātum est<sup>c</sup> Josēpho eosdem viros advenisse, et cum eis<sup>b</sup> parvulum fratrem.<sup>f</sup>

Josēphus eos in domum introduci<sup>d</sup> jussit, et lautum pārāri convivium.<sup>f</sup>

Illi metuēbant, ne arguerentur<sup>f</sup> de pecuniā, quam in saccis reperērant: quare apud dispensatōrem Josēphi se purgavērunt.

"Jam semel," inquiunt,<sup>f</sup> "huc venīmus: reversi domum<sup>c</sup> pretium frumenti in saccis invenīmus: nescīmus, quonam casu id factum fuērit,<sup>c</sup> sed eandem pecuniam reportavīmus."

23. (b) Why in the accusative? (c) Less. 95, N. 3. (d) Why in the subjunctive?

24. (a) Less. 47, 11. (b) Less. 131, R. a. (c) Less. 133.

25. (a) What is the subject of this verb? Less. 95, 4. (b) Less. 117, N. 2 (c) Less. 88, 2. (d) Less. 95, 1. (e) Why in the subjunctive? (f) Less. 127, R. (g) Less. 103, 2 & R.

Quibus dispensatōr ait : " Bono animo estōte." Deinde ad illos adduxit Simeonem, qui retentus fuērat.

*26. They are admitted to his Presence.*

Deinde Josēphus ingressus est in conclāve, ubi fratres sui eum exspectabānt, qui eum venerāti sunt offerentes munēra.

Josēphus eos clementer salutāvit, interrogavitque : " Salvusne est senex ille, quem vos patrem<sup>a</sup> habētis ? Vivitne adhuc ?"

Qui respondérunt : " Salvus est pater noster, adhuc vivit."

Josēphus autem, conjectis in Benjamīnum oculis<sup>c</sup> dixit : " An iste est frater vester minimus, qui domi<sup>d</sup> remansērat apud patrem ?"<sup>e</sup> Et rursus : " Deus sit tibi propitius, fili<sup>f</sup> mi ;"<sup>g</sup> et abiit festinans, quia commōtus erat animo, et lacrymæ erumpēbant.

*27. Joseph's Cup is placed in Benjamin's Sack.*

Josēphus, lotā<sup>a</sup> facie, regressus continuit se, et jussit cibos appōni. Tum unicuique fratrum<sup>b</sup> suōrum escam distribuit, sed pars Benjamīni erat multo major quam ceterōrum.<sup>c</sup>

Peracto convivio, Josēphus dispensatōr dat negotium, ut saccos eōrum frumento impleat, pecuniam<sup>b</sup> simul repōnat,<sup>d</sup> et insūper scyphum suum argenteum in sacco Benjamini recondat.<sup>e</sup>

Ille fecit diligenter, quod<sup>f</sup> jussus fuērat.

*28. Joseph sends in pursuit of them.*

Fratres Josēphi sese in viam dedérant, necdum procul ab urbe abērant.

26. (a) Less. 89, 1. (b) Is this question direct, or indirect? Why? (c) Less. 120. (d) Why in the genitive? (e) What does this subjunctive express? Less. 126, 2. (f) Less. 9, Exc. 2. (g) Less. 29, N. 2.

27. (a) Less. 120, N. 3. (b) Less. 103, 1. (c) Less. 119, 3. (d) Less. 88, 2. (e) *Ei* is understood before *pecuniam*. Less. 88, R. 3. (f) *Id* is understood as the antecedent of *quod*.

Tunc Joséphus dispensatōrem domūs suā vocāvit, eiq̄e dixit: “ Persequēre viros, et quum eos assecūtus fuēris,” illis dicit: ‘ Quare injuriam pro beneficio rependistis ?

“ Subripuistis scyphum argenteum, quo<sup>b</sup> dominus meus utitur: imprōbē fecistis.”

Dispensātor mandāta Joséphi perfécit; ad eos confes-tim advolāvit; furtum exprobrāvit; rei indignitatē ex-posuit.

### 29. *The Cup is found in Benjamin's Sack.*

Fratres Joséphi dispensatōri respondērunt: “ Istud scelēris<sup>a</sup> longē a nobis aliēnum est: nos, ut tute scis, retulimus bonā fide<sup>b</sup> pecuniam in saccis repartam; tantum abest, ut scyphum domīni tui furati simus: apud quem furtum deprehensum fuērit, is<sup>c</sup> morte mulctētur.”

Continuò saccos depōnunt et aperiunt, quos ille scruta-tus, invēnit scyphum in sacco Benjamini.

### 30. *They return to the City.*

Tunc fratres Joséphi mērōre oppressi in urbem réver-tuntur.

Adducti ad Joséphum ad pedes illius sese abjecérunt. Quibus ille; “ Quomodo,” inquit, “ potuistis hoc scelus admittēre ?”

Judas respondit: Fateor: res est manifesta; nullam possūmus excusatiōnem afferre, nec audēmus veniam pe-tēre aut sperāre: nos omnes erimus servi tui.”

“ Nequāquam,” ait<sup>d</sup> Joséphus: “ sed ille, apud quem inventus est scyphus, erit mihi servus: vos autem abite libéri ad patrem vestrum.”

28. (a) Lœs. 132, 2. (b) Lœs. 116, 4.

29. (a) Lœs. 103, 2. (b) Lœs. 117, 1. (c) Is, though placed after its relative, should be translated before it, “ Let him, with whom,” &c. (d) What does this subjunctive express?

30. (a) Lœs. 127, 2.

*31. Judah intercedes for Benjamin.*

Tunc Judas accēdens propiū ad Josēphum : “ Te oro,” inquit, “ domine mi, ut bona cum veniā me audias.

“ Pater unicē diligēt puerū ; primō eum dimittēre nolēbat ; id ab eo impetrāre non potui, nisi postquam spōndi eum tutum ab omni periculo fore : si ad patrem sine puero redierimus, ille mōrōrē confectus moriētur.

“ Te oro atque obsēro ut puerū abire sinas, meque, pro eo in servitātem addicas : ego pœnam, quā dignus est, exolvam.”

*32. Joseph makes himself known to his Brethren.*

Interea Josēphus se continēre vix potērat : quare *Ægyptios adstantes* recedēre jussit.

Tum flens dixit magnā voce : “ Ego sum Josēphus ; vivitne adhuc pater meus ?”

Fratres ejus, nimio terrōre perturbāti, respondēre non potērant.

Quibus ille amīcē : “ Accedite,” inquit, “ ad me, ego sum Josēphus, frater vester, quem vendidistis mercatorib⁹ euntib⁹ in *Ægyptum* : nolite timēre ; Dei providentiā id factum est, ut ego salutē vestrā consulērem.”

*33. Joseph invites his Father to come into Egypt.*

Josēphus hæc locutus<sup>a</sup> fratrem suum Benjamīnum complexus est, eumque lacrȳmis<sup>b</sup> conspersit.

Deinde cetēros quōque fratres collacrȳmans osculātus est. Tum demum illi cum eo fidenter locuti sunt.

Quibus Josēphus : “ Ite,” inquit, “ properāte ad patrem meum, eiique nunciāte filium suum vivēre, et apud Pharaōnem plurimū posse ; persuadēte illi, ut in *Ægyptum* cum omni familiā commigret.

31. (a) Less. 116, 2.

32. (a) Less. 122, 1 & 3. (b) Less. 122, 1, 2, 3 & 4.

33. (a) Less. 121, 7. (b) Less. 117, 2. (c) Less. 110, 1.

**34. Pharaoh sends Presents and Chariots to Jacob.**

Fama de adventu fratrum Joséphi ad aures regis pervenit; qui dedit eis munéra perferenda ad patrem cum his mandatis:

“Adducite huc patrem vestrum et omnem ejus familiam, nec multum curate suppellētitem vestram, quia omnia, quae opus erunt vobis,<sup>a</sup> præbiturus sum, et omnes opes Ægypti vestræ erunt.”

Misit quoque currus ad vehendum<sup>b</sup> senem et parvulos et mulieres.

**35. Jacob is informed that Joseph is still alive.**

Fratres Joséphi festinantes reversi sunt ad patrem suum, eique nuntiaverunt Joséphum vivere, et principem esse totius Ægypti.

Ad quem nuntium Jacobus, quasi e gravi somno excitatus, obstupuit, nec primò filii rem narrantibus fidem adhibebat: sed, postquam vidi plaustra et dona sibi a Josépho missa, recépit animum, et, “Mihi satis est,” inquit, “si vivit adhuc Joséphus meus: ibo et vidébo eum, antequam moriar.”

**36. Jacob goes into Egypt with all his Family.**

Jacobus, profectus cum filiis et nepotibus, pervenit in Ægyptum, et præmisit Judam ad Joséphum, ut eum faceret certiorem de adventu suo.

Confestim Joséphus processit obviām patri,<sup>a</sup> quem ut vidit, in collum ejus se conjecit, et flens fientem complexus est.

Tum Jacobus: “Satis diu vixi,” inquit, “nunc æquo animo moriar, quoniam conspectu tuo frui mihi licuit, et te mihi superstitem relinquo.”

34. (a) Less. 109. (b) Less. 123, 5.

35. (a) Less. 132, 1.

36. (a) Less. 110, 4. (b) Less. 116, 4.

*37. His Arrival is made known to the King.*

Joséphus adiit Pharaōnem, ei⁹que nuntiavit patrem⁹ suum advenisse:<sup>b</sup> constituit etiam quinque e fratribus suis coram rege.

Qui eos interrogavit, quidnam opēris<sup>c</sup> habērent: illi respondērunt se⁹ esse pastōres.

Tum rex dixit Josépho: “Ægyptus in potestāte tuā est, cura, ut pater et fratres tui in optimo loco habitent; et si qui sint inter eos gnavi et industrii, trade eis curam pecōrum meōrum.”

*38. Joseph introduces his Father to Pharaoh.*

Joséphus adduxit quōque patrem suum ad Pharaōnem, qui salutatus a Jacōbo percontātus est ab eo, quā esset astate?<sup>d</sup>

Jacōbus regi respondit: “Vixi centum et triginta annos,<sup>e</sup> nec adeptus sum senectūtem beatam avōrum meōrum:” tum, bene precatus regi, dicensit ab eo.

Joséphus autem patrem et fratres suos collocāvit in optimā parte Ægypti, eisque omnium rerum abundantiam suppeditāvit.

*39. Jacob requests to be buried with his Fathers.*

Jacōbus vixit septem et decem annos, postquam comigrārat<sup>f</sup> in Ægyptum.

Ubi sensit mortem<sup>g</sup> sibi<sup>h</sup> imminēre, arcessito<sup>i</sup> Josépho dixit: “Si me ames, jura te id factūrum esse, quod a te petam, scilicet ut ne me sepelias in Ægypto, sed corpus meum transfēras ex hac regiōne, et condas in sepulcro majōrum meōrum.”

Joséphus autem: “Faciam,” inquit, “quod jubes pater.”

“Jura ergo mihi,” ait Jacōbus, “te certō id factūrum esse.”

Joséphus juravit in verba patris.

37. (a) Less. 95. 3. (b) Less. 95, 1. (c) Less. 103, 1 & 2.

38. (a) Less. 101, R. 3. (b) Why in the accusative?

39. (a) Less. 49, R. 2. (b) Less. 95, i. (c) Less. 111. (d) Less. 120, N. 3

*40. Joseph pays his last Duties to his Father.*

Ut vidit Josaphus extinctum patrem, flens eum osculatus est, diuque luxit.

Deinde præcepit medicis,<sup>a</sup> ut condirent corpus, et ipse cum fratribus multisque Ægyptiis patrem deportavit in regionem Chanaan.

Ibi funus fecerunt cum magno planctu, et sepeliérunt<sup>b</sup> corpus in speluncâ, ubi jacabant Abrahamus et Isaäcus, reversique sunt in Ægyptum.

*41. Joseph consoles his Brothers.*

Post mortem patris timébant fratres Josaphi, ne ulciseretur injuriam, quam accepérat: misérunt igitur ad illum rogantes nomine patris, ut eam oblisceretur, sibi que condonaret.

Quibus Josaphus respondit: "Non est," quod timeatis; "vos quidem malo in me animo fecistis; sed Deus convertit illud in bonum: ego vos alam et familias vestras."

Consolatus est eos plurimis verbis, et leniter cum illis locutus est.

*42. The Death of Joseph.*

Josaphus vixit annos centum et decem; quumque esset morti proximus, convocavit fratres suos, et illos admonuit se brevi moriturum esse.

"Ego," inquit, "jam morior: Deus vos non deseret, sed erit vobis præsidio, et deducet vos aliquando ex Ægypto in regionem, quam patribus nostris promisi: oro vos, atque obtestor, ut illuc ossa mea deportetis."

Deinde placide obiit: corpus ejus conditum est, et in feretro positum.

40. (a) Lxx. 110, 1. (b) Lxx. 49, R. 2.

41. (a) The subject of *est* in such negative expressions is often wanting  
(b) Lxx. 134, 4.

42. (a) Lxx. 114.

# FABLES.

## 1. *The Gnat and the Bull.*

In cornu tauri culex sedens, " Si te," ait,<sup>a</sup> " mole meā gravo, protinus avolabo." At ille : " Te," inquit,<sup>b</sup> " prorsus non sensi."

## 2. *The Lion and the Goat.*

Leo quum<sup>c</sup> capram in altâ rupe stantem vidēret,<sup>d</sup> monuit, ut potiūs in viride pratūm descendēret.<sup>e</sup> Cui respondet capra : " Non ea sum,<sup>f</sup> quæ dulcia<sup>g</sup> tutis<sup>h</sup> præpōnam."<sup>i</sup>

## 3. *The Magpie and the Dove.*

Pica et columba pavōnem convenérant, ut eum salutārent.<sup>j</sup> Dum redeunt, maledīca pica ait : " Quàm<sup>k</sup> mihi displicet pavo ! quàm<sup>l</sup> insuāves edit sonos ! cur<sup>m</sup> non silet ? cur<sup>n</sup> non turpes pedes tegit ?" At innōcens columba sic<sup>o</sup> resert : " Vitia ejus non observāvi, verūm formositatēm corpōris et caudæ nitorem adēd mirāta sum, ut non satis laudare possim."

Boni bona<sup>p</sup> mali mala exquirunt ; illi, ut laudare, hi, ut carpēre possint.

## 4. *The Blackbird.*

Merūla ante fenestram in caveā suspensa noctu canta-

(a) Less. 127, R. (b) Translate *quām* before *leo*. (c) Less. 132, R. (d) Less. 135, 2. (e) *Non ea sum*, "I am not one." (f) Less. 91, 5. (g) Less. 91, 5, and Less. 111. (h) Less. 135, 1. (i) What does it modify or limit? Less. 88, 1. (j) *Bona bona*. Less. 91, 4 & 5.

bat. Advolat vespertilio, et rogat : "Cur non interdiu potius cantas, et noctu acquiescis ?" "Ego," inquit illa, "interdiu cantans capta sum; itaque malo prudentior facta sum, et interdiu quiesco." Tum vespertilio : "At tu," inquit, "serò caves; tacere debuisti prius, quam caperis."<sup>(k)</sup>

### 5. *The Husbandman and his Sons.*

Agricola vicinus morti, quum filius divitias relinquere non posset, voluit animos eorum ad diligentem agriculturam excitare. Igitur eos ad se vocat, et sic alloquitur : "Mei filii, quo in loco res meae sint,<sup>(l)</sup> videtis. Vobis autem, quidquid potui, in vita mea colligi, idque totum<sup>(m)</sup> in vinea nostra querere poteritis." Haec quum dixisset, paulo post moritur senex. At filii, quod credabant, patrem in vinea alicubi thesaurum abscondisse, arreptis ligibus, solum vineae universae effodiunt, ac thesaurum quidem repererunt nullum, sed terram fodiendo percutitam, uberrimos fructus e vitibus perceperunt.

### 6. *The Lion and the Fox.*

Leo senio confectus, quum vires non suppetarent ad victum parandum, callidum cepit consilium sustentandi vitam. In antro enim, quasi periculoso morbo corruptus, decubuit, et quum ad ipsum visendum reliqua animantes advenirent, prehensas<sup>(n)</sup> illas devoravit. Atque ita magna bestiarum multitudine a leone absumpta, accedit tandem etiam vulpecula ad antrum, et ante illud substitit hæsitans et circumspectans. Tum leo rogat : "Cur me adire dubitas ?" At illa respondit : "Quia vestigia me terrent, omnia te adversum spectantia, nulla retrorsum.

(k) Less. 132, 1, & Less. 135, 2. (l) Less. 129, 1. Sint depends on *videtis*. Less. 126, 1. (m) Why is *vobis* in the dative? (n) *Idque totum*, "and the whole of it." (o) Less. 117, 1, & Less. 123, 2. (p) *Prehensas illas aevoravu*, "he caught and levioured them." Less. 122, 8.

7. *The Fly.*

Quadrigæ aliquot in stadio currēbant,<sup>a</sup> quibus<sup>b</sup> musca insidiebat.<sup>c</sup> Maximo autem pulvēre<sup>c</sup> ab equis et curribus excitato, musca dixit: “Quantam vim pulvēris<sup>d</sup> excitavi!”

8. *The Hawk and the Countryman.*

Accipiter cùm columbam<sup>f</sup> præcipiti insequeretur<sup>e</sup> volatu,<sup>f</sup> villam<sup>g</sup> quandam ingressus a rustico<sup>i</sup> captus est, quem blandè, ut se dimittēret,<sup>j</sup> obsecrābat: “Non enim te læsi,” dicens.<sup>k</sup> Cui rusticus: “Nec hæc,” respondit, “te læserat.”

9. *The Reed and the Oak.*

Disceperabat de robore quercus et arundo. Quercus exprobrabat arundini mobilitatem, et quòd ea ad quamvis exiguum auram tremeret.<sup>l</sup> Arundo tacēbat. Paulo pòst procella furit, et quercum, quæ ei resistēret,<sup>m</sup> radicibus evellit; arundo autem, quæ cedēret<sup>n</sup> vento, locum servat.

10. *The dying Wolf and the Fox.*

Lupus moribundus vitam antè actam perpendébat. “Malus quidem fui,” inquit, “neque tamen pessimus. Multa malè feci, fateor, sed multum etiam boni perpetravi. Agnus aliquando balans, qui a grege aberravérat, tam propè ád me accedēbat, ut illum facile devorare possem, sed parcēbam illi. Eòdem tempore convicia ab ove quādam in me jactata æquissimo ferēbam anímo, licet a canibus nihil mihi<sup>o</sup> metuendum esset.” “Atque hæc omnia ego testari possum,” inquit vulpes, “probè enim rem memini. Nimirum tum temporis<sup>p</sup> accidit, cùm os illud devoratum fauce hæreret, ad quod<sup>q</sup> extrahendum gruis opem implorare cogebaris.”

(a) Less. 47, 7. (b) Less. 111. (c) Less. 120. (d) Less. 100. (e) Less. 132, 2  
(f) Less. 96, N. 2. (g) Less. 117, 1. (h) Less. 121, 9. (i) Less. 117, N. 1.  
(j) Less. 133, 1. (k) Less. 96, R. 2. (l) Less. 128, 1. (m) Less. 137, 1. (n) Less.  
112, 2. (o) Less. 131, N. (p) Less. 103, 1. (q) Less. 123, 5.

## ANECDOTES.

---

- ✓ 1. Thales rogatus, quid esset difficile, "Se ipsum, inquit, "nōsse." Idem rogatus, quid esset facile, "A - tērum," ait, "admonere."
2. Epictētus interrogātus quis esset dives, respondit, "Cui id satis est, quod habet."
3. Alexander interrogātus, ubi thesauros suos condēret; "Apud amicos," inquit.
- X 4. Thales quum quererētur, quid maximē communē esset hominibus, "Spes," respondit; "hanc enim etiam illi habent, qui aliud nihil habent."
5. Imperātor Tiberius dixisse fertur: "Bonī pastōris est tondēre pecus, non deglubēre."
6. Agis, rex Lacedæmoniōrum, audiens quosdam horrē hostium multitudinem, ait: "Non percontandum est, quot sint hostes, sed ubi sint. Idem interrogatus, quot milites haberet: "Quot sufficiunt," inquit, "ad fūgandos hostes."
7. Samiōrum legāti auxilium orantes longā oratiōne usi erant. Respondérunt Lacedæmonii: "Prima sumus obliti, postrēma non intelleximus, quia prima non meminimus."
8. Demōnax quum vidēret hominēm veste magnifica gloriantem, vestem manu prehendit, et dixit: "Atqui hanc ante te ovis gestabat, et tamen ovis erat."

9. Alexander olim comprehensum<sup>1</sup> piratam interroga-  
vit, quo jure maria infestaret. Ille, "Eodem,"<sup>2</sup> inquit,  
"quo tu" orbem terrarum. Sed quia id ego<sup>3</sup> parvo navi-  
gio facio, latro<sup>4</sup> vocor; tu, "quia magna classe et exercitu,  
imperator."<sup>5</sup>

10. Cornelia, Gracchorum mater, quum Campana ma-  
trona pulcherrima sua ornamenta ostendere, traxit eam  
sermone, quoad e scholâ redierunt liberi sui, et:  
"Hæc," inquit, "ornamenta mea."<sup>6</sup>

11. Persa cum Græcis collöquens jactabundus dixit:  
"Solem præ jaculorum nostrorum multitudine non vi-  
debitis." Respondit Lacedæmonius: "In umbrâ igitur  
pugnabimus."

12. Philippus, rex Macedoniæ, "omnia castella expug-  
nari posse" dicébat, "in quæ modò asellus onustus auro  
posset<sup>7</sup> ascendere."

13. Socrates interrogatus, quinam homines tranquillè  
vivèrent, "Qui,"<sup>8</sup> inquit, "nullius turpitudinis sibi con-  
scii sunt."

14. Bias navigabat aliquando cum impiis.<sup>9</sup> Quum verò,  
tempestate exortâ, navis quateretur fluctibus, illique in-  
vocarent deos, "Silête," inquit, ne illi sentiant vos hic  
navigare.

15. Versificator quidam legérat Theocrito versus suos.  
Tum interrogabat, quosnam maximè probaret. Hic  
"Quos" omisisti," respondit.

16. Aristippus percontanti,<sup>10</sup> quæ potissimum adolescen-  
tibus essent discenda, "Quæ viris,"<sup>11</sup> inquit, "usui futu-  
ra sint."

17. Titus Cæsar, recordatus quondam super cœnam,  
nihil se toto die cuiquam præstitisse, dixit: "Amici, diem  
perdidi."

18. Solon quum interrogaretur, cur nullum supplicium constituisset in eum qui parentem necasset, respondit se neminem id facturum putasse.

19. Zeno inepta loquenti adolescentulo, "Idcirco," inquit, "aures habēmus duas et os unum, ut plura audiamus, loquamur pauciōra."

20. Diogēnes animadvertisens quendam imperitè jaculantem, proximè scopum consedit. Quum ex eo querebatur, cur id faceret, " Ne forte," inquit, " ille me feriat."

(a) Many examples of the indirect question occur in these anecdotes. (b) *Se ipsum* is the subject of *nōsē*, and *se ipsum nōsē* is the subject of a sentence of which *est difficile* understood is the predicate: *nōsē* for *novisſe*. Less. 49, R. 2. (c) *Se nōsē*; Less. 91, 6. (d) What is understood? (e) Less. 101, 1 & R. 1. (f) *Per contandum est* is used impersonally, and the dative of the agent, *nōbis* or *hominib⁹*, is wanting; "we ought not to ask." Less. 112, R. a & c. (g) *Tibi* is understood. (h) "When asking for." Less. 122, 2. (i) Why in the ablative? (j) "The first part—the last part." Less. 91, 5. (k) Begin with *quām*. (l) "Who had been captured." Less. 122, 3. (m) Supply *infestas*. (n) *Ego, nos, tu*, and *vos*, are expressed when emphasis or distinction is required. Less. 51, R. 4. (o) Less. 92, b. (p) Less. 47, N. 2. (q) Less. 127, 2. (r) *Ia*, as the antecedent of *qui*, is often understood. (s) Less. 91, 4. (t) Less. 132, R. (u) "To one inquiring." Less. 91, 4. (v) Less. 112, 2. (w) "Ought to be learned." Less. 112, R. c (x) "Being men," or "when they are men;" *viris* is in apposition with *illis* understood, and *illis* and *usui* depend on *futura sint*. Less. 114. (y) For *ne curavisset*. (z) Translate the negative with the verb, "that he had not surprised: that *any one*."

1. 3/18. 21  
2. 3/24. 26 1/2  
3. 3/25. 26 1/2  
545, 3

# VOCABULARY.

## EXPLANATION OF ABBREVIATIONS.

|                       |                          |                        |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| a.....active.         | fr.....from.             | num.....numerical.     |
| adj.....adjective.    | freq.....frequentative.  | part.....participle.   |
| adv.....adverb.       | h.....hence.             | pass.....passive.      |
| comp.....comparative. | impers.....impersonal.   | plur.....plural.       |
| conj.....conjunction. | indecl.....indeclinable. | p. n.....proper name.  |
| def.....defective.    | int.....interjection.    | prep.....preposition.  |
| dep.....deponent.     | irr.....irregular.       | pron.....pronoun.      |
| dlin.....diminutive.  | m.....masculine.         | subst.....substantive. |
| f.....feminine.       | n.....neuter.            | sup.....superlative.   |

A, ab, or abs, prep. with abl., *from* : with the agent of a passive verb,  
by.  
Ab-dūco, ēre, xi, ctum, a., *to take away*.  
Ab-eo, ire, ii, itum, irr. n., *to go away, depart*.  
Abēram, &c., see Absum.  
Ab-erro, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to stray*.  
Ab-hinc, adv., *ago, since*.  
Abii, &c., see Abeo.  
Ab-jicio, ēre, jēci, jectum, a., (jacio), *to throw away, throw, cast*.  
Abrahāmus, i, m., *Abraham*.  
Ab-condo, ēre, didi, dítum, a., *to hide, conceal*.  
Ab-slineo, ēre, ui, a., (teneo), *to abstain, from*.  
Ab-sum, esse, fui, n. irr., *to be absent or distant; to be out of the way*: tantum abest ut, *so far (from the fact) is it, that*, &c. See Tantus.

Ab-sūmo, ēre, p̄si, ptum, a., *to destroy, slay*: h.  
Absumptus, a, um, part., *destroyed*.  
Ab-surdus, a, um, adj., *absurd, unbecoming*.  
Abundantia, w, f., *an abundance*: fr.  
Ab-un-do, ēre, āvi, ātum, n., *to abound*.

Ab-ūtor, i, abūsus sum, dep., *to abuse*.  
Ac, conj., *and*.  
Ac-cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, n., (ad-), *to come near, approach*.  
Ac-cido, ēre, cīdi, n., (ad-cado), *to happen*.  
Ac-cipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, a., (ad-capio), *to receive, accept*.  
Accipiter, tris, m., *a hawk*.  
Accurātē, adv., *accurately, exactly*.  
Accusātor, ōris, m., *an accuser*: &  
Accusātus, a, um, part., *accused*: fr.  
Ac-cūso, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (ad-causa), *to accuse*.  
Ac-quiesco, ēre, ēvi, n., (ad-), *to rest*.  
Actus, a, um, part. & adj., (ago), *done, finished*: vita antē acta, *past life*.  
Aculeus, i, m., *a sting*.  
Acumino, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to make pointed or sharp*: acuminātus, a, um, part. & adj., *pointed*.  
Ad, prep. with acc., *to, at, according to*.—In composition the final d assimilates with the following letter, when coming before c, j, g, l, n, p, r, s, and t; before q it becomes c, and is usually dropped before sc, sp, and gn.  
Ad-dico, ēre, xi, ctum, a., *to give up, devote, doom, condic-in*

- Ad-do, ēre, didi, ditum, a., *to add.*  
 Ad-dūco, ēre, xi, ctum, a., *to bring, lead.*  
 Ad eo, ire, li, ītum, irr. n., *to go to, approach.*  
 Ad-ēō, adv., *so.*  
 Adeptus, a, um, part., (*adipiscor.*)  
 Adfui, &c., see *Adsum.*  
 Ad-hibeo, ēre, ul, itum, a., (*habeo*), *to use, employ: fidem adhibere, to give credit to, believe.*  
 Ad-huc, adv., *hitherto, still.*  
 Ad-ipiscor, i, adeptus sum, dep., (*apiscor*), *to acquire, attain to, reach.*  
 Adjūto, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (*adjūvo*), *to aid, assist.*  
 Ad-ministro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to manage, direct.*  
 Ad-miror, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to admire.*  
 Ad-mitto, ēre, isi, issum, a., *to admit; to commit.*  
 Ad-moneo, ēre, ui, ītum, a., *to admonish, advise; to remind.*  
 Adolescens, tua, m. & f., *a youth: h.*  
 Adolescens, w, f., *youth: &*  
 Adolecentulus, l, m., dim., *a youth, stripling.*  
 Ad-ōro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to adore, reverence.*  
 Adstans, tis, part.: fr.  
 Ad-sto, āre, lli, n., *to stand near or by.*  
 Ad-sum, esse, fui, irr. n., *to be present; to be present at, take part in.*  
 Ad-venio, ire, ēni, entum, n., *to come: h.*  
 Advento, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to come, approach: &*  
 Adventus, ūa, m., *a coming, arrival.*  
 Adversum or adversa, prep. with acc., *towards, to.* It sometimes follows its case: fr.  
 Adversus, a, um, adj., (*advertisor*), *adverse: si quid adversi, if any misfortune.* Less. 103, 3.  
 Ad-vōlo, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to fly to, hasten to.*  
 Eger, gra, grum, adj., *sick.*  
 Egina, w, f., *Egina, a Grecian Island.*
- Egyptius, a, um, adj., *Egyptian: suba., an Egyptian: fr.*  
 Egyptus, i, f., *Egypt.*  
 Āneas, w, m., *Xneas, a Trojan leader.*  
 Equa, a, um, adj., *equal, calm: sequo animo, willingly, contentedly; so, sequissimo animo, very patiently, quite calmly.*  
 Āer, ia, m., *the air.*  
 Āetas, ātis, f., *summer.*  
 Ās, āris, n., *brass, copper; money.*  
 Ātimo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to estimate, value.*  
 Āetas, ātis, f., *age.*  
 Āternus, a, um, adj., *eternal.*  
 Āfōro, ferre, attuli, allatum, irr. a., (*ad-*), *to bring, bring to, allege, plead.*  
 Af-figo, ēre, xi, xum, a., (*ad-*), *fix or fasten to or upon.*  
 Africa, w, f., *Africa.*  
 Ager, gri, m., *a field, land.*  
 Agger, ēris, m., *a mound.*  
 Agis, is or idis, m. p. n., *Agis.*  
 Agito, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (*ago*), *to shake.*  
 Agmen, īnis, n., (*ago*), *an army.*  
 Agnoscō, ēre, īvi, ītum, a., (*ad-*), *to recognize, know.*  
 Agnus, i, m., *a lamb.*  
 Ago, ēre, ēgi, actum, a., *to drive; to do, perform.*  
 Agricōla, w, m., (*ager-colo*), *a husbandman, farmer.*  
 Agricultura, w, f. (*id.*), *tillage, husbandry.*  
 Agrigentum, i, n., *Agrigentum.*  
 Alo, ala, def. verb, Less. 81, 2, *to say*  
 Ala, w, f., *a wing.*  
 Albus, a, um, adj., *white.*  
 Alciabiādes, is, m., *Alciabiādes.*  
 Alexander, dīl, m., *Alexander: h.*  
 Alexa'ndria, w, f., *Alexandria, a city of Egypt.*  
 Alic-ūbi, adv., (*aliquo-*), *somewhere.*  
 Alienus, a, um, adj., (*alius*), *belonging to another, foreign: a nobis alienum, foreign from us, at variance with our character: subst., a stranger.*  
 Aliquando, adv., (*aliquis*), *at some time, once.*

- Ali-quantus, a, um, adj., (*alius*), *some, somewhat*: aliquantum *vise, a considerable way*.
- Ali-quis, -qua, -quod or -quid, adj. pron., (*alius*), *some, some one*.
- Aliquot, indecl. adj. plur., *some, several, a few*.
- Aliua, a, ud, adj., Less. 32, 3, *other, another*; nihil or nequid aliud, *nothing else*.
- Allobrogæ, um, m. plur., *the Allobroges, a people of Gaul*.
- Al-lōquor, lōqui, locutus sum, dep., (*ad-*), *to speak to, address*.
- Alo, ēre, ui, itum, a., *to nourish, keep, maintain*.
- Alpes, ium, f. plur., *the Alps*.
- Alter, ēra, ērum, adj., *one of two, the one, the other; another*.
- Altus, a, um, adj., *high, lofty*.
- Amabilis, e, adj., ior, issimus, (*amo*), *amiable, lovely*.
- Amans, tis part. & adj., ior, issimus, (*id*), *fond of*.
- Amātus, a, um, part., (*amo*).
- Amicè, adv., (*amicus*), *in a friendly manner*.
- Amicitia, a, f., *friendship*: fr.
- Amicus, a, um, adj., ior, issimus, (*amo*), *friendly : subst., amicus, i, m., a friend*.
- A-mitto, ēre, isi, issum, a., *to lose*.
- Amnis, is, m. or f., *a river*.
- Amo, āre, īvi, ītum, a., *to love*: si me amas, *if you love me, a form of entreaty, for, I pray you, I treat you*.
- Amenus, a, um, adj., *pleasant*.
- Amor, òris, m., (*amo*), *love*.
- Amplius, adv. comp. of ample, *more*.
- Amplus, a, um, adj., *great*.
- Amulius, li, m. p. n., *Amulius*.
- An, conj., *in indirect questions, whether*: before the second question, *or*. See Less. 130.
- Ancus, i, m., *Ancus, Ancus Marcius*, a Roman king.
- Ango, ēre, anxi, a., *to strangle; to trouble*.
- Angustiae, īrum, f. plur., *straits, narrow places, defiles*: fr.
- Angustus, a, um, adj., (*ango*), *narrow*.
- Anīma, a, f., *the life, the soul*.
- Animadverto, ēre, ti, sum, a., (*animus-adverto*), *to observe*.
- Animal, īlis, n., (*anima*), *an animal*.
- Animana, tie, m. & f., *an animal*.
- Animus, i, m., *the mind; a purpose, design; opinion; courage*, so also in the plural: Esse bono animo, *to be of good courage*. Less. 101, 3.
- Annōna, a, f., (*annus*), *provisions*.
- Annūlus, i, m., *a ring*.
- An-nuo, ēre, ui, n., (*ad-*), *to consent*.
- Annus, i, m., *a year*.
- Anser, ēris, m., *a goose*.
- Ante, prep. with acc., *before*. Also, antē, adv., *before, previously*.
- Antē-quam, adv., *before*.
- Antiochia, a, f., *Antioch*.
- Antiquus, a, um, adj., (*ante*), *ancient*.
- Antium, ii, n., *Antium, a city of Latium in Italy*.
- Antonius, ii, m. p. n., *Antonius*.
- Antrum, i, n., *a cave*.
- Apelles, is, m., *Apelles*, a Grecian painter.
- Apérío, ire, ui, tum, a., *to open*: h.
- Apertus, a, um, part. & adj., *open, plain, manifest*.
- Apis, is, f., *a bee*.
- Apollo, inia, m., *Apollo*.
- Ap-pāreo, ēre, ui, n., (*ad-*), *to appear*.
- Ap-pello, āre, īvi, ītum, a., (*ad-*), *to call, name*.
- Appius, ii, m., *Appius*.
- Ap-pōno, ēre, sui, situm, a., (*ad-*), *to set before, serve up*.
- Ap-prehendo, ēra, di, sum, a., (*ad-*), *to seize, lay hold of*.
- Ap-tus, a, um, adj., fl., *suitable*.
- Apud, prep. with acc., *with, among, before*.
- Aqua, a, f., *winter*.
- Ara, a, f., *an altar*.
- Aranea, a, f., *a spider*.
- Arbor or Arbos, òris, f., *a tree*.
- Arcas, īdis, m., *an Arcadian*.
- Arcessitus, a, um, part.: fr.
- Arcesso, ēre, īvi, ītum, a., *to send for, invite*.

- Archias, **ε**, **m.**, *Archias*, a Greek poet. Less. 8, 3 and 5.
- Archilochus, **ι**, **m. p. n.**, *Archilochus*.
- Arethusa, **ε**, **f.**, *Arethusa*, a fountain of Syracuse.
- Argenteus, **α**, **um**, **adj.**, *of silver*, *silver*: fr.
- Argentum, **ι**, **n.**, *silver*.
- Argo-naut, **α**, **m.**, *an Argonaut*, i. e., one who sailed in the ship Argo.
- Arguo, **έρε**, **ui**, *ūtum*, **a.**, *to accuse, blame*.
- Aristippus, **ι**, **m.**, *Aristippus*, a philosopher of Cyrene.
- Armatus, **α**, **um**, **part.** : fr.
- Armo, **άρε**, **āvi**, **ātum**, **a.**, *(arma)*, *to arm, equip*.
- Aristides, **ια**, **m.**, *Aristides*, an Athenian general.
- Arōma, **άτια**, **n.**, *a spice*.
- Arreptus, **α**, **um**, **part.** *seized*: fr.
- Ar-ripiο, **έρε**, **ui**, *reptum*, **a.**, *(ad-rapio)*, *to seize, lay hold of, take*.
- Ars, **τίς**, **f.**, *art*.
- Arundo, **ινία**, **f.**, *a reed*.
- Ascendo, **έρε**, **di**, **sum**, **n.** (*ad-scando*), *to ascend, mount up, climb*.
- Asellus, **ι**, **m.**, **dim.**, *(asinus)*, *a young or small ass, an ass*.
- Aspernor, **άρι**, **ātum**, **sum**, **dep.**, *(ab-aspernor)*, *to reject, spurn*.
- As-sentior, **ιρι**, **sus**, **sum**, **dep.**, *(ad-sentio)*, *to assent; to approve*.
- As-sequor, **ι**, **cūtus**, **sum**, **dep.**, *(adsequor)*, *to overtake, come up with*.
- As-simūlo, **άρε**, **āvi**, **ātum**, **a.**, *(ad-terfieri)*, *to make similar; to feign, counterfeit*.
- At, **conj.**, *but*.
- Ater, **τρα**, **trum**, **adj.**, *black, sable*.
- Athēnæ, **άρυν**, **f.** plur., *Athens*: h.
- Atheniensis, **ια**, **m.**, *an Athenian*.
- Athlēta, **ε**, **m.**, *a wrestler, prize-fighter*.
- Atlas, **αντια**, **m.**, *Atlas*, a mountain.
- Aque, **conj.**, *and*.
- Atqui, **conj.**, *but, yet*.
- Attentè, **adv.**, *(attendo)*, *attentively*.
- Atticus, **ι**, **m.**, *Atticus*, (*T. Pomponius*), a friend of Cicero.
- Attūli, **etc.**, see Affōro.
- Audeo, **έρε**, *ausus sum*, **n. pass.**, *to dare*. This verb in the perfect &c., resembles *fio*. Less. 79, N.
- Audio, **ιρ**, **īvi**, *ītum*, **a.**, *to hear* : h.
- Auditor, **όρια**, **m.**, *a hearer; a pupil* : and
- Auditus, **α**, **um**, **part.**
- Au-fugio, **έρε**, **īgī**, **n.**, *(ab-)*, *to fly from*.
- Augustus, **ι**, **m.**, *Augustus*, a Roman emperor.
- Aulus, **ι**, **m.**, *Aulus*, a praenomen.
- Aura, **ε**, **f.**, *a gentle breeze, a breath of air*.
- Aureus, **α**, **um**, **adj.**, *(aurum)*, *of gold, golden, gold*.
- Auria, **ια**, **f.**, *an ear*.
- Aurum, **ι**, **n.**, *gold*.
- Aut, **conj.**, *or*.
- Autem, **conj.**, *but, nevertheless*.
- Autumnus, **ι**, **m.**, *(auctus)*, *autumn*.
- Auxilium, **ι**, **n.**, *(augeo)*, *assistance*.
- Avaritia, **ε**, **f.**, *avarice* : fr.
- Avārūa, **α**, **um**, **adj.**, *avaricious, covetous*.
- A-verto, **έρε**, **si**, **sum**, **a.**, *to turn away*.
- Avidus, **α**, **um**, **adj.**, *(aveo)*, *desirous, greedy, avaricious*.
- Avia, **ια**, **f.**, *a bird*.
- A-vōlo, **άρε**, **āvi**, **ātum**, **n.**, *to fly away*.
- Avis, **ι**, **m.**, *a grandfather, an ancestor*.
- B.**
- Bacchus, **ι**, **m. p. n.**, *Bacchus*.
- Balena, **ε**, **f.**, *a whale*.
- Balo, **άρε**, **āvi**, **ātum**, **n.**, *to bleat*.
- Beātè, **adv.**, *happily* : fr.
- Beātus, **α**, **um**, **adj.**, *happy*.
- Belge, **άρυν**, **m. pl.**, *the Belgians*.
- Bellus, **ε**, **f.**, *a beast*.
- Bellum, **ι**, **n.**, *war* : *belli domique, in war and in peace*.
- Bene, **adv.**, *well*.
- Bene-fācio, **έρε**, **fēci**, *factum*, **n.**, *to benefit; to bless, do good to* : h.
- Beneficiūm, **ι**, **n.**, *a kindness, favor*.
- Benevolentia, **ε**, **f.**, *(benevolūs, friendly)*, *good will* : fr.
- Benignè, **adv.**, *kindly* : fr.
- Benignus, **α**, **um**, **adj.**, *kind*.

Benjāminus, i, m. p. n., *Benjamin*.  
 Bestia, æ, f., *a wild beast*: h.  
 Bestiōla, æ, f., *a small animal*.  
 Bias, antis, m., *Bias*, a Grecian philosopher.  
 Bibliothēca, æ, f., *a library*.  
 Bibo, ère, i, itum, a., *to drink*.  
 Biduum, i, n., (*bis-dies*, *two days*).  
 Biennium, i, n., (*bis-annus*, *two years*).  
 Blandē, adv., (*blandus*), *courteously, gently*.  
 Blatta, æ, f., *the moth, cockroach*.  
 Bollānus, i, m. p. n., *Bollanus*.  
 Bonum, i, n., *a good, a blessing; profit, advantage*: fr.  
 Bonus, a, um, adj., comp. melior, sup. optimus, *good; kind*.  
 Branchia, ærum, f. pl., *the gills of fish*.  
 Brevis, e, adj., ior, issimus, *short; brevi*, sc. tempore, *in a short time, soon*. Less. 118, 2.  
 Britanniā, æ, f., *Britain*.  
 Brutus, i, m. p. n., *Brutus*.  
 Byssinus, a, um, adj., *of fine linen*.

## C.

C., an abbreviation of *Caius*.  
 Cado, ère, cecidi, casum, n., *to fall*.  
 Cæcus, a, um, adj., *blind*.  
 Cædo, ère, cecidi, casum, a., *to cut; to beat, scourge*.  
 Cæsar, ãris, m. p. n., *Cæsar*.  
 Caius, i, m., *Caius*, a Roman præ-nomen.  
 Calco, ære, ãvi, ãtum, a., (*calx, the heel*), *to tread*.  
 Calco, ère, ui, n., *to be warm*.  
 Calidus, a, um, adj., ior, issimus, *shrewd, cunning, crafty*.  
 Camelus, i, m., *a camel*.  
 Campānus, a, um, adj., *Campanian, of Campania*.  
 Campus, i, m., *a plain*.  
 Cancer, cri, m., *a crab*.  
 Canis, is, m. & f., *a dog*.  
 Canistrum, i, n., *a basket*.  
 Cano, ère, cecini, cantum, a., *to sing, play*: h.  
 Canto, ère, ãvi, ãtum, a. freq., *to sing often; to sing*: and

Cantus, ûs, m., *a song; crooning*.  
 Capio, ère, cepi, captum, a., *to take, catch; to select*: consilium capere, *to form a design, adopt a plan*.  
 Capitālis, e, adj., (caput), capitalis, *capital crime*.  
 Cappādox, õcis, m., *a Cappadocian*.  
 Capra, æ, f., *a she goat*.  
 Caprea, æ, f., *a wild goat*.  
 Captus, a, um, part., (capio), *caught*.  
 Caput, itis, n., *a head; life*. capitatis or capitale damnare, *to condemn to death*.  
 Carcer, õris, m., *a prison*.  
 Careo, ère, ui, n., *to be without, be destitute of*.  
 Carmen, inis, n., (cano), *a verse, a song*.  
 Caro, nis, f., *meat*.  
 Carpo, ère, psi, ptum, a., *to pluck, to carp at, vilify*.  
 Carthaginensis, e, adj., *Carthaginian*. Carthaginensis, is, m., *a Carthaginian*: fr.  
 Carthāgo, inis, f., *Carthage*.  
 Carus, a, um, adj., ior, issimus, *dear, precious*.  
 Casa, æ, f., *a cottage, hut*.  
 Casenus, i, m., *cheese*.  
 Cassius, ii, m. p. n., *Cassius*.  
 Castellum, i, n., *a castle, fortress*.  
 Castor, õris, m., *a beaver*.  
 Castra, òrum, n. plur., *a camp*.  
 Casula, æ, f., dim., (casa), *a little cottage*.  
 Casus, ûs, m., (cado), *a fall; a chance*: casu, abl., *by chance*.  
 Catilina, æ, m., *Catiline*, a Roman conspirator.  
 Cato, ñnia, m., *Cato*, a Roman.  
 Catulus, i, m., dim., (canis), *a whelp*.  
 Cauda, æ, f., *a tail*.  
 Causa, æ, f., *a cause, reason*: causa, *on account of*.  
 Cavea, æ, f., *a cage*.  
 Caveo, ère, cavi, cautum, n. & a., *to beware, take care, be careful*.  
 Cedo, ère, cessi, cessum, n., *to yield*.  
 Celēr, èris, ère, adj., *swift*: h.  
 Celeritas, ãtis, f., *swiftness*

- Celo, ēre, īvi, ītum, a., *to conceal.*  
 Censor, ḫris, m., *a censor*, a Roman magistrate.  
 Centum, num. adj., plur. ind., *a hundred.*  
 Cepi, &c., see Capio.  
 Certē, adv., (*certus*), *certainly.*  
 Certior, see Certue.  
 Certō, adv., *certainly*: fr.  
 Certus, a, um, adj., ior, īseimūs, *certain*: facere aliquem certōrem, *to inform him.*  
 Cervus, i, m., *a stag.*  
 Cetēra, rum, adj., (not used in the nom. sing. masc.), *the other*: cētēri, ḫrum, m., *others, the rest.*  
 Cetus, i, m., *a whale.*  
 Ceu, adv., *as, as if.*  
 Chamæleon, ontis, m., *a chameleon.*  
 Chanaan, indecl., Canaan.  
 Charta, æ, f., *paper.*  
 Cibaria, ḫrum, n. plur., *food, provisions*: fr.  
 Cibus, i, m., *food, meat, viand.*  
 Cicēro, ḫnis, m., Cicero, the Roman orator.  
 Ciconia, æ, f., *a stork.*  
 Cilicium, i, n., *sackcloth.*  
 Cimbri, ḫrum, m. plur., *the Cimbrians*: a people of northern Germany.  
 Cingo, ēre, cinxi, cinctum, a., *to gird, surround.*  
 Cinis, ḫris, m. & f., *ashes.*  
 Circum, prep. with acc., *around.*  
 Circum-do, ēre, dēdī, dātum, a., *to put around.*  
 Circum-specto, ēre, a., *to look about.*  
 Circum-sto, ēre, stēti, stātum, a., *to stand around.*  
 Circum-volito, ēre, īvi, a., *to fly or hover round.*  
 Citō, adv., (*citus*), *quickly, soon, hastily.*  
 Civis, is, m. & f., *a citizen; a fellow-citizen, countryman*: h.  
 Civitas, ītis, f., *a state, city.*  
 Clam, prep. with acc. or abl., and adv., *unknown to.*  
 Clamor, ḫris, m., (*clamo*), *a shout, cry.*  
 Clarus, a, um, adj., *famous, celebrated.*
- Classis, is, f., *a fleet.*  
 Claudius, i, m. p. n., *Claudius.*  
 Claudio, ēre, si, sum, a., *to shut, close.*  
 Clemens, tis, adj., *mild, merciful*: h.  
 Clementer, adv., *kindly, mildly*: &  
 Clementia, æ, f., *kindness, clemency.*  
 Clodius, i, m. p. n., *Clodius.*  
 Cn., an abbreviation of the praenomen *Cneus.*  
 Codrus, i, m., *Codrus*, the last king of Attica.  
 Coelum, i, n., *the heavens, the sky.*  
 Coena, æ, f., *supper.*  
 Coepi, iasse, det. verb., Lesson 81. *I begin or I began.*  
 Cogito, ēre, īvi, ītum, a., (*cogitō*), *to think, consider.*  
 Cognitus, a, um, part., (*cognosco*).  
 Cognōmen, imēn, n., (*con-nomen*), *a surname.*  
 Co-gnosco, ēre, īvi, Itum, a., (*noscō*), *to know, recognize.*  
 Col-lacrymo, ēre, īvi, n., (*con-*), *to weep with, weep.*  
 Col-lico, ēre, īgl, ectum, a., (*con-legō*), *to collect, acquire.*  
 Collis, is, m., *a hill.*  
 Col-loco, ēre, īvi, ītum, a., (*con-*), *to place, set.*  
 Col-lōquor, i, cūtus sum, dep., (*con-*), *to converse.*  
 Collum, i, n., *the neck.*  
 Colo, ēre, ui, cultum, a., *to cultivate*: *to honor, worship*: h.  
 Colonia, æ, f., *a colony.*  
 Color, ḫris, m., *a color.*  
 Columba, æ, f., *a dove.*  
 Com, (*cum*). An inseparable preposition. Its final *m* is sometimes changed to *n*, *i*, or *r*, and is sometimes dropped; thus making *com*, *col*, *cor*, or *co*.  
 Com-ēdo, ēre, īdi, īsum, a., *to eat up, devour.*  
 Com-es, itis, m. & f., (-eo), *a companion, attendant.*  
 Com-itia, ḫrum, n. pl., (*id.*), *an assembly, an election.*  
 Com-memōro, ēre, īvi, ītum, a., *to call to mind; to mention.*

Com-migro, ēre, āvi, ātum, n., *to remove.*  
 Com-mitto, ēre, īsi, issum, a., *to commit, intrust.*  
 Commōdum, i, n., (*commōdus*), *profit, interest, advantage.*  
 Commōtus, a, um, part., *moved, affected:* fr.  
 Com-mōveo, ēre, āvi, ātum, a., *to move.*  
 Com-mūnis, e, adj., (*com-munus*), *common.*  
 Com-pāro, ēre, āvi, ātum, a., *to pair, match; to compare.*  
 Com-pello, ēre, ūli, ulsum, a., *to force, compel, drive.*  
 Com-plector, i, xus sum, dep., *to encircle, embrace: h.*  
 Com-pleo, ēre, āvi, ātum, a., *to fill, fill up.*  
 Complexus, a, um, part.  
 Com-prehendo, ēre, di, sum, a., *to seize, capture: h.*  
 Comprehensus, a, um, part., *seized, captured.*  
 Com-prōbo, ēre, āvi, ātum, a., *to confirm, make good, verify.*  
 Compulsus, a, um, part., (*compello.*)  
 Concilium, i, n., (*concedeo*), *an assembly, council.*  
 Concio, ūnis, f., (*id.*), *an assembly; a discourse, oration.*  
 Conclīve, is, n., *a chamber, hall.*  
 Con-curro, ēre, curri, cursum, n., *to run together.*  
 Con-dēmno, ēre, āvi, ātum, a., (*damno*), *to condemn.*  
 Condīo, ēre, īvi, itum, a., (*condo*), *to season, embalm: h.*  
 Condītus, a, um, part., *embalmed.*  
 Condītus, a, um, part., *founded:* fr.  
 Con-do, ēre, didi, ditum, a., *to put together; to found, build; to lay up, hoard; to bury.*  
 Con-dōno, ēre, āvi, ātum, a., *to pardon, forgive.*  
 Confectus, a, um, part., (*conficio*), *worn out, impaire, infieled, consumed.*  
 Con-fēro, ferre, contūlī, collātum, irr. a., *to collect:* conferre se, *to betake one's self.*

Confestim, adv., *immediately.*  
 Con-ficio, ēre, īci, ectum, a., (*ficio*), *to finish; to wear out; to make, prepare.*  
 Con-fido, ēre, fisus sum, n. pass. Less. 79, Note, *to trust in, rely upon.*  
 Con-firmo, ēre, āvi, ātum, a., *to strengthen, confirm; to affirm, assert.*  
 Con-fiteor, ēri, fessus sum, dep., (*fateor*), *to confess, acknowledge.*  
 Con-gēro, ēre, esai, estum, a., *to collect, heap up.*  
 Congruenter, adv., (*congruens fr. congruo*), *agreeably.*  
 Conjector, ūris, m., *a soothsayer, dīpiner:* and  
 Conjectua, a, um, part.: fr.  
 Con-jicio, ēre, jēci, jectum, a., (*jacio*), *to throw, cast.*  
 Conon, ūnis, m. p. n., *Conon, an Athenian general.*  
 Conor, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to attempt; to endeavor.*  
 Con-scius, a, um, adj., *conscious.* It sometimes takes both the genitive and the dative. Less. 104, & 109.  
 Con-sido, ēre, īdi, essum, n., *to sit down together; to seal one's self.*  
 Con-sidēro, ēre, āvi, ātum, a., *to consider, meditate upon.*  
 Consilium, i, n., *counsel, advice, plan, measure.*  
 Con-sisto, ēre, stīti, n., *to stop.*  
 Consolatio, ūnis, f., *consolation, comfort:* fr.  
 Con-sōlōr, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to console, comfort.*  
 Con-spectus, ūs, m., (*conspicio*), *sight, presence:* *conspicetus tuus, a sight of you.*  
 Con-spergo, ēre, ersi, ersum, a., (*spergo*), *to sprinkle, moisten.*  
 Con-spicio, ēre, exi, ectum, a., (*spicio*), *to see, behold, perceive.*  
 Constantia, ūz, f., (*constans fr. consto*), *constancy.*  
 Con-stituo, ēre, ui, litum, a., (*statuo*), *to place, set; to appoint, fix, prescribe.*

- Con-sto, ēre, stūti, n., *to consist of; to coll.*
- Con-struo, ēre, xi, ctum, a., *to heap up, build, construct.*
- Consul, ūlia, m., *a consul*: h.
- Consulātus, ūs, m., *a consulate, consulship.*
- Consúlo, ēre, ul, tum, n. & a., *to consult; to consult for, provide for, take care of.*
- Con-súmo, ēre, umpai, umptum, a., *to consume*: h.
- Consumptus, a, um, part.
- Contentus, a, um, adj., *content, satisfied*: and
- Continenſ, tis, adj., *temporale, moderate*: fr.
- Con-tineo, ēre, ui, tentum, a., (*te-neo*), *to hold; to restrain*: h.
- Continuā, adv., *immediately.*
- Contra, prep. with acc., *against.*
- Con-valesco, ēre, lui, n., *to recover.*
- Con-venio, ēre, ēni, entum, n. & a., *to meet, assemble; to visit*: pass. impers. *convenitur, they come, people flock*: h.
- Conventio, ūnis, f., *a meeting.*
- Con-verto, ēre, ti, sum, a., *to turn, convert.*
- Convicium, ii, n., *a reproach, an insult.*
- Con-vinco, ēre, ići, ictum, a., *to convict.* Less. 105, 3.
- Con-vivium, i, n., (*vivo*), *a feast, banquet.*
- Con-vōco, ēre, āvi, ātum, a., *to call together, assemble.*
- Copia, ūs, f., (*con-ops*), *abundance, means; forces.*
- Coquus, i, m., (*coquo*), *a cook.*
- Coram, prep. with abl., *before, in presence of.*
- Corinthus, i, f., *Corinth.*
- Cornelia, ūs, f. p. n., *Cornelia.*
- Cornu, ūs, n., pl. cornua, &c. Less. 25, *a horn.*
- Corōna, ūs, f., *a garland, crown.*
- Corpus, ūris, n., *the body, person.*
- Correptus, a, um, part., *seized*: fr.
- Cor-ripiō, ēre, ipui, eptum, a., (*rapio*), *to seize.*
- Cor-rumpo, ēre, ūpi, uptum, a., *to spoil, corrupt.*
- Corsica, ūs, f., *Corsica, an island in the Mediterranean sea.*
- Corvus, i, m., *a raven.*
- Cras, adv., *to-morrow.*
- Crassus, i, m., *Crassus, a Roman.*
- Crastinus, a, um, adj., (*cras*), *of to-morrow: crastinus dies, to-morrow.*
- Creātor, ūris, m., (*creo*), *a creator, maker.*
- Credo, ēre, īdi, itum, a., *to trust, believe*: h.
- Credūlis, a, um, adj., *credulous.*
- Creo, ēre, āvi, ātum, a., *to make, create, appoint*: h.
- Cresco, ēre, crevi, cretum, n., *to grow, increase.*
- Creta, ūs, f., *Crete, an island in the Mediterranean sea.*
- Cresus, i, m., *Cresus, a very rich king of Lydia.*
- Crudēlis, a, adj., (*crudus*), *cruel, hard-hearted.*
- Cul, see Qui and Quis.
- Cujusque, see Quiesque.
- Cujusvis, see Quivis.
- Culex, īcis, m., *a gnat.*
- Culmua, i, m., *a stalk, stem.*
- Culpa, ūs, f., *a fault, blame.*
- Cum or Quum, adv. & conj., *when; since.*
- Cum, prep. with abl., *with.*
- Cupidus, a, um, adj., *desirous, fond of*: fr.
- Cupio, ire, īvi, itum, a., *to desire, covet, wish.*
- Cur, adv., (*i. e. square*), *why.*
- Cura, ūs, f., *care.*
- Curio, ūnis, m. p. n., *Curio.*
- Curo, ēre, āvi, ātum, a., (*cura*), *to take care of; to regard, care for.*
- Curro, ēre, eucurri, cursum, n., *to run; to hasten*: h.
- Curru, ūs, m., *a chariot.*
- Custodia, ūs, f., *a watch, guard:* custodīe caueā, *as a guard*: and
- Custodio, ēre, īvi, itum, a., *to guard, watch*: fr.
- Custos, ūdis, m. & f., *a guard, protector.*
- Cygnus, i, m., *a swan.*

Cyrnus, i. f., *Cyrnus*; i. e. Corsica.  
Cyrus, i. m., *Cyrus*, a king of Persia.

## D.

Damno, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., *to condemn*. *Damnare capitūs, to condemn to death.* Less. 105, 4.  
Danubius, ii. m., *the Danube*.  
Darius, i. m., *Darius*, a king of Persia.  
Datūrus, a, um, part., (do), *about to give*.  
Datus, a, um, part., (do), *given*.  
De, prep. with abl., *of, concerning*.  
Dea, æ, f., (*deus*), *a goddess*. Less. 8, R. 1.  
De-bello, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., *to conquer, subdue*.  
De-beo, ēre, ui, itum, a., (*de-habeo*), *to owe; one ought*: *pass. to be due*.  
Decem, num. adj. ind., *ten*.  
De-nero, ēre, crēvi, crētum, a., *to decree*.  
De-corpō, ēre, pes, ptum, a., (*carpo*), *to pluck or strip off*.  
De-cipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, a., (*capiro*), *to deceive*.  
De-clāro, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., *to declare, proclaim*.  
De-cumbo, ēre, ui, n., *to lie down*.  
Decussis, is, m., (*decem-as*), *a piece of money equal to ten asses*: abl. sing. *decussi*.  
De-dēcus, òris, n., *a disgrace, a dishonorable action*.  
Dedi, &c., see Do.  
De-dūco, ēre, xi, ctum, a., *to bring, lead, induce*.  
De-fendo, ēre, di, sum, a., *to defend, protect*.  
De-fero, ferre, tūli, lātum, a. irr., *to carry, bring*.  
De-glūbo, ēre, pes, ptum, a., *to slay, skin*.  
De-inde, adv., *then*.  
De-iotārus, i. m., *Deiotarus*, a king of Galatia.  
De-lātus, a, um, part., (*defero*).  
De-lecto, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., *to de-*

*light, please.* Impers. *delectat, if delights*.  
De-leo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., *to blot out, to destroy*.  
Delphi, òrum, m., *Delphi*, a town of Phocis in Greece.  
Delphīnus, i. m., *a dolphin*.  
Demarātus, i, m. p. n., *Demaratus*.  
Dementia, æ, f., (*demens*), *folly, madness*.  
De-mitto, ēre, isi, issum, a., *to let down, cast down*.  
Demōnax, æcis, m., *Demonax*, a . Cretan philosopher.  
De-monstro, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., *to show, represent, declare*.  
Demosthēnes, ia, m., *Demosthēnes*, the great Athenian orator.  
Demum, adv., *at length, at last*.  
Denique, adv., *at last*.  
De-pello, ēre, uli, ulsum, a., *to drive away*.  
De-pōno, ēre, osui, ositum, a., *to lay down; to take off*.  
De-porto, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., *to carry away, convey*.  
De-prehendo, ēre, di, sum, a., *to seize; to detect, discover*: h.  
Deprehensus, a, um, part.  
De-scendo, ēre, di, sum, n., (*scando*), *to come or go down, descend*.  
De-sērō, ēre, ui, tum, a., *to forsake, desert*.  
Desidēro, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., *to desire, long for*.  
De-terreo, ēre, ui, itum, a., *to deter, prevent*.  
De-trahō, ēre, xi, ctum, a., *to take or strip off*.  
De-trūdo, ēre, si, sum, a., *to thrust down; to push off*.  
Deus, i, m., *God, a god*.  
De-vōro, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., *to devour, eat up*.  
Di, see Dis.  
Diadēma, ätia, n., *a diadem*.  
Dlāna, æ, f., *Diana*, a Roman goddess.  
Dico, ēre, xi, ctum, a., *to speak, say; to call or name; to celebrate*: h.  
Dictus, a, um, part.  
Dies, ëi, m. & f., Less. 27, Exc., a day.

- Dif-féro, ferre, distülli, dilatatum, a., *to spread abroad; to differ.*  
 Dif-ficilis, e, adj., ior, issimus, (fascilis), *difficult.*  
 Digitus, i, m., *a finger.*  
 Digne, adv., (*dignus*), *worthy.*  
 Dignitas, átia, l, *dignity, honor:* and  
 Dignor, áti, átus sum, dep., *to think worthy:* fr.  
 Dignus, a, um, adj., *worthy, deserving,* in a good or ill sense.  
 Dii, &c., see Deus.  
 Diligens, tis, adj., (*diligo*), *diligent, industrious:* h.  
 Diligenter, adv., *carefully, diligent-*ly: and  
 Diligentia, æ, f., *diligence.*  
 Di-ligo, ère, exi, ectum, a., (*lego*), *to love, esteem.*  
 Di-midium, i, n., (*medius*), *a half.*  
 Di-mitto, ère, ist, issim, a., *to dis-*miss, *let go.*  
 Diogénes, ia, m., *Diogenes*, a Greek philosopher.  
 Dionysius, i, m., *Dionysius*, a tyrant of Syracuse in Sicily.  
 Di-ruo, ère, ui, ütum, a., *to over-*throw, *destroy.*  
 Dis, an inseparable prep. signifying *asunder;* it sometimes becomes *di*, rarely *dir* or *dif.*  
 Dis-cédo, ère, essi, essum, n., *to depart.*  
 Dis-cpto, äre, ävi, ätum, n., *ca-*pio, *to dispute.*  
 Disco, ère, didici, a., *to learn.*  
 Discordo, äre, ävi, ätum, n., (*dis-*cors), *to differ.*  
 Discus, i, m., *a quoit.*  
 Dispensátor, öris, m., (*dispenso*), a steward.  
 Dis-pliceo, ère, ui, ütum, n., (*pla-*ceo), *to displease, displeasing.*  
 Dis-sento, ire, si, ütum, n., *to dif-*fer, *disagree.*  
 Dis-sert, ui, rtum, n., *to talk,* *argue.*  
 Dis-similis, e, adj., *unlike.*  
 Dis-tribuo, ère, ui, ütum, a., *to dis-*tribute.  
 Ditio, önis, f., *rule, power, author-*ity.
- Diu, adv., comp. diu.ülls, sup. diu-tissimè, *long.*  
 Diva, æ, f., *a goddess.*  
 Dives, itis, adj., *rich.*  
 Divinitus, adv., *providentially, by divine influence:* fr.  
 Divinus, a, um, adj., *divine.*  
 Divitiae, ärum, f. plur., (*dives*), *riches.*  
 Do, däre, dëdi, dätum, a., *to give:* dare se in viam, *to set out on a journey.*  
 Doceo, èg, docui, doctum, a., *to teach:* h.  
 Doctus, a, um, part. & adj., *learned.*  
 Dolabella, æ, m. p. n., *Dolabella.*  
 Doleo, ère, ui, n., *to grieve:* fr.  
 Dolor, öris, m., *grief, pain.*  
 Dominus, i, m., (*domus*), *a lord, master.*  
 Domo, äre, ui, itum, a., *to subdue, conquer.*  
 Domus, ös & i, f., *a house, home:* family: domi, *at home:* domum, acc., after a verb of motion, *home.*  
 Donec, adv., *until.*  
 Donum, i, n., (*do*), *a gift, present.*  
 Dormio, ire, ivi, itum, n., *to sleep.*  
 Draco, önis, m., *Draco*, an Athenian law-giver.  
 Dubito, äre, ävi, ätum, a., *to doubt, hesitate.*  
 Duco, ère, xi, ductum, a., *to lead, conduct:* ducere aggerem, or murum, *to raise or construct a mound, &c.; to think, consider:* h.  
 Ductus, a, um, part.  
 Dulcis, e, adj., ior, issimus, *sweet, pleasant.*  
 Dum, adv., *while, whilst, until:* also for dummodo, *provided.*  
 Dunnörix, igis, m., *Dunnörix*, a leader of the Edui.  
 Dum-modo, adv., *provided.*  
 Duo, æ, o, num. adj., *two.* Less 33.  
 Duo-dicim, num. adj. ind., (*decem*), *twelve.*  
 Duplex, icis, adj., (*duo-r'co*), *double, twofold:* h.  
 Duplus, a, um, adj., *double.*  
 Durè, adv., *hardly:* and.

Duro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to last, continue.* fr.

Durus, a, um, adj., *hard, inflexible.*

Dux, ducis, m. & f., (duco), *a leader, a general.*

## E.

E or Ex, prep. with abl., *out of, from, of.*

Eriktas, ātis, f., (ebrius, drunk), *drunkenness.*

Ecce, interj., *lo! behold!*

Editus, a, um, part., *sprung from, produced or begotten by:* fr.

E-do, ēre, edidi, editum, a., *to bring forth; to utter.*

Edo, ēre or esee, ēdi, ēsum, a., *to eat.*

Effectus, a, um, part., (efficio), *made, caused.*

Ef-fēro, ferre, extuli, elātum, a., irr., (ex-), *to carry out: pass. effētor, to be transported, carried away, by any feeling or passion.*

Ef-ficio, ēre, ēci, ectum, a., (ex-facio), *to effect, accomplish, cause, make.*

Effigies, ēi, f., (affingo), *an image.*

Ef-fidio, ēre, ēdi, ossum, a., (ex-), *to dig up.*

Ef-fundo, ēre, ūdi, ūsum, a., (ex-), *to pour out, empty.*

Egeo, ēre, uī, n., *to need, want, require:* h.

Egestas, ētis, f., *want, poverty.*

Egi, &c., see Ago.

Ego, mei, pron., m. & f., I. Less. 41, 4.

Eheu, interj., *alas!*

Ei, &c., & Eadem, see Is & Idem.

Ejus, see Is.

E-jicio, ēre, jēci, jectum, a., (-jacio), *to cast out.*

E-labor, i, lapsus sum, dep., *to glide or pass away:* h.

Elapsus, a, um, part., *having passed away.*

Elephantus, i, m., *an elephant.*

Elōquens, tis, part. & adj., (eloquo), ior, issimus, eloquent: h.

Eloquentia, w, f., *eloquence.*

Emendo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (e-men-dum), *to amend, correct.*

E-mergo, ēre, si, sum, a. & n., *to come forth, arise.*

Emo, ēre, emi, emptum, a., *to buy, purchase:* h.

Emptūrus, a, um, part., *about to purchase.*

En, interj., *lo!*

E-nascor, i, nātus sum, dep., *to spring up.*

Enim, conj., *for.* It is usually the second or third word in its clause.

Eo, ire, ivi, itum, n., *to go.*

Eō, adv., (is), *thither.*

Eo, see Is.

Epictētus, i, m., *Epictetus, a Stoic philosopher.*

Epiētūs, i, m., *Epicurus, a Grecian philosopher.*

Epiſtōla, w, f., *a letter, epistle.*

Eques, itis, m. & f., *a horseman; a knight:* fr.

Equus, i, m., *a horse.*

Erga, prep. with acc., *towards.*

Ergo, conj., *therefore, then.*

E-ripio, ēre, pui, reptum, a., (rapio), *to take away.*

Ero, &c., see Sum.

Erro, ēre, āvi, ātum, n., *to err:* h.

Error, ḥris, m., *error, mistake.*

E-rūdio, ēre, ivi, itum, a., *to teach, instruct.*

E-rumpo, ēre, ūpl, upturn, a. & n., *to burst forth, shoot forth, appear:* h.

Eruptio, ḥnis, f., *an eruption, a sally.*

Esuma, w, f., (edo, to eat), *food; bait.*

Esse, Essem, &c., see Sum.

Esuriens, tis, part., *hungry:* fr.

Esurio, ire, ivi, itum, a. & n., (edo, to eat), *to be hungry*

Et, conj., *and;* et—et, *both—and.*

Etiām, conj., (et-jam), *also.*

Etiām-si, conj., *even if.*

Eundi, &c., see Eo.

Euntis, &c., see Iens.

Euphrātes, is, m., *the Euphrates.*

Eupompus, i, m., *Eupompus,* a Grecian painter.

Europa, w, f., *Europe.*

*Eurypylus*, i. m. p. n., *Eurypy-lus*.

E-vello, ēre, evelli or evulsi, evul-sum, a., *to tear up.*  
E-venio, ire, ēni, entum, n., *to hap-pen, occur.*

Ex, see E.  
Ex-cēdo, ēre, essi, essum, n., *to de-part or retire from.*

Exceptus, a, um, part., (excipio), *excepted.*

Excidium, i, n., (excido), *destruc-tion, ruin.*

Ex-cipio, ēre, ēpi, eptum, a., (-ca-pio), *to except.*

Excitatus, a, um, part. : fr.

Ex-cito, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., *to excite, stim-u-late, arouse, raise, stir up.*

Ex-clāmo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., *to ex-claim, cry out.*

Excusatio, ònis, f., (excuso), *an ex-cause.*

Exemplum, i, n., (eximo), *an ex-ample.*

Ex-eo, īre, ii, ītum, n., *to go or come forth.*

Exercitus, òsa, m., (exerceo, to ex-ercise), *an army.*

Exiguus, a, um, adj., (exigo), *small.*

Exilis, e, adj., *thin, meagre.*

Eximius, a, um, adj., (eximo), *re-markable, extra-ordinary.*

Ex-istimo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., (-esti-mo), *to judge, think.*

Exitīalia, e, adj., *deadly, destruc-tive: and*

Exitōsus, a, um, adj., *destructive: fr.*

Exitium, i, n., (ex-eo), *destruction, ruin.*

Ex-orior, īri, ortus sum, dep., *to rise, arise: h.*

Exortus, a, um, part., *having sprung up or arisen.*

Ex-pello, ēre, pūlī, pulsum, a., *to drive out, expel, banish.*

Expergiscor, i, experrectus sum, dep., *to awake.*

Ex-perito, īri, expertus sum, dep., *to try, probe, find out.*

Experrectus, a, um, part., (exper-giscor), *having awak-ed.*

Ex-persa, tis, adj., (persa), *destitute or devoid of, free from.*

Ex-plōro, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to search, explore, spy out.*

Ex-pōno, ēre, osul, ositum, a., *to set forth, show, relate, rehearse.*

Ex-primo, ēre, essi, essum, a., (premo), *to press out.*

Ex-prōbo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to charge with, reproach for.* It is construed with the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the per-son.

Ex-pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to take, carry as by storm, &c.*

Expulsus, a, um, part., (expello).

Ex-quirō, ēre, sivi, situm, a., (quero), *to search for, seek out.*

Ex-solvo, ēre, olvi, olūtum, a., *to unloose; to pay: pénam exsol vere, to suffer punishment.*

Ex-specto, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to await, wait for.*

Extinctus, a, um, part., *dead:* fr.

Ex-stinguo, ēre, xi, ctum, a., *to ex-tinguish: pass. to die.*

Exsūlo, āre, āvi, ātum, n., (exsul), *to be in exile, be banished.*

Exter, ēra, ērum, adj., (ex), comp. exterior, sup. extrēmus, external.

Ex-timesco, ēre, mui, n. & a., *to fear greatly.*

Ex-trāho, ēre, xi, ctum, a., *to draw out, extricate.*

Extrēmus, a, um, adj., sup. of Ex-ter, *extreme, greatest.*

Exuo, ēre, ui, ītum, a., *to put off.*

## F.

Facies, īl, f., *the face, countenance.*

Faciliē, adv., comp. faciliūs, sup. facilimē, *easily:* fr.

Faciliś, e, adj., ius, illimē, *easy:* fr.

Facio, ēre, feci, factum, a., *to make, do, act; to appoint.* Fac, second pers. sing., imperative, *make or cause;* fac cures, *take care of, care for,* attend to; pass. fio, which see.

Factus, a, um, part., (fio.)

Facundus, a, um, adj., (fari, to speak), *eloquent*

- Fallo, ēre, fefelli, falsum, a., *to deceive.*
- Fama, **is**, f., *fame, rumor, report.*
- Famea, **is**, f., *hunger; famine.*
- Familia, **ex**, f., (*famulus*, a servant), *a family: h.*
- Familiāris, e, adj., *of a family: res familiāris, household affairs, property, estate.*
- Fanum, **i**, n., *a temple.*
- Fator, ēri, füssus sum, dep., *to confess, acknowledge.*
- Fatigo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to tire, fatigue.*
- Faux, cis, f., *obsolete in the sing., except the abl. fauce: the throat: hærē fauce, to stick in the throat.*
- Faveo, ēre, favi, fautum, n., *to favor.* Less. 110.
- Fece, &c., see Faci.
- Fecundus, a, um, adj., lor, issimius, *fruitful, fertile.*
- Fel, fellis, n., *gall.*
- Felicitas, ātis, f., *happiness: fr.*
- Felix, icis, adj., *happy.*
- Fenestra, **ex**, f., *a window.*
- Fera, **is**, f., *a wild beast.*
- Feretrum, i, n., *a bier.*
- Ferinus, a, um, adj., (*fera*), *of wild beasts.*
- Fero, īre, a., *to hit, strike, slay: secūri ferīre, to behead.*
- Fero, ferre, tūli, lātum, a. irr., *to bear, carry, bring, produce: to report, say: legem ferre, to propose a law; also, to make or frame a law: to bear, endure.*
- Ferox, òcis, adj., *ferocious.*
- Fertilis, e, adj., (*fero*), *fertile, fruitful.*
- Fessus, a, um, adj., *weary.*
- Festinans, tis, part. and adj., *hastening; in haste: fr.*
- Festino, āre, āvi, ātum, n. & a., *to hasten, make haste.*
- Ficus, i, or ūs, f., *a fig tree.*
- Fidenter, adv., (*fides* fr. *fido*), *boldly, without fear.*
- Fides, ei, f., *faith: in fidem recipere, to receive under one's protection: bonâ fide, in good faith, honestly.*
- Fido, ēre, füssus sum, n. passa, L.
- 79, N., *to trust or confide in, rely upon.*
- Fidus, a, um, adj., *faithful.*
- Figūra, **is**, f., *a figure, shape.*
- Filius, ii, m., *a son.*
- Finio, īre, ivi, itum, a., (*finis*, the end), *to terminate, finish.*
- Fio, nēri, factus sum, irr. pass. of facio, *to be made, become, happen, be done.* L. 79.
- Firmitas, ātis, f., (*firmus*), *firmness, strength.*
- Firmus, a, um, adj., *firm, constant, resolute; durable.*
- Fistulosus, a, um, adj., (*fistula*), *fistular, tubular.*
- Flagitium; ii, n., *dishonor, shameful crime, wickedness.*
- Flecto, ēre, xi, xum, a., *to bend; to move, prevail upon.*
- Fleo, ēre, evi, ētum, n., *to weep.*
- Floreo, ēre, ui, n., *to bloom; to flourish: fr.*
- Flos, florū, m., *a flower.*
- Fluctus, ūs, m., (*fluo*, to flow), *a wave.*
- Flumen, inis, n., (*id.*), *a river.*
- Focus, i, m., *a hearth.*
- Fodio, ēre, fōdi, fossum, a., *to dig; to pierce.*
- Folium, ii, n., *a leaf.*
- Fons, tis, m., *a fountain.*
- Fore, def. verb, Less. 81, 5, *about to be.* With a subject, would or should be.
- Formica, **is**, f., *an ant.*
- Formido, inis, f., *fear.*
- Formositas, ātis, f., (*formōsus*, handsome), *beauty.*
- Fors, tis, f., *chance, fortune: forte, abl., by chance.*
- Fortis, e, adj., lor, issimus, *brave.*
- Fortuna, **is**, f., (*fors*), *fortune.*
- Fossa, **ex**, f., (*fodio*, to dig), *a ditch, trench.*
- Fovea, **is**, f., *a pit.*
- Foveo, ēre, fōvi, fōtum, a., *to cherish, brood.*
- Frater, tris, m., *a brother: plur. brothers, brethren.*
- Fretus, a, um, adj., *trusting to.*
- Frigidus, a, um, adj., *cold: fr.*
- Frigus, òris, n., *cold.*

- Frons, dis, f., *foliage, leaves.*  
 Fructus, ūs, m., (*fruor*), *fruit.*  
 Frugis, &c., see Frux.  
 Frumentum, i, n., *corn: fr.*  
 Fruor, i, *fruits and fructus sum,*  
 dep., *to enjoy.*  
 Frustrā, adv., *in vain.*  
 Fruxt, frugin, f., *fruit, corn.*  
 Fuga, æ, f., *flight, retreat.*  
 Fugax, æcis, adj., *swift, fleeting:* fr.  
 Fugio, ëre, fugi, fugitum, n. & a.,  
*to flee, shun, avoid:* h.  
 Fugo, ëre, ëvi, ëtum, a., *to put to*  
*flight; to banish.*  
 Fui, Fuëram, &c., see Sum.  
 Fulgeo, ëre, fulsi, n., *to shine:* h.  
 Fulmen, inis, n., *lightning.*  
 Fungor, i, *citus sum, dep., to ex-*  
*ecute, perform.*  
 Funus, ëris, n., *a funeral:* funus  
*facere, to perform funeral rites.*  
 Fur, furis, m. & f., *a thief.*  
 Furo, ëre, n., *to be mad, to rage:* h.  
 Furor, ëris, m., *fury, madness.*  
 Furtum, i, n., (*fur*), *theft.*  
 Futurus, a, um, part., (*sum*), *about*  
*to be, future.*

## G.

- Gades, ium, f. plur., *Cadiz, a town*  
*of Spain.*  
 Gallia, æ, f., *Gaul, France.*  
 Gallina, æ, f., *a hen.*  
 Gallus, i, m., *a cock.*  
 Gallus, i, m., *a Gaul.*  
 Gaudeo, ëre, gavisus sum, n. pass.,  
 Less. 79, N., *to rejoice, be de-*  
*lighted with:* h.  
 Gaudium, i, n., *joy.*  
 Gaza, æ, f., *Gaza, a town of Pal-*  
*estine.*  
 Geminus, a, um, adj., *double.*  
 Gemitus, ūs, (*gemo*), *a groan.*  
 Gemma, æ, f., *a gem, a bud.*  
 Generositas, ëtis, f., (*generosus*),  
*generosity, magnanimity.*  
 Genitus, a, um, part., (*gigno*), *born.*  
 Gens, ūs, f., (*id.*), *a nation.*  
 Genus, ëris, n., *a race, stock.*  
 Germanus, i, m., *a German.*  
 Gero, ëre, gessi, gestum, a., *to bear,*  
*produce:* bellum gerere, *to wage*

- or carry on war: gerere turam  
*to take care of:* h.  
 Gesto, ëre, ëvi, ëtum, a. f eq., *to*  
*bear, carry.*  
 Gigno, ëre, genui, genitum, a., *to*  
*begel; to produce.*  
 Gloria, æ, f., *glory:* h.  
 Glorior, ãri, ãtus sum, dep., *to glo-*  
*ry in, pride one's self upon.* L.  
 116, 5.  
 Gnavus, a, um, adj., *active, diligent.*  
 Gracchi, òrum, m., *the Gracci;*  
*two grandsons of the elder Sci-*  
*pio Africanus.*  
 Gradus, ūs, m., *a step; a condition,*  
*rank.*  
 Grecia, æ, f., *Greece:* h.  
 Grecus, a, um, adj., *Grecian,*  
*Greek.* Grecus, i, m., *a Greek.*  
 Gramen, inis, n., *grass.*  
 Grandis, e, adj., *large, great.*  
 Gratia, æ, f., *grace, favor:* gratiâ,  
*for the purpose:* fr.  
 Gratue, a, um, adj., ior, issimus,  
*grateful, agreeable.*  
 Gravis, e, adj., *heavy; violent, se-*  
*vere:* gravis somnus, *a deep or*  
*sound sleep:* h.  
 Gravo, ëre, ëvi, ëtum, a., *to burden.*  
 Grex, gregis, m., *a flock.*  
 Grus, gruis, m. & f., *a crane.*

## H.

- Habeo, ëre, ul, ëtum, a., *to have;*  
*to treat; to account, esteem:* orationem habere, *to pronounce, de-*  
*liver:* se habere, *to be:* habere  
*in animo, to intend:* habere  
*iter, to pursue or direct one's*  
*course:* h.  
 Habito, ëre, ëvi, ëtum, intensive v.  
 a., *to live, dwell, reside.*  
 Habitus, a, um, part., (*habeo*).  
 Hiereo, ëre, hæsi, hæsum, n., *to*  
*adhere, stick.*  
 Hesitans, tis, part.: fr.  
 Hesito, ëre, ëvi, ëtum, intensive v.  
 n., (*hæreo*), *to hesitate, doubt.*  
 Hamilcar, aris, m., *Hamilcar.*  
 Hannibal, ãlla, m., *Hannibal.*  
 Haud, adv., *not.*  
 Hebes, ëlis, adj., *dull, stupid.*

- Hebræus, a, um, adj., *Hebrew*.  
 Hector, òris, m., *Hector*, a Trojan chief.  
 Hei, interj., *ah! alas!*  
 Helvetii, òrum, m. plur., *the Helvetians*.  
 Hercùles, is, m., *Hercules*, a Greek hero.  
 Herus, i, m., *a master*.  
 Heu, interj., *ah! alas!*  
 Hibernia, æ, f., *Ireland*.  
 Hic, hæc, hoc, adj. pron., *this*: h.  
 Hic, adv., *here*.  
 Hiems, èmis, f., *winter*.  
 Hirundo, inis, f., *a swallow*.  
 Hœdus, i, m., *a kid*.  
 Homicida, æ, m. & f., *(homo-cido)*, *a homicide, murderer*.  
 Homo, inis, m. & f., *a man*.  
 Honor, òris, m., *honor*.  
 Hora, æ, f., *an hour*.  
 Horreo, ère, ui, n. & a., *to shudder, be afraid; to fear*.  
 Horreum, i, n., *a granary, store-house*.  
 Hortus, i, m., *a garden*.  
 Hospes, itis, m. & f., *a stranger; a visitor*: h.  
 Hospitium, ii, n., *an inn, a lodging*.  
 Hostilis, e, adj., *(hostis), hostile*.  
 Hostilius, i, m., *Hostilius*. See Tullus.  
 Hostis, is, m. & f., *an enemy*: hostes, *enemies, the enemy*.  
 Huc, adv., *(hic), hither*.  
 Hujus and huic, see Hic.  
 Humanitas, ètis, f., *humanity, human nature*: fr.  
 Humanus, a, um, adj., *(homo), human*.  
 Humilis, e, adj., *low, humble*: fr.  
 Humus, i, f., *the ground*: humi or in humo, *on the ground*.  
 Hunc, adj. pron., see Hic.  
 Hyæna, æ, f., *the hyæna*.
- L.
- Ibam, Ibo, &c., see Eo.  
 Ibi, adv., *(is), there*.  
 Ico, ère, ici, ictum, a., *to strike, wound*: h.  
 Ictus, a, um, part., *struck, wounded*.
- Idcirco, adv., *(id-circa), therefore; for this reason*.  
 Idem, eadem, idem, adj. pron., *(is-dem), the same*.  
 Ideo, adv., *therefore*.  
 Idoneus, a, um, adj., *fit, suitable, worthy*.  
 Iena, Gen. suntis, part., *(eo), going*.  
 Igéitur, conj., *therefore*.  
 Ignavia, æ, f., *(ignavus), sloth*.  
 Ignis, is, m., *fire*.  
 Ignòro, ère, èvi, ètum, n. & a., *(ignarus), not to know, be ignorant*.  
 Ignosco, ère, èvi, ètum, a., *(ignosco), to pardon, forgive*.  
 Ille, illa, illud, adj. pron., *that: without a noun, he, she, it*: h.  
 Illuc, adv., *thither, to that place*.  
 Il-lucesco, ère, luxui, n., *(in-), to become light, to dawn*: impers., ubi luxit, *when it was light*.  
 Illustris, e, adj., *(in-lustro), illustrious, distinguished*.  
 Im, in composition, see In.  
 Imbecillus, e, adj., *lor, weak, feeble*.  
 Im-mémor, òris, adj., *forgetful, un-mindful*.  
 Im-mineo, ère, ui, n., *to overhang, be near*.  
 Im-mobilis, e, adj., *immovable*.  
 Im-mölo, ère, èvi, ètum, a., *to sacrifice*.  
 Im-mortális, e, adj., *immortal*: h.  
 Immortalitas, ètis, f., *immortality*.  
 Impédio, ire, ivi, itum, a., *(in-pes), to hinder, prevent*.  
 Imperátor, òris, m., *(impero), a commander; an emperor*.  
 Imperítè, adv., *(in-peritus), un-skilfully*.  
 Imperium, ii, n., *government, empire, sovereignty*: fr.  
 Im-péro, ère, èvi, ètum, a., *(pa-ro), to command, govern*.  
 Im-pétro, ère, èvi, ètum, a., *(pa-tro), to obtain, bring about*.  
 Im-pius, a, um, adj., *irreligious, unprincipled*.  
 Im-pleo, ère, èvi, ètum, a., *to fill*.  
 Im-plóro, ère, èvi, ètum, a., *to en-treat, implore*.  
 Im-póno, ère, osui, ositum, a., *to put upon, impose*.

- Impróbē, adv., *dishonestly, wickedly*: fr.  
 Im-próbusa, a, um, adj., *bad, wicked*.  
 Im-prüdens, tis, adj., *unawares*.  
 Im-púdens, tis, adj., ior, issimus, *impudent*.  
 In, prep., 1st. with acc., *into, to, towards, against, according to, for*: 2d. with abl., *in, upon, among*.—  
 In composition ita *n* becomes *m* before *b, m, p*; is assimilated before *l* and *r*; and is dropped before *gn*.  
 Incertus, a, um, adj., *uncertain, doubtful*.  
 In-cido, ēre, idī, n., (cado), *to fall into, or upon*.  
 In-clamo, ēre, ēvi, ātum, *to call upon, call*.  
 In-cōlo, ēre, ul, cultum, a. & n., *to dwell in, inhabit*.  
 In-colūmis, e, adj., *safe*.  
 Inconstantia, æ, f., (inconstans, *inconstant*), *inconstancy*.  
 In-credibilis, e, adj., *incredible, wonderful*.  
 India, æ, f., *India*.  
 In-dico, ēre, ēvi, ātum, a., *to show, disclose, discover*.  
 Indignitas, æ, f., *unworthiness, baseness*: fr.  
 In-dignus, a, um, adj., *unworthy*.  
 In-doctus, a, um, adj., ior, issimus, *illiterate, ignorant*.  
 Induo, ēre, ul, ītum, a., *to put on, clothe*.  
 Indus, i, m., *the Indus*.  
 Industrius, a, um, adj., *industrious*: h.  
 Industria, æ, f., *industry*.  
 Indutiae, ārum, f. plur., *a truce*.  
 Ineptias, ārum, f. plur., *silly, impertinent*.  
 Inertia, æ, f., (iners), *loth, laziness*.  
 In-felix, icis, adj., *unhappy, unfortunate*.  
 In-féro, ferre, intüllī, illātum, a., *to bring upon*: inferre bellum, *to make war upon*.  
 Infesto, ēre, ēvi, ātum, a., *to trouble, molest, infect*: fr.
- Infestus, a, um, adj., *hostile, inimical*.  
 Infra, prep. with acc., *beneath, below*.  
 Ingenium, i, n., (in-genio), *genius talents; character*.  
 Ingens, tis, adj., *huge, very great*.  
 In-gravesco, ēre, n., *to grow heavy, increase*.  
 In-grédior, i, gressus sum, dep., (gradior), *to enter*: h.  
 Ingressus, a, um, part.  
 Initium, i, n., (ineo), *a beginning*.  
 In-jicio, ēre, ēci, ectum, a., (jacio), *to throw or lay upon*.  
 Injuria, æ, f., (injurie), *an injury*.  
 In-nōcens, tis, adj., *innocent; harmless*.  
 In-noxius, a, um, adj., *harmless*.  
 Ino, f., Gen. Inua, in all other cases Ino, see Appendix, Less. C.; a Greek noun, Ino, a daughter of Cadmus.  
 Inopia, æ, f., (imops), *want, scarcity, dearth*.  
 Inquam, or inquo, is, it, &c., def verb, *I say, &c.*  
 Insania, æ, f., (insanus), *madness, insanity*.  
 Insectum, i, n., (inseco), *an insect*.  
 In-séquor, i, secutus sum, dep., *to follow, pursue*.  
 In-séro, ēre, erui, ertum, a., *to insert, put into*.  
 In-sideo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, n., (sedeo), *to sit in or upon*: h.  
 In-sidēs, ārum, f. pl., *an ambuscade*.  
 In-signis, e, adj., (signum), *distinguished, extraordinary*.  
 In-sipiens, tis, adj., (sapiens), *foolish*.  
 In-suavis, e, adj., *unpleasant, disagreeable*.  
 In-sula, æ, f., *an island*.  
 In-súper, adv., *moreover, over and above*.  
 Intelligo, ēre, exi, ectum, a., (interlego), *to understand, perceive*.  
 Inter, prep. with acc., *between, among*.  
 Inter-ea, adv., (-is), *in the meantime*.  
 Inter-diū, adv., *in the day time*

nter-dum, adv., *sometimes*.  
 Inter-eo, ire, il, itum, n., *to die, perish*.  
 Inter-est, interfuit, impers., (-sum), *it concerns, it is of importance*.  
 Inter-ficio, ēre, ēci, ectum, a., (factio), *to kill, slay*.  
 Inter-ful, &c., see Intersum.  
 Inter-pre, ētia, m. & f., *an interpreter*.  
 Interpretatio, ōnis, f., *an interpretation, explanation*; fr.  
 Inter-prē-tor, āri, ātus sum, dep., (interpretor), *to interpret, explain*.  
 Interrogātus, a, um, part., *being asked*: fr.  
 Inter-rogo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to ask*.  
 Inter-sum, esse, fui, irr. n., *to be between, to be present at*.  
 Intro-dūco, ēre, xi, ctum, a., *to bring in, introduce*.  
 Intūl, &c., see Inf ero.  
 In-utilis, e, adj., *useless*.  
 In-vénio, ire, ēni, entum, a., *to find, to discover*: h.  
 Inventrix, icis, f., *she that finds out, an inventress*.  
 Inventus, a, um, part., (invenio), *found*.  
 In-video, ēre, īdi, isum, n. & a., *to envy*.  
 In-visus, a, um, adj., *hated, hateful, odious*.  
 In-vōcō, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to call upon*.  
 Ipse, a, um, Gen. ipseus, adj. pron., *self or myself*, &c. Lessons 42 and 43.  
 Ira, æ, f., *anger*: h.  
 Irascor, i, dep., *to be angry, to be displeased with*: h.  
 Irātus, a, um, adj., *angry*.  
 Ire, ivi, &c., see Eo.  
 Ir-reparabilis, e, adj., (in-), *irreparable, irretrievable*.  
 Is, eai id, Gen. ejus, adj. pron., *that, he, she, it*: also, when followed by qui and the subjunctive, such, *of such character, one*.  
 Inter eo, ire, ivi, Itum, irr. n., *to perish die*.  
 Isaacus, i, m. p. n., *Isaac*.

Isis, īdis, f., *Isis*, an Egyptian goddess.  
 Isocrātes, is, m., *Isocrates*, an Athenian orator.  
 Iste, ista, istud, Gen. istius, adj. pron., *that, that of yours*.  
 It, ite, &c., see Eo.  
 Ita, adv., *so*.  
 Italia, æ, f., *Italy*.  
 Itā-que, conj., *and so, therefore*.  
 Iter, itinēris, n., *a journey, way*.  
 Itērum, adv., *again*.

J.

Jaceo, ēre, ui, n., *to lie*.  
 Jacobus, i, m. p. n., *Jacob*.  
 Jactabundus, a, um, adj., *vaunting, boasting*: fr.  
 Jacto, are, āvi, ātum, a., *to throw; to throw out, utter, speak*.  
 Jacūlans, tis, part.: fr.  
 Jacūlor, āri, ātus sum, dep., *to throw a javelin*: fr.  
 Jacūlum, i, n., *a javelin, dart*.  
 Jam, adv., *now, already*.  
 Janitor, ōris, m., (janua, a gate), *a porter*.  
 Josephus, i, m. p. n., *Joseph*.  
 Jubeo, ēre, jussi, juseum, a., *to order, command*.  
 Jucundus, a, um, adj., ior, issimus, *pleasant, agreeable*.  
 Judas, æ, m. p. n., *Judah*. L. 8. 5.  
 Judge, icis, m. & f., *a judge*.  
 Judico, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (jus-dico), *to judge, decide*.  
 Jugilans, dis, f., *walnut*.  
 Jugurtha, æ, m., *Jugurtha*, a king of Numidia.  
 Julia, æ, f., *Julia*, the daughter of Julius Caesar.  
 Jungo, ēre, xi, ctum, a., *to join*.  
 Juno, ōnis, f., *Juno*, the queen of the gods.  
 Jupiter, Jovis, m., *Jupiter, Jove*, the king of the gods. Less. 21.  
 Jura, æ, m., *Jura*, a mountain of Gaul.  
 Juro, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to swear*: fr.  
 Jus, juris, n., *right*.  
 Jus-jurandum, jurisjurandi, n., *an oath*. Less. 27.

- Jussi, &c., see Jubeo.  
 Justitia, *æ*, *f.*, justice: fr.  
 Justus, *a*, *um*, adj., ior, *issemus*, (*jus*), *just*, *true*.  
 Juventus, *ūni*, *f.*, (*juvēnīs*), youth: also, the youth, the young people.
- L.
- Labor or labo, *ōris*, *m.*, labor, toil; distress, trouble.  
 Labor, *i*, *lāpēsū sum*, dep., to glide away, pass away.  
 Lac, *lactis* *n.*, milk.  
 Lacedemon, *ōnia*, *f.*, *Lacēdēmon* or *Sparta*: h.  
 Lacedemonius, *i*, *m.*, a *Lacēdemōnian*, *Spartan*.  
 Lacerta, *æ*, *f.*, a lizard.  
 Lacryma, *æ*, *f.*, a tear.  
 Lædo, *ēre*, *si*, *sum*, *a.*, to hurt, injure.  
 Lætor, *āri*, *ātūs sum*, dep., to rejoice, rejoice in, be delighted with.  
 Lapillus, *i*, *m.*, dim., a little stone, a stone: fr.  
 Lapis, *idīn*, *m.*, a stone.  
 Latinus, *i*, *m.*, a *Latin*, an inhabitant of *Latium*.  
 Lātro, *ōnia*, *m.*, a robber.  
 Latus, *a*, *um*, adj., ior, *issemus*, wide, broad.  
 Laudabilis, *e*, *adj.*, comp. ior, *laudable*: fr.  
 Laudo, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātūm*, *a.*, to praise, laud, extol: fr.  
 Laus, *dis*, *f.*, praise, glory, honor.  
 Lautus, *a*, *um*, adj., elegant, sumptuous: fr.  
 Lavo, *āre*, *lavī*, *lātūtūm*, *lautūm* or *lotūm*, *a.*, to wash.  
 Leæna, *æ*, *f.*, a lioness.  
 Legātus, *i*, *m.*, (*lego*, *āre*, to depute), an ambassador, a lieutenant.  
 Legio, *ōnia*, *f.*, (*lego*, *ēre*), a legion.  
 Legis, &c., see Lex.  
 Lego, *ēre*, *legī*, *lectūm*, *a.*, to read.  
 Lenio, *īre*, *īvi*, *ītūm*, *a.*, (*lenīs*), to mitigate, alleviate.  
 Lenitor, adv., (*id.*), mildly, kindly.  
 Leo, *ōnia*, *m.*, a lion.  
 Lepus, *ōris*, *m.*, a hare.  
 Letum, *i*, *n.*, death.
- Lex, *legia*, *f.*, (*lego*, *ēre*), a law.  
 Libenter, *adv.*, (*libens*), willingly.  
 Liber, *bri*, *m.*, a book.  
 Liber, *ēra*, *ērum*, adj., free: h.  
 Liberālis, *e*, *adj.*, liberal.  
 Liberātūs, *a*, *um*, part., (*libero*).  
 Liberē, *adv.*, (*liber*), comp. *īta*, *freedom*; extravagantly.  
 Liberi, *ōrum*, *m. plur.*, (*liber*), children.  
 Libero, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātūm*, *a.*, (*id.*), to free, deliver.  
 Libertas, *ātīs*, *f.*, (*id.*), liberty, freedom.  
 Libya, *æ*, *f.*, *Libya*.  
 Licet, *uit*, impera. verb, it is lawful.  
 it is permitted: h.  
 Licet, conj., though, although.  
 Ligo, *ōnis*, *m.*, a mattock, hoe.  
 Ligo, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātūm*, *a.*, to bind.  
 Lillium, *i*, *n.*, a lily.  
 Lingua, *æ*, *f.*, the tongue; language.  
 Liquesco, *ēre*, *licui*, *n.*, (*liqueo*), to melt.  
 Littēra, *æ*, *f.*, a letter of the alphabet: plur., a letter or epistle; also, literatūre, letters.  
 Littus, *ōris*, *n.*, the shore.  
 Locus, *i*, *m.*, plur. loci, *m.*, or loca, *n.*, a place; condition.  
 Locūtūs, *a*, *um*, part., (*loquor*), having spoken or said.  
 Longē, *adv.*, (*longus*), far, very.  
 Longitūdo, *īnis*, *f.*, length: fr.  
 Longus, *a*, *um*, adj., long, of long continuance.  
 Loquor, *i*, *cātūs sum*, dep., to speak, converse, say.  
 Lotus, *a*, *um*, part., (*lavo*), washed.  
 Lucia, &c., see Lux.  
 Lucus, *i*, *m.*, a grove.  
 Ludus, *i*, *m.*, play: plur., games, shows.  
 Lugeo, *ēre*, *xi*, *n.* & *a.*, to mourn, lament, mourn for.  
 Luna, *æ*, *f.*, the moon.  
 Luo, *ēre*, *lui*, *lutūm*, *a.*, to pay; to suffer.  
 Lupus, *i*, *m.*, a wolf.  
 Luscinia, *æ*, *f.*, a nightingale.  
 Lutum, *i*, *n.*, mud; clay.  
 Lux, *lucis*, *f.*, the light.  
 Luxi, &c., see Lugeo

Lysander, drī, m., *Lysander*, a Spartan general.

M. <sup>c</sup>

M., an abbreviation of *Marcus*. Macedonia, æ, f., *Macedonia*. Machina, æ, f., a machine. Macilentus, a, um, adj., lean. Magis, adv., comp., more. Magistratus, ū, m., a *magistracy*: a *magistrate*. Magnificus, a, um, adj., (magnus-facio), splendid, magnificent. Magnitudo, inis, f., greatness: fr. Magnus, a, um, adj., comp. major, sup. maximus, great: magnum iter, a long journey. Est magni, it is of great value: magni interest, it greatly concerns: magna vox, a loud voice. Magnus, i, m., *Magnus* or the Great, surname of Pompey. Major, òris, adj., comp. of magnus, Less. 10, 3, greater: h. Majores, um, m. plur., ancestors. Malè, adv., (malus), ill. Maledico, ère, xi, tum, n., (male-dico), to speak ill of; to slander. Less. 112. Male-dicus, a, um, adj., (id.), slanderous, backbiting. Malum, i, n., evil, misfortune: Aliquid in malo ducere, to consider anything as evil, or as an evil: fr. Malus, a, um, adj., comp. pejor, sup. pessimus, bad, wicked. Mandatum, i, n., (mando), an order, command. Manè, adv., in the morning. Maneo, ère, si, sum, n., to stay, remain. Manifestus, a, um, adj., plain, evident, manifest. Manipulus, i, m., a bundle, sheaf. Manus, ū, f., a hand. Marcus, i, m. p. n., *Marcus*. Marcus, i, m., *Marcus*, a Roman prænomen. Mare, is, n., the sea. Marius, i, m., *Marius*, a Roman general.

Marinus, a, um, adj., (mare), of the sea: aqua marina, sea-water. Marsyas, æ, m., *Marsyas*. L. 8, 5 Mater, tris, f., a mother: h. Matrona, æ, f., a matron, lady. Maturesco, ère, urui, n., (maturus, ripe), to ripen. Maturo, ère, èvi, ètum, a & n., (id.), to hasten. Maximè, adv., sup. of magis, most, especially, particularly. Maximus, a, um, adj., sup. of magnus, Less. 40, 3, greatest or very great. Maximi, with verbs of valuing, &c., very greatly, very highly: maximus natu, oldest. Me, &c., see Ego. Medeōr, èri, dep., to cure. L. 110. Medicina, æ, f., medicine: fr. Medicus, i, m., (medeōr), a physician. Meditor, èri, ètus sum, dep., to meditate, intend. Mediūs, a, um, adj., middle, mid, midst. Less. 92, 8. Megara, æ, f., *Megara*, a city of Greece. Mel, mellis, n., honey. Melior, òris, adj., comp. of bonus, Less. 40, 3, better. Melius, adv., comp. of bene, better. Membrum, i, n., a member, limb. Memini, meminisse, def. verb, I remember: memento, imperative. Memoria, æ, f., memory. Mens, tis, f., the mind; opinion. Mentio, ònis, f., (memini), mention. Mercator, òris, m., (mercor), a merchant, trader. Mercea, èdis, f., a reward. Mercur, èri, ètus sum, dep., to trade. Mercurius, i, m., *Mercury*. Mereo, ère, ui, ètum, a. & n., to deserve, merit. Merito, adv., deservedly: fr. Meritum, i, n., (mercor), merit; a benefit, favor. Merula, æ, f., a blackbird. Metallum, i, n., metal; a mine: conaemnare ad metalla, to condemn to the mines, i. e. to labor in the mines.

- Metellus, i, m., *Metellus*, a Roman general.
- Meto, ēre, messul, messum, a., *to reap*.
- Metuo, ēre, ui, n. & t., *to fear*: fr.
- Metus, ūs, m., *fear*.
- Meus, a, um, poss. adj. pron., (me), *my*.
- Migro, āre, āvi, ātum, n. & a., *to remove, migrate*.
- Mihī, see Ego: *mīhi ipsi, myself*.
- Miles, iūs, m. & f., *a soldier*: h.
- Militāris, e, adj., *military*: *rea militaria, the art of war, military science*: and
- Militia, e, f., *military service*; domi et militiae, *in peace and in war*.
- Mille, num. adj. ind.—also subs. ind. in sing., pl. millia, ium, &c., *a thousand*. Less. 38, 8.
- Milo, ūnis, m., *Milo*.
- Minimē, adv., sup. of pārūm, *least, by no means*.
- Minimus, a, um, adj., sup. of parvus, Less. 40, 3., *smallest, very small*: *minimi facere or astimare, to value very little*: est minimi, *it is of very little value*: minimus natu, *youngest*.
- Minister, tri, m., *a servant*.
- Minor, ārl, ātus sum, dep., *to threaten*.
- Minor, us, Gen. ūris, adj., comp. of parvus, Less. 40, 3, *smaller, less*.
- Minuo, ēre, ui, ātum, a., *to lessen, diminish*.
- Minus, adj., n., comp. of parvus; also, adv., comp. of parvum, *less*.
- Mirabilis, e, adj., *wonderful*: and Mirans, tis, part.: fr.
- Miror, ārl, ātus sum, dep., *to wonder, admire*.
- Misceo, ēre, miscui, mistum or mixtum, a., *to mix, mingle, unite*.
- Miser, ēra, ērum, adj., *wretched, unhappy*: h.
- Misereor, ēri, miseritus or misertus sum, dep., *to pity*: h.
- Misereasco, ēre, n., *to pity, compassionate*.
- Misēret, uit, impers., (misered), me. miseret, *I pity*.
- Miseria, ē, f., (miser), *misery, misfortune*.
- Misi, &c., see Mitto.
- Missūrus, a, um, part., (mitto.)
- Missus, a, um, part., (id.), *sent*.
- Mitis, e, adj., *mild, humane, kind*; soft, ripe.
- Mitto, ēre, misi, missum, a., *to send*.
- Mobilis, e, adj., (moveo), *movable, fickle*: h.
- Mobilitas, ātis, f., *pliancy, flexibility*.
- Modius, i, m., *a peck*.
- Modī, adv., *only*: fr.
- Modus, i, m., *a measure; a way, manner*. In omnibus modis, in all respects, i. e. completely.
- Mōrō, ēre, ui, n. & t., *to mourn*: h.
- Mōror, ūria, m., *grief, sorrow*.
- Mōstītia, ē, f., (mōstus, sad), *grief, sadness*.
- Molea, is, f., *a mass, burden, weight*.
- Mollis, e, adj., ior, insinuus, *soft*.
- Moneo, ēre, ui, ītum, a., *to advise; to remind, admonish*: h.
- Monitus, a, um, part.
- Mons, tis, m., *a mountain*.
- Mora, ē, f., *delay*.
- Morbus, i, m., *a disease*.
- Moribundus, a, um, adj., *dying, at the point of death*: and
- Moriens, tis, part., *dying*: fr.
- Morior, mori, or moriri, mortuus sum, dep., *to die*: h.
- Moritūrus, a, um, part.: and
- Mors, tis, f., *death*: h.
- Mortalis, e, adj., *mortal*.
- Mortuus, a, um, part. & adj., (mōrīor), *dead*. Mortuum mare, the Dead sea.
- Mos, moris, m., *a custom, way, manner*; plur., *manners, morale*.
- Motus, ūs, m., *a motion*: motus terræ, *an earthquake*: fr.
- Moveo, ēre, movi, motum, a., *to move, shake, agitate*.
- Mox, adv., soon.
- Multo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to punish*.
- Muller, ūris, f., *a woman*.
- Multitudo, īnis, f., *a multitude*; number: and
- Multūm, adv., much, greatly: fr.

Multus, a, um, adj., *much, many*: multo, abl. with comparatives, *much*; as, multo major, *much greater*.

Mundus, i, m., *the world*.

Munio, ire, ivi, itum, a., *to fortify, protect*: h.

Munitus, a, um, part.

Munus, ēris, n., *an office; a present, gift*.

Murus, i, m., *a wall of a town, &c.*

Musca, ēs, f., *a fly*.

Musica, ēs, f., *music*.

Muto, āre, ēvi, ātūm, a., *to change, exchange*.

Myrtus, ī, f., *a myrtle*.

### N. ē ē:

Nam, conj., *for*.

Narbo, ònis, m., *Narbo, a town of Gaul*.

Narcissus, i, m. p. n., *Narcissus*.

Narro, āre, ēvi, ātūm, a., *to relate, tell*.

Nascens, tis, part.: fr.

Nascor, i, natus sum, dep., *to be born; to rise, spring up*.

Natālis, e, adj., (*natus*), *natal*: dies natālis, *a birthday*.

Natio, ònis, f., (*id.*), *a nation*.

Natu, m., (*id.*), found only in abl. sing., *by birth, in age*.

Natura, ēs, f., (*id.*), *nature*.

Natus, a, um, part., (*nascor*), *born*: trīginta annos natus, *thirty years old*. Less. 98.

Nauta, ēs, m., *a sailor*.

Navālis, e, adj., (*navis*), *naval*.

Navigium, i, n., *a vessel*: fr.

Navigo, āre, ēvi, ātūm, a. & n., (*navis-ago*), *to navigate, sail*.

Navis, is, f., *a ship, vessel*: h.

Navita, ēs, m., *a sailor*.

Ne, adv., *not*.—Also conj., *that not, lest*.

Ne, enclitic conj.: In direct questions it is not translated: in indirect questions, *whether*.

Nec, or ne-que, conj., *and not, nor*.

Necdum, adv., *not yet, and not yet*.

Necesse, adj., ind., *necessary, unavoidable*: h.

Necessitas, ātia, f., *necessity*.

Neco, āre, necāvi or necui, necātum, a., *to kill*.

Negligentia, ēs, f., *negligence*.

Nugo, āre, ēvi, ātūm, a., *to deny*.

Negotium, i, n., (*nec-otium*), *business*: negotium dare, ut, &c., *to commission or charge, that, &c.*

Nemo, īnis, m. & f., (*ne-homo*), *no one, nobody*: nemo mortalium, *no mortal*.

Nepos, òtis, m., *a grandson*.

Nequāquam, adv., *by no means*.

Nequis or Ne quis, ne qua, ne quod on ne quid, adj. pron., *lest any one, that no one: ne quid aliud curare, to care for nothing else*.

Nero, ònis, m., *Nero, a Roman emperor*.

Neocio, īre, ivi, itum, a., (*ne-scio*), *not to know*.

Never or neu, conj., *nor, neither*.

Nidus, i, m., *a nest*.

Niger, gra, grum, adj., *black*.

Nihil, n, ind., *nothing*: nihil mali, *no evil*.

Nilus, i, m., *the Nile*.

Nimbus, i, m., *a storm*.

Nimirum, adv., *certainly, truly, forsooth*.

Nimium, adv., *too, too much*: fr.

Nimius, a, um, adj., *excessive, too much*.

Nisi, conj., (*ni-si*), *if not, unless, except*.

Nitor, òris, m., (*nito*, to shine), *splendor, elegance*.

Nitor, i, nitus & nixus sum, dep., *to strike; to rely upon*.

Nix, nivis, f., *snow*.

Nobilla, ē, adj., *noble*.

Noceo, ēre, ui, itum, *to hurt, injure*.

Noctu, f., (*nox*), found only in the abl. sing., *by night, at night*: h.

Nocturnus, a, um, adj., *nocturnal, of night*.

Nolo, nolle, nolui, irr. n., (*non volo*), Less. 77, *to be unwilling: I will not*.

The imperative of *nolo* with an infinitive is translated *not, and*

the infinitive like an imperative; *as, noli id facere, do not do it.*  
**Nomen, inis, n., (nosco), a name:** *nomine, in the name, for the sake.*  
**Non, adv., not.**  
**Non-dum, adv., not yet.**  
**Nos, see Ego.**  
**Nosco, ēre, novi, notum, a., to know; noſſe contracted for no-viſe.**  
**Noster, tra, trum, poss. adj. pron., (nos), our.**  
**Notus, a, um, part., (nosco), known, noted.**  
**Novua, a, um, adj., new.**  
**Nox, noctis, f., night.**  
**Nubo, ēre, nupsi, nuptum, n., Less. 110, to marry.**  
**Nudo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., to make bare, strip.**  
**Nullus, a, um, adj., Gen. nullius, Less. 32, 1, (ne-illus), no one, none, no.**  
**Num, adv. In direct questions it is not translated: in indirect questions, whether. Less. 125, & 130.**  
**Numa,  $\varpi$ , m., Numa, the second king of Rome.**  
**Numen, inis, n., (nuo), a deity, god.**  
**Numéro, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., (númerus, a number), to count.**  
**Numida,  $\varpi$ , m., a Numidian.**  
**Numitor, óris, m., Numitor.**  
**Nummus, i, m., a piece of money, money.**  
**Nunc, adv., now.**  
**Nunquam, adv., (ne-unquam), never.**  
**Nuntio, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., to announce, tell, report, make known: fr.**  
**Nuntius, i, m., news; a messenger.**  
**Nuper, adv., lately.**  
**Nuptus, a, um, part., (nubo), having married.**  
**Nutus, ūs, m., (nuo, to nod), a nod; will, pleasure.**  
**Nux, nucis, f., a nut. Nux juglans, a walnut.**

**O.**

**O, interj., O!**  
**Ob, prep. with acc., for, on account of. In composition its b is assimilated before e, f, g, and p.**  
**Ob-eo, īre, īvi, ītum, n. irr., to die.**  
**Obfitus, a, um, part., having forgotten; forgetful: fr.**  
**Obliviscor, i, oblitus sum, dep., (oblivio, forgetfulness), to forget.**  
**Ob-sēcro, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., (-sacro), to entreat, beseech.**  
**Ob-servo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., to mind, notice, observe.**  
**Obseca, idia, m. & f., a hostage.**  
**Ob-video, ēre, ēdil, ēssum, n. & a., (sedeo), to besiege: h.**  
**Ob-sidio, ònia, f., a siege.**  
**Ob-sto, ēre, stitū, n., to oppose, hinder.**  
**Ob-stupesco, ēre, ul, n., to be amazed or astonished.**  
**Ob-sum, esse, fui, n. irr., to hinder, hurt.**  
**Ob-testor, īri, ītus sum, dep., to beseech, adjure.**  
**Ob-vēnīo, īre, vēni, ventum, n., to happen, occur.**  
**Ob-viām, adv., in the way: procedere obviām, to go out to meet.**  
**OC-cido, ēre, cidi, cīsum, a., (obcidō), to kill, slay, put to death.**  
**Occūpo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., (ob-capio), to occupy, take possession.**  
**Oceanus, i, m., the ocean.**  
**Octingenti,  $\varpi$ , a, num. adj., (octocentum), eight hundred.**  
**Octo, num. adj. ind., eight.**  
**Ocūlūs, i, m., an eye.**  
**Odi, odēram, &c., def. verb, Less. 81, I hate: h.**  
**Odiūm, i, n., hatred.**  
**Odor, óris, m., a smell, odor.**  
**Of-fero, ferre, obtūli, oblatum, a. irr., (ob-fero), to offer.**  
**Olea,  $\varpi$ , f., an olive tree.**  
**Olim, adv., once, formerly.**  
**O-mitto, ēre, īsi, īssum, a., (ob-mitto), to omit.**  
**Omnis, e, adj., all, every: omnes, all men: omnia, all things. Less. 91, 5.**

- Onero, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., (*onus*, a load), *to load*.  
 Onustus, a, um, adj., (*id.*), *laden*.  
 Opēra, m, f, *work*: dare operam, *to be at pains, take care*.  
 Operimentum, i, n., (*operio*, to cover), *a covering*.  
 Opinio, önia, f, *opinion*.  
 Oppidum, i, n., *a town*.  
 Opportūnus, a, um, adj., *fit, convenient*.  
 Oppressus, a, um, part. : fr.  
 Op-primo, ēre, essi, essum, a., (*ob-premo*), *to oppress, overwhelm; to put down, suppress*.  
 Ops, opis, f, *power, riches, aid, assistance*. The nom. sing. is not used.  
 Optabilis, e, adj., comp. ior, (*opto, to desire*), *desirable*.  
 Optimè, adv., sup. of bene, *best*.  
 Optimus, a, um, adj., sup. of bonus, Less. 40, 3, *best*.  
 Opus, öris, n., *work, employment, business*.  
 Opus, ind. subst. & adj., *need; necessary*.  
 Ora, m, f, *a border*.  
 Oraculum, i, n., (*oro*), *an oracle*.  
 Oratio, önia, f, (*id.*), *speech, a speech, an oration*.  
 Orātor, öris, m., (*id.*), *a speaker, orator*.  
 Orbis, is, m., *a circle: orbis or orbis terrarum, the world*.  
 Orbis, a, um, adj., *bereft*: orbum facere, *to bereave, deprive*.  
 Ordo, inis, m., *order; a train*.  
 Oriens, tis, part., (*orior*), *rising* : h.  
 Orientalis, e, adj., *eastern*.  
 OrIor, iri, ortus sum, dep., *to rise, arise*.  
 Ornamentuin, i, n., (*orno*, to adorn), *an ornament*.  
 Oro, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., *to speak; to beg, crave, ask for*.  
 Ortus, a, um, part., (*orior*), *sprung from, son of*.  
 Os, oris, n., *the mouth*.  
 Os, ossis, n., *a bone*.  
 Osculor, öri, ätus sum, dep., *to kiss*.  
 Os-tendo, ēre, di, sum or tum, a., (*ob-*), *to show*.  
 Otium, i, n., *leisure, inactivity*.  
 Ovidius, i, m., *Ovid*, a Roman poet.  
 Ovis, is, f, *a sheep*.
- P.
- Pacis, &c., see Pax.  
 Pene, or pene, adv., *almost*.  
 Pallas, ädis, f., *Pallas, Minerva*.  
 Pallium, i, n., *a mantle*.  
 Palmes, itis, m., *a branch of a vine*.  
 Palpōbræ, ärum, f. plur., *the eyelashes*.  
 Palus, i, m., *a stake*.  
 Palus, üdis, f., *a marsh*.  
 Pamphilus, i, m., *Pamphilus*, a Grecian painter.  
 Par, pāris, adj., *equal*—subst. an equal.  
 Parco, öre, pepercī or parsi, *to spare* : fr.  
 Parcus, a, um, adj., *frugal*.  
 Pareo, ēre, ul, itum, n., *to obey*.  
 Paren, tis, m. & f., *a parent* : fr.  
 Paro, ēre, pepēri, partum, a., *to bear, produce*.  
 Paro, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., *to prepare; to procure, obtain*.  
 Pars, tis, f., *a part*.  
 Parsonia, m, f., (*parco*), *frugality*.  
 Particeps, cipis, adj., (*pars-capiro*), *participant of*. Subst., *a sharer, partaker*.  
 Parum, adv., and ind. noun or adj., *little* : comp. minūs, sup. minime.  
 Parumper, adv., *for a little while*.  
 Parvūlus, a, um, dim., adj., *small, little* : subst., *a little child, a little one* : fr.  
 Parvus, a, um, adj., comp. minor, sup. minimus, Less. 40, 3, *little, small* : purvi westinare or facere, *to value little*.  
 Pasco, öre, pavī, pastum, a., *to feed, feed upon*, & Pascor, i, pastus sum, pass., in the sense of, *to feed one's self, to feed or pasture upon, eat* : h.  
 Pastor, öris, m., *a shepherd*.  
 Pateo, ēre, ui, n., *to be open*.  
 Pater, tris, m., *a father*

- Patiens, tis, part. & adj., ior, issimus, *patient*: fr.
- Patior, i, passus sum, dep., *to suffer, endure*.
- Patria, se, f., (pater), *a native country, one's country*.
- Pauci, se, a, adj. plur., ior, issimus, few: pauci, m., *few men, few persons*: pauca, n., *few things*.
- Paucior, us, Gen. òris, adj., comp. of pauci, *fewer*.
- Paulatim, adv., *by degrees, gradually*: fr.
- Paulus, a, um, adj., *little, small*: paulo, abl., with a comparative, *by a little, a little*: so paulo post, *a little after*.
- Pauper, ëria, adj., *poor*: h.
- Paupertas, ëtia, f., *poverty*.
- Pavo, ònis, m., *a peacock*.
- Pax, pacis, f., *peace*.
- Peccatum, i, n., *a fault*: fr.
- Pecco, ãre, ãvi, ãtum, n., *to do wrong, sin*.
- Pectus, òris, n., *the breast: the heart, mind*.
- Pecunia, se, f., *money*: fr.
- Pecus, òris, n., *sheep, cattle*.
- Pecus, ùdis, i, *a sheep*.
- Pedia, &c., see Pea.
- Pejor, us, Gen. òris, adj., comp. of malus, *worse*.
- Pellicio, ëre, lexi, lectum, a., *to entice*.
- Pello, ëre, pepulli, pulsum, a., *to drive away, expel, dispossess; to rout*.
- Pendo, ëre, pependi, n., *to hang, be suspended*.
- Penes, prep. with acc., *with, in the power of*.
- Peninsùla, se, f., (pene, almost, & insula), *a peninsula*.
- Penna, se, f., *a feather, a wing*.
- Peperi, &c., see Parco.
- Peplusti, &c., see Pello.
- Per, prep. with acc., *through, by, by means of; during, for*.
- Peractus, a, um, part.: fr.
- Per-ägo, ëre, ègi, actum, a., *to finish*.
- Per-cipio, ëre, cëpi, ceptum, a., (capio), *to obtain, receive*.
- Per-côlo, ëre, ui, cultum, a., *to perfect, to cultivate thoroughly*.
- Percontor, ãri, ãtus sum, dep., *to ask, inquire*.
- Percultus, a, um, part., (percolo), *thoroughly cultivated, well dressed*.
- Percussus, a, um, part.: fr.
- Per-cütio, ëre, cussi, cussum, a., (quatio), *to strike, kill*: securi percutere, *to behead*.
- Per-dò, ëre, didi, ditum, *to destroy; to lose*.
- Per-dûco, ëre, xi, etum, a., *to conduct; to extend*.
- Peregrinans, tis, part., *going abroad: avis, a bird of passage*: fr.
- Peregrinor, ãri, ãtus suni, dep., *to go abroad*.
- Perferendus, a, um, part., *to be carried*: fr.
- Perfèro, ferre, tüli, lätum, a. irr., *to bear, carry*.
- Perficio, ëre, èci, ectum, a., (-facio), *to perform, execute*.
- Pergamum, i, n., or -us, i, m., *Pergamus*, a city of Asia Minor.
- Periculösus, a, um, adj., *dangerous*: fr.
- Periculum, i, n., *danger*.
- Per-imo, ëre, èmi, emptum, a., (-emo), *to destroy, slay, kill*.
- Peritus, a, um, adj., *versed or skilled in*.
- Per-lustro, ãre, ãvi, ãtum, a., *to travel through, traverse*.
- Per-pendo, ëre, pendi, pensum, a., *to weigh, consider*.
- Per-petro, ãre, ãvi, ãtum, a., (patro), *to accomplish, perform*.
- Perpetuò, adv., (perpetuus), *always, ever, forever*.
- Perpetuus, a, um, adj., (per-peto), *continuing, constant, perpetual*.
- Persa, se, m., *a Persian*.
- Per-séquor, i, cütus sum, dep., *to follow, pursue*.
- Persevero, ãre, ãvi, ãtum, n., *to persevere, persist*.
- Persia, se, f., *Persia*.
- Per-suadeo, ëre, äai, äsum, a., *to persuade*.
- Per-timesco, ëre, mui, a., *to fear greatly*.

- Perturbatus, a, um, part. : fr.  
 Per-turbo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., *to disturb, trouble.*  
 Per-vénio, ire, ēni, entum, n., *to come to, arrive at, come.*  
 Pes, pedis, m., *a foot.*  
 Pessimus, a, um, adj., sup. of malus, Less. 40, 3, *worst, very bad, very mischievous.*  
 Peto, ēre, ivi, itum, a., *to ask, seek, solicit; to go to, travel to.*  
 Pharsao, ḥnis, m., *Pharaoh.*  
 Philippus, i, m., *Philip.*  
 Philosophia, Ȣ, f., *philosophy* : fr.  
 Philosophus, i, m., *a philosopher.*  
 Phœbus, i, m., *Phœbus.*  
 Phrygia, a, um, adj., *of Phrygia, Phrygian.* Phrygii, Ȣrum, m. plur., *the Phrygians.*  
 Pica, Ȣ, f., *a magpie.*  
 Picis, &c., see Pix.  
 Pictura, Ȣ, f., (*pingo, to paint*), *painting, the art of painting.*  
 Pietas, atis, f., (*plus*), *piety, affection.*  
 Piget, uit, impers., *it grieves, pains, disgusts:* me piget, *I grieve, I am sorry.*  
 Pilus, i, m., *a hair.*  
 Pincerna, Ȣ, m., *a cup-bearer, butler.*  
 Pindarūs, i, m., *Pindar, a Greek poet.*  
 Pinguis, e, adj., *fat.*  
 Pinna, Ȣ, f., *a fin.*  
 Pinus, i, & ūs, f., *the pine.*  
 Pirata, Ȣ, m., *a pirate.*  
 Piscis, is, m., *a fish.*  
 Pisistratus, i, m., *Pisistratus, an Athenian ruler.*  
 Pistor, ḥris, m., *a baker.*  
 Pius, a, um, adj., *pious, dutiful.*  
 Pix, picis, f., *pitch.*  
 Placeo, ēre, ui, itum, n., *to please, be pleasing.*  
 Placide, adv., (*placidus, calm*), *calmly, quietly.*  
 Planctus, ūs, m., (*plango, walling,* *lamentation.*)  
 Planta, Ȣ, f., *a plant.*  
 Platānus, i, f., *the plane-tree.*  
 Plato, ḥnis, m., *Plato, a Grecian philosopher.*
- Plaustrum, i, n., *a wagon.*  
 Plebs, is, f., *the common people, the commons, the people.*  
 Plenus, a, um, adj., *full.*  
 Plerūmque, adv., sup. of plurimū, *very much: plurimū posse, to be very powerful.*  
 Plurimus, a, um, adj., sup. of multū, *Less. 40, 3, most, very many.*  
 Plus, pluris, adj., comp. of multus, Less. 40, 3, & 36, 3: also, adv., comp. of multū, *more.*  
 Poculum, i, n., *a cup.*  
 Poena, Ȣ, f., *punishment.*  
 Pœnitio, ēre, ui, n. & a., *to repent.*  
 Pœnitet, uit, impers., *it repents.* Less. 107.  
 Pœnus, i, m., *a Carthaginian.*  
 Poëta, Ȣ, m., *a poet.*  
 Pompeius, i, m., (*Cn.*), *Cn. Pompey, a Roman general.*  
 Pomponius, i, m. p. n., *Pomponius.*  
 Pomum, i, n., *an apple.*  
 Pono, ēre, posui, positum, a., *to place, put.*  
 Pontus, i, m., *the sea.*  
 Poposci, &c., see Posco.  
 Populus, i, m., *a people; the people, in distinction from the magistrates.*  
 Por-rigo, ēre, rexī, rectum, a., (*progresso*), *to reach, extend; to offer, present.*  
 Porro, adv., *moreover, then.*  
 Porta, Ȣ, f., *a gate.*  
 Portendo, ēre, di, tum, a., *to portend, beloken, foreshow.*  
 Portia, Ȣ, f. p. n., *Portia.*  
 Porto, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., *to carry, bear, convey.*  
 Portus, ūs, m., *a harbor.*  
 Posco, ēre, poposci, a., *to demand.*  
 Positus, a, um, part., (*pono.*)  
 Possessio, ḥnis, f., (*possideo, to possess*), *a possession, property.*  
 Possum, posse, potui, n. irr., (*potissimum*), Less. 77, *I can, am able.*  
 Post, prep. with acc., *after, behind.*  
 Post, adv., *after.*  
 Postea, adv., (-is), *afterward.*  
 Posterus, a, um, adj., (*post*), comp.

- posterior, sup. postrēmus, hind, coming after.
- Posthūmus, i, m., *Posthumus*.
- Post-quam, adv., after. With *postquam* the perfect is often to be translated by the pluperfect.
- Postrēmus, a, um, adj., sup. of postērus, hindmost, last.
- Postūlo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., (posco), to ask, demand.
- Potena, tis, adj., (possum), able, powerful.
- Potēram, &c., see Possum.
- Potestas, atis, f., (possum), power.
- Potio, ônis, f., (poto, to drink), drink.
- Potior, iri, itus sum, dep., (potis, able), to gain, acquire, possess.
- Potissimum, adv., sup. of potiùs, especially.
- Potitus, a, um, part., (potior).
- Potiùs, adv., rather.
- Præ, prep. with abl., before, on account of, more than.
- Præbeo, ēre, ui, itum, a., (præhabeo), to give, supply, furnish: h.
- Præbitus, a, um, part.
- Præcepis, cipitio, adj., (præ-caput), headlong, swift, rapid.
- Præceptum, i, n., a precept: fr.
- Præ-cipio, ēre, épī, eptum, a., (capio), to command: h.
- Præcipuum, a, um, adj., peculiar, remarkable.
- Præ-clarus, a, um, adj., excellent, noble.
- Præ-ditus, a, um, adj., (do), endued with, furnished with, possessed of.
- Præ-fectus, i, m., an overseer, governor, chief: fr.
- Præ-ficio, ēre, &c., ectum, a., (præfacio), to set over, appoint to the command of.
- Præ-mitto, ēre, isi, issum, a., to send forward.
- Præmio, i, n., a reward.
- Præ-nō, ēre, ūvi, ūtum, a., to forswear.
- Præ-pōr., ēre, osul, ositum, a., to place before, prefer, value more.
- Præ-socio, īre, īvi, ītum, a., to foreknow, foresee.
- Presertim, adv., (præ-sero), especially.
- Præsidium, i, n., (præses, a defender), a defence, protection.
- Præstabilla, e, adj., ior, excellent: fr.
- Præ-sto, ēre, iti, a., to do, perform; to bestow. Præstat, impers., it is better.
- Præ-sum, esse, fui, n. irr., to preside or rule over.
- Præter, prep. with acc., except.
- Præter eo, īre, īvi, ītum, n. irr., to pass by: h.
- Præteritus, a, um, part., past.
- Prætor, ôris, m., (præ-eo), a prætor, a judge.
- Pratum, i, n., a meadow.
- Precia, &c., see Prex.
- Precor, āri, ātus sum, dep., to pray, entreat: bene precari, to invoke blessings upon, to bless.
- Prehendo, ēre, di, sum, a., to seize, catch, lay hold of: h.
- Prehensus, a, um, part., seized, caught.
- Præmo, ēre, pressi, pressum, a., to press, straiten, distress.
- Pretiōsus, a, um, adj., precious: h.
- Pretium, i, n., price.
- Prex, precis, f., not used in nom. and gen. sing., a prayer, entreaty.
- Primō, adv., at first: and
- Primū, adv., first: fr.
- Primus, a, um, adj., sup. of prior first.
- Princeptis, ipis, m. & f., (primus capio), a prince, ruler, governor.
- Prior, us, Gen. ôris, adj. comp., former, first.
- Priacus, a, um, adj., ancient, old.
- Pristinus, a, um, adj., ancient, old, former.
- Prius, adv., before, previously: prius quam or priusquam, before.
- Pro, prep. with abl., for, instead of.
- Pro, or Proh, interj., O!
- Probe, adv., (probos), well.
- Probo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., (id.), to approve.
- Probosca, idis, f., the trunk, proboscis.
- Procas, w, m., *Procas*.

- Pro-cēdo, ēre, essi, essum, n., *to proceed, advance, go forth.*  
 Procella, ēs, f., *a storm, tempest.*  
 Procul, adv., *at a distance, far.*  
 Prodīcio, ūnis, f., (prodo), *treachery.*  
 Prēlīum, i, n., *a battle, engagement.*  
 Profectus, a, um, part., (proficis-  
cor), *having set out.*  
 Pro-fēro, ferre, tūlī, lātum, a., *to bring or put forth.*  
 Proficis-*cor*, i, prefectus sum, dep.,  
to set out, go, depart, come.  
 Pro-gredior, i, gressus sum, dep. n.,  
to advance, proceed.  
 Pro-jicio, ēre, ēci, ectum, a., (ja-  
cio), *to throw, cast.*  
 Pro-mitto, ēre, īsi, issum, a., *to promise:* h.  
 Promissum, i, n., *a promise.*  
 Pronus, a, um, adj., *bowing down,*  
*prone.*  
 Prope, prep. with acc., *near to,*  
*hard by;* also adv., *near, nearly:*  
comp. propiūs, sup. proximē.  
 Propēro, āre, āvi, ātum, a. & n., *to hasten, make haste.*  
 Propitius, a, um, adj., *favorable,*  
*propitious.*  
 Propriūs, adv., comp. of prope,  
*nearer.*  
 Propter, prep. with acc., *on ac-  
count of.*  
 Prorsus, adv., *entirely:* prorsus  
non, *not at all.*  
 Prosperē, adv., *prosperously, well.*  
 Pro-sum, prodesse, profūl, n. irr.,  
Less. 75, 4, *to profit.*  
 Pro-tēgo, ēre, xi, ctum, a., *to cover,*  
*protect.*  
 Protinus, adv., *directly, immedi-  
ately.*  
 Protūli, &c., see Profero.  
 Providentia, ēs, f., *foresight, provi-  
dence:* fr.  
 Pro-video, ēre, idl, īsum, a. & n.,  
to provide for: h.  
 Providus, a, um, adj., *cautious, cir-  
cum-spect.*  
 Pro-vōco, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to chal-  
lenge.*  
 Proximē, adv., sup. of prope, *very  
near.* It is followed by the ac-  
cusative like prope.
- Proximus, a, um, adj., sup. of pro-  
pior, nearer, *nearest or next, very  
near.*  
 Prudens, tis, adj., ior, issimus,  
(contracted from providens), *skil-  
ful, expert, prudent, wise:* h.  
 Prudentia, ēs, f., *prudence, sagacity.*  
 Publicus, a, um, adj., (popūlus),  
*public.*  
 Publius, i, m., *Publius.*  
 Pudet, uit, impers., *it shames.*  
Less. 107.  
 Puerilla, ēs, f., *a girl.*  
 Puer, i, m., *a boy.*  
 Pugna, ēs, f., *a battle, contest:* fr.  
 Pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to fight.*  
 Pulcher, chra, chrum, adj. ior, er-  
rīmūs, *beautiful.*  
 Pullus, i, m., *a chicken.*  
 Pulmo, ūnis, m., *the lungs.*  
 Puleus, a, um, part., (pello).  
 Pulvis, ēris, m. & f., *dust.*  
 Pumilio, ūnis, m., *a dwarf.*  
 Punica, ēs, f., *the pomegranate.*  
 Punio, ire, īvi, ītum, a., *to punish:* h.  
 Punitus, a, um, part.  
 Purgo, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to make  
clean, excuse, justify.*  
 Puro, a, um, adj., *pure.*  
 Puteus, i, m., *a well, pit.*  
 Putiphār, ārls, m., *Potiphar.*  
 Puto, āre, āvi, ātum, a., *to think,*  
*suppose.*  
 Putresco, ēre, trui, n., *to purify.*  
 Pyramis, īdis, f., *a pyramid.*  
 Pyrrhus, i, m., *Pyrrhus, a king of  
Epirus.*
- Q.
- Quadrīga, ēs, f., *a four-horse-char-  
iot.*  
 Quero, ēre, sīvi, sītum, a., *to seek,*  
*ask:* pass. impers. querītur a  
me, *it is asked of me, i. e., I am  
asked.*  
 Queso, def. verb. *I pray, I beg.*  
 Questor, īrls, m. (querō), *a ques-  
tor.*  
 Qualis, a, adj., *of what kind or na-  
ture, what:* talis-qualis, such-as.  
 Quām, conj., *than, as:* adv..  
how.

**Quam-ōb-res**, adv., *wherefore, for which cause.*

**Quantus**, a., um, adj., *how great, how much, as great.* Quantus, with verbs of valuing &c., *how high or as high.*

**Quare**, adv., (*que-res*), *wherefore, why.*

**Quasi**, conj., *as if.*

**Quatio**, ēre,—*quassum*, a., *to shake, toss violently.*

**Quatuor**, num. adj. ind., *four.*

**Que**, enclitic conj., *quid.* **Lesson** 82, 8, (4).

**Quercus**, ūl, *an oak.*

**Queror**, i., *questus sum, dep., to complain, lament: h.*

**Questus**, a., um, part.

**Qui**, que, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what: quo—eo, with comparatives, by how much—by so much; or the—the. Is—qui, with subj., such—as, one—who.*

**Quia**, conj., *because.*

**Quid**, see Quis.

**Quidam**, quædam, quoddam *and* quiddam, Gen. cujusdam, &c., adj. pron., *a certain, a certain one, one.*

**Quidem**, conj., *indeed.*

**Quidquid**, see Quæqua.

**Quies**, ētia, f., *rest, sleep: h.*

**Quiesco**, ēre, ēvi, ētum, n., *to rest.*

**Quin**, conj., *that not, but that, that. It may sometimes be translated as not, and the subjunctive following it by the infinitive.*

**Quinam** or **quisnam**, quænam, quodnam, or quidnam, Gen. cujusnam, &c., interrogative pron., *who? which? what?*

**Quindécim**, num. adj. ind., (*quinque-decem*), *fleken.*

**Quinque**, num. adj. ind., *fve.*

**Quintus**, l, m p. n. *Quintus.*

**Quis** or **qui**, que, quod or quid, G. cuius, &c., interrogative pron., *who? which? what?—Quis is also sometimes used for aliquis, any one.*

**Quæquam**, quæquam, quidquam or quicquam, Gen. cujusquam, adj. pron., *any, any one*

**Quia-que**, quæque, quodque *or* quidque, Gen. cujusque, adj. pron., *every, every one; each, each one.*

**Quis-quis**, —quidquid, def. adj. pron., *whoever, whatever.*

**Qui-via**, quævia, quodvia *or* quid via, Gen. cujusvia, adj. pron., *any, every.*

**Quid**, adv., *whither: conj., that.*

**Quo-ad**, adv., *until.*

**Quod**, rel. pron., *which, see Qui.*

**Quod**, conj., *that, because.*

**Quo-minus**, conj., *that not, but that, after verba of hindering.* L. 133.

**Quo-modo**, adv. & conj., *how.*

**Quondam**, adv., *once, formerly.*

**Quoniam**, conj., *(quum-jam), since.*

**Quoque**, see Quisque.

**Quodque**, conj., *also.*

**Quorsum**, adv., *(quo-versum), whither? to what?*

**Quot**, adj. plur. ind., *how many; tot—quot, as many—as: tot is often omitted before quot.*

**Quousque**, adv., *how long, how far.*

**Quum** or **Cum**, adv. & conj., *when, since.*

## R.

**Radicitus**, adv., *(radix, a root), by the roots.*

**Rapido**, a, um, adj., *rapid, swift: fr.*

**Rapio**, ēre, ui, tum, a., *to rob; to hurry, hurry away.*

**Rarus**, a, um, adj., *rare, scarce.*

**Ratio**, ōnis, f., *reason.*

**Re**-red, *an inseparable particle, signifying, again, back, &c.*

**Re-cēdo**, ēre, cessi, cessum, n., *to retire, withdraw.*

**Re-cido**, ēre, idī, n., *(-cado), to fall.*

**Re-cipio**, ēre, ēpi, eptum, a., *(capio), to receive: animum recipere, to come to one's self; to recover from one's amazement.*

**Re-condo**, ēre, didi, dītum, a., *to lay up; to conceal.*

**Recordor**, ēri, ētus sum, dep., *to call to mind, recollect.*

**Recta**, adv., *(rectus), straight, straight forward.*

- Rectè, adv., (id.), *rightly, correctly, well.*
- Rectum, i, n., *right, rectitude*: fr. Rectus, a, um, adj., *right, straight, erect.*
- Redo, ēre, didi, dítum, a., *to restore.*
- Redeo, īre, il, ītum, n. irr., *to return.*
- Reduco, ēre, xi, ctum, a., *to bring back, restore.*
- Red-undo, īre, īvi, ītum, n., *to overflow, abound in.*
- Re-féro, ferre, tūl, lātum, a. irr., *to carry or bring back: to answer, reply*: h.
- Refert, retulit, &c., *impers. it concerns, is of importance: nihil refert, it is of no importance.*
- Re-fūgio, ēre, ügl, ugítum, n., *to flee back, retreat.*
- Regis, &c., see Rex.
- Regio, önis, f., *a region, district, country*: fr.
- Rego, ēre, xi, ctum, a., *to rule, govern.*
- Regno, īre, īvi, ītum, a., *to reign: fr.*
- Regnum, i, n., *a kingdom.*
- Re-grēdior, i, gressus sum, dep., (gradior), *to return: h.*
- Regressus, a, um, part., *having returned.*
- Re-linquo, ēre, liqui, lictum, a., *to leave: h.*
- Reliquus, a, um, adj., *remaining, the rest, the other: nihil reliquist, there is nothing left.*
- Re-mâneo, ēre, si, sum, n., *to stay, remain.*
- Reminiscor, i, dep., *to remember, recollect.*
- Re-mitto, ēre, misi, missum, a., *to send again, send back.*
- Remus, i, m., *an oar.*
- Remus, i, m., *Remus, the twin brother of Romulus.*
- Re-pendo, ēre, di, sum, a., *to return, repay.*
- Repentè, adv., (repens), *suddenly.*
- Re-pério, īre, péri, pertum, a., (pario), *to find: h.*
- Repertus, a, um, part., *found.*
- Re-pôno, īre, osui, ositum, a., *to replace, restore.*
- Re-porto, īre, īvi, ītum, a., *to bring back.*
- Re-prehendo, īre, di, sum, a., *to blame, censure*: h.
- Reprehensio, önis, f., *censure, re-proof.*
- Re-quiesco, īre, īvi, ītum, n., *to rest.*
- Res, rel, f., *a thing, an affair, a matter, an event, property: res ipsa, in fact.*
- Re-sideo, īre, sđdi, sessum, n., (sedeo), *to remain, rest.*
- Re-sisto, īre, stiti, n., *to oppose, resist.*
- Re-spondeo, īre, di, sum, a., *to answer, reply.*
- Re-publica, republice, f., *the state, republic.* The word is compounded of *res* and *publica*, the fem. gender of *publice*, see compound nouns, Less. 27, 1.
- Re-stituo, īre, ui, ītum, a., (statuo), *to restore.*
- Re-sto, īre, titi, n., *to remain.*
- Retentus, a, um, part.: fr.
- Re-tineo, īre, ül, tentum, a., (teneo), *to retain, keep.*
- Retrorsum, adv., (contracted from retro-versum), *backward, back.*
- Retüli, etc., see Reféro.
- Reversa, a, um, part.: fr.
- Re-vortor, i, sus sum, dep., *to return.*
- Re-vôco, īre, īvi, ītum, a., *to recall.*
- Rex, regis, m., *a king.*
- Rhea, w, f., *Rhea. Rhea Silvia, the mother of Romulus.*
- Rhenus, i, m., *the Rhine.*
- Rideo, īre, isi, isum, n., *to laugh.*
- Robur, öris, n., *strength.*
- Rogane, tis, part., (rogo), *asking, requesting.*
- Rogatus, a, um, part., (rogo), *being asked.*
- Rogito, īre, īvi, ītum, a. freq. v., (rogo), *to ask often, to ask.*
- Rogo, īre, īvi, ītum, a., *to ask, ask for, request.*
- Roma, w, f., *Rome*: h.

Româicus, a, um, adj., Roman.  
 Româica, i, m., a Roman.  
 Româicus, i, m., Româicus, the founder of Rome.  
 Rōm, a, f., the rose.  
 Rōstrum, i, n., a beak; bill.  
 Raben, ônia, m., p. n., Raven.  
 Ragio, ire, n., to roar.  
 Rao, ère, si, ôtum, n., to fall, rush.  
 Rapes, ia, f., a rock.  
 Rursum or rursum, adv., again.  
 Rus, ruria, a, um, the country: h.  
 Rusticus, a, um, adj., rustic. Rusticus, i, m., a countryman.

## 8.

Sacca, i, m., a sack, bag.  
 Sacer, era, crum, adj., sacred: h.  
 Sacerdos, ôtia, m. & f., a priest.  
 Sepe, adv., often.  
 Sagitta, a, f., an arrow.  
 Saguntini, ôrum, m. plur., the Saguntines.  
 Salus, a, um, adj., (sal), salt.  
 Salus, ôtia, f., (salvus), safety: h.  
 Saluto, ire, àvi, ôtum, a., to salute,  
     greet, pay one's respects to.  
 Salvus, a, um, adj., safe, well.  
 Samii, ôrum, m. plur., the Samians.  
 Sangula, inia, m., blood.  
 Sapienta, tia, adj., (sapio), ior, insimma, wise: subst., a wise man : h.  
 Sapienter, adv., wisely: &  
 Sapientia, a, f., wisdom.  
 Sapio, ère, ivi, n., to be wise.  
 Satidatua, a, um, part., satisfied: fr.  
 Satio, ire, àvi, ôtum, a., to satiate,  
     satisfy: fr.  
 Satis, indeci, adj. & adv., enough;  
     sufficiently.  
 Satifacio, ère, ôci, actum, a., to satisfy.  
 Saturnus, i, m., Saturn. Orte Saturno, O son of Saturn, i. e., Jupiter.  
 Saturo, ire, àvi, ôtum, a., (satur, full), to satiate, cloy, weary.  
 Satus, a, um, part., (sero), produced, born.  
 Scatoe, ère, n., to abound in, swarm with.  
 Scelus, rris, n., a crime.

Schola, a, f., a school.  
 Scientia, a, f., (sciens fr. scio), knowledge, science.  
 Scilicet, adv., (scio-lacet), namely, to wit.  
 Scindo, ère, scidi, scissum, a., to tear, rend.  
 Scio, ire, ivi, ôtum, a., to know.  
 Scipio, ônia, m., Scipio.  
 Sciscitor, ari, ôtus sum, dep., (scisco), to ask, inquire: fr.  
 Scitor, ari, ôtus sum, dep., (scio), to ask, inquire, consult.  
 Scopulua, i, m., a rock.  
 Scopus, i, m., a mark.  
 Scorpio, ônia, m., a scorpion.  
 Scribo, ère, psi, ptum, a., to write: hence  
 Scripturus, a, um, part., about to write.  
 Scrutor, ari, ôtus sum, dep., to search.  
 Scyphus, i, m., a cup, goblet.  
 Se, see Sul.  
 Secundò, adv., the second time: fr.  
 Secundus, a, um, adj., the second.  
 Securia, ia, f., an axe.  
 Secutirus, a, um, part., (sequor), about to follow.  
 Sectitus, a, um, part., (sequor), followed.  
 Sed, conj., but.  
 Sedeo, ère, sedi, sessum, n., to sit: h.  
 Sede, ia, f., a seat.  
 Sedatio, ônia, f., discord, sedition.  
 Semel, adv., once.  
 Semper, adv., always: h.  
 Sempiternus, a, um, adj., eternal, everlasting.  
 Sempronia, a, f., Sempronia.  
 Senatus, ôs, m., (senex), a senate.  
 Senectus, ôtis, f., old age: fr.  
 Senex, senis, adj., old: subst., an old man.  
 Seni, a, distr. num. adj., (sex), six, six each.  
 Senium, i, n., (senex), old age.  
 Sensi, d.c., see Sentio.  
 Sensus, ôs, m., (sentio), sense; a sense, perception.  
 Sententia, a, f., an opinion: fr.  
 Sentio, ire, el, sum, n., to perceive.  
 Sepolio, ire, ivi, pultum, a., to bury.

- Septem**, num. adj. ind., *seven*.  
**Septimus**, i, m. p. n., *Septimus*.  
**Sepulcrum**, i, n., (*sepelio*), *a grave, sepulchre*.  
**Sequāni**, òrum, m. pl., *the Sequani*, a Gallic people.  
**Sequo**, i, cütus sum, dep., *to follow, pursue*.  
**Serēnus**, a, um, adj., *clear, bright, calm, serene*.  
**Sermo**, ònia, m., *a speech; speech, language, discourse, conversation*.  
**Sero**, ère, sèvi, sàtum, a., *to sow, plant*.  
**Serò**, adv., *too late*.  
**Serpens**, tis, m. & f., *a serpent*.  
**Servitus**, ùtia, f., (*servus*), *slavery, bondage*.  
**Servo**, ère, àvi, àtum, a., *to keep, maintain, preserve; keep in safety*.  
**Servus**, i, m., *a slave, servant*.  
**Seu**, conj., *or*.  
**Severitas**, àtis, f., (*sevērus*, *severe*), *severity*.  
**Si**, conj., *if*.  
**Sic**, adv., *so, thus*.  
**Sicilia**, w, f., *Sicily*.  
**Sicyonius**, a, um, adj., *Sicyonian, of Sicyon*.  
**Significo**, ère, àvi, àtum, a., (*signum-facio*), *to give notice, signify*.  
**Sileo**, ère, u, n., *to be silent*.  
**Silvia**, w, f., *Silvia*. Rhea Silvia, *the mother of Romulus*.  
**Silvius**, ii, m., *Silvius*.  
**Sim**, &c., see *Sum*.  
**Simeon**, ònla, m., *Simeon*.  
**Similia**, e, adj., *like*: h.  
**Similitudo**, inis, f., *resemblance*: *similitudo cum Deo, a likeness to God*.  
**Simul**, adv., *together, at the same time*.  
**Sincérus**, a, um, adj., *sincere*.  
**Sine**, prep. with abl., *without*.  
**Singularis**, e, adj., (*singüli*), *singular, peculiar*.  
**Sino**, ère, sivi, a., *to permū, suffer*.  
**Siquis** or **Si quis**, si qua, si quod or si quid, Gen. si cujus, adj. pron., if any.  
**Sitis**, ls, f., *thirst*.  
**Sive**, conj., *or*.
- Socius**, i, m., *a companion, associate, ally*.  
**Socrates**, is, m., *Socrates*, a Grecian philosopher.  
**Sol**, solia, m., *the sun*.  
**Soleo**, ère, solitus sum, n. pass., *to be accustomed or wont*. Less. 79, N. : h.  
**Solitus**, a, um, part. & adj., *usual*.  
**Solitum**, i, n., *habit, ordinary custom*:—solito, abl. after a comparative, *than usual*. Less. 119, l.  
**Solicitudo**, inis, f., (*solicitus, anxious*), *anxiety, solicitude*.  
**Solon**, ònis, m., *Solon*, the Athenian lawgiver.  
**Solum**, i, n., *the ground, soil, earth*.  
**Solum**, adv., *only, alone*: fr.  
**Solus**, a, um, G. solius, Less. 32, 1, adj., *alone, only*.  
**Somniator**, òris, m., (*somnio*), *a dreamer*.  
**Somnium**, i, n., (*somnus*), *a dream: hence*  
**Somnio**, ère, àvi, àtum, n., *a dream*.  
**Somnus**, i, m., *sleep*: in somniis, in sleep.  
**Sonus**, i, m., *a sound*.  
**Sorbeo**, ère, ul, a., *to suck, suck in, absorb*.  
**Soror**, òris, f., *a sister*.  
**Specto**, ère, àvi, àtum, a., *to see; to look to or towards, point towards, face; to tend, point, refer*.  
**Spelunca**, w, f., *a cave*.  
**Spero**, ère, àvi, àtum, a., *to hope*: h.  
**Spes**, ei, f., *hope*.  
**Spica**, w, f., *an ear of corn*.  
**Splendidus**, a, um, adj., ior, issimus, (*splendeo*), *bright, splendid, magnificent*.  
**Spolio**, ère, àvi, àtum, a., (*spolium*), *to plunder; to deprive*.  
**Spondeo**, ère, spopondi, sponsum, a., *to promise, pledge one's self*.  
**Spopondi**, &c., see *Spondeo*.  
**Stadium**, i, n., *a furlong; a race-course*.  
**Stans**, tis, part., (*sto*), *standing*.  
**Statim**, adv., (*sto*), *immediately*.  
**Stella**, w, f., *a star*.  
**Sto**, ère, stöti, stäturn, n., *to stand*.

- Struthiocamelus, i, m., *an ostrich*.  
 Studium, i, n., (*studeo*), *desire*.  
 Stultus, a, um, adj., *foolish*.  
 Sundeo, ēre, a, sum, n. & a., *to advise*.  
 Sub, prep. with acc. or abl., *under*.  
 In composition its b is sometimes assimilated before c, f, g, m, p, & r; before c, p, and t, it is sometimes changed to s, and before s impure it is dropped.  
 Sub-igo, ēre, ēgi, actum, a., (-ago), *to subdue*.  
 Sub-jicio, ēre, jēci, *jectum*, a., (-jacio), *to subject, make subject*.  
 Sub-ripiō, ēre, ui, *reptum*, a., (-ripiō), *to steal*.  
 Subsidium, i, n., (*subideo*), *help, relief*.  
 Sub-sisto, ēre, stīti, a. & n., *to stop*.  
 Suc-cēdo, ēre, cessi, *cessum*, n., (*sub*), *to succeed, come after*: *to prosper, succeed*.  
 Suc-cresco, ēre, ēvi, n., (*sub*), *to grow beneath, grow up after*.  
 Suf-ficio, ēre, ēci, *octum*, n., (*sub-facio*), *to be sufficient, suffice*.  
 Suffragium, i, n., *a vote, suffrage*.  
 Sui, subst. pron., *of himself, &c.*  
 Less. 41, 4.  
 Sulmo, ònis, m., *Sulmo*, a town of Italy.  
 Sum, esse, ful, futūra, n. irr.,  
 Less. 62, &c., *to be*. *Sunt qui*  
*may be translated some: non est*  
*quod, there is no reason why*.  
 Summus, a, um, adj. sup. of supērus, Less 40, 3, *highest, greatest, supreme*.  
 Sumo<sup>r</sup> ēre, mpsi, mptum, a., *to take*.  
 Supellex, lectilis, f., *furniture*.  
 Super, prep. with acc. or abl., *over, on, at, during*.  
 Superbus, a, um, adj., *proud*.  
 Superbus, i, m., *Superbus or the Proud*, a surname of Tarquin.  
 Superstes, Itie, adj., (*super-sto*), *surviving, outliving*: it takes the dative of the person outlived.  
 Super-sum, esse, ful, n. irr., *to remain, survive*.
- Supērus, a, um, adj., *high, upper*.  
 Less. 40, 3.  
 Super-vacuus, a, um, adj., *superfluous, needless*.  
 Super-vēniō, īre, vēni, *ventum, n.*, *to come upon*.  
 Supedito, īre, īvi, ītum, a. & n., *to furnish, supply*: fr.  
 Sup-pōto, ēre, īvi, itum, n., *to be at hand; to be sufficient*.  
 Supplex, īcīs, adj., (*sub-pllico*), *suppliant*.  
 Supplicatio, ònis, f., (*supplico*), a *thanksgiving*.  
 Supplicium, i, n., (*supplex*), *punishment*.  
 Supra, prep. with acc., *above, more than*.  
 Suprēmus, a, um, adj., sup. of supērus, Less. 40, 3, *highest*.  
 Surgo, ēre, rexī, rectum, n., *to rise*.  
 Su-pendo, ēre, di, sum, a., (*sub*), *to hang, hang up*: h.  
 Suspensus, a, um, part., *suspended, hanging*.  
 Sustento, īre, īvi, ītum, a., (*sustineo*), *to uphold, support, sustain*.  
 Suus, a, um, poss. adj. pron., (*sui*), *his, her, its, their*.  
 Syracusæ, òrum, f. plur., *Syracuse*.
- T.
- Taceo, ēre, ui, ītum, n., *to be silent*: h.  
 Tacitus, a, um, adj., *silent*; also *for tacitē, in silence*.  
 Tædet, uit, impers., *it tires*; me tædet, *I am weary of*.  
 Talentum, i, n., *a talent*.  
 Talis, e, adj., *such*: talis—qualia,  
*such—as*.  
 Tam, adv., *so*.  
 Tamen, conj., *yet, notwithstanding*.  
 Tandem, adv., *at length*.  
 Tanquam or tamquam, conj., *as if*.  
 Tantopēre, adv., (*tantus-opus*), *so much*.  
 Tantus, a, um, adj., (*tam*), *so great, so much, such*: tantum abest, ut furāti simus, *so far are we from having stolen*.

- Tarquinius, i, m., *Tarquin*, a king of Rome.  
 Tarquinii, òrum, m., *Tarquinii*, a town of Italy.  
 Tarraco, ònis, f., *Tarragona*, a town of Spain.  
 Tauri, òrum, m. plur., *the Tauri*, a people of Thrace.  
 Taurus, i, m., *a bull*.  
 Tego, ère, *texi, tectum, a.*, *to cover, conceal*.  
 Telum, i, n., *a dart, javelin; the proboscis of an insect*.  
 Temére, adv., *rashly*: h.  
 Temeritas, àtis, f., *audacity*.  
 Tempestas, àtis, f., (*tempus*), *time, a season; a storm*.  
 Tempium, i, n., *a temple*.  
 Tempus, òris, n., *time*.  
 Teneo, ère, *ui, tum, a.*, *to hold, keep*.  
 Tener, èra, òrum, adj., *tender, delicate*.  
 Tento, ère, àv, àtum, a., (*tendo*), *to try, attempt*.  
 Tenus, prep. with abl., *up to, as far as*.  
 Terra, æ, f., *the earth; a country*.  
 Terreo, ère, *ui, itum, a.*, *to terrify, frighten*: h.  
 Territus, a, um, part.: and  
 Terror, òris, m., *terror*.  
 Tertius, a, um, num. adj., (*ter, thrice*), *third*.  
 Teator, àri, àtum sum, dep., *to testify; to attest*.  
 Teutoni, òrum, m. plur., *the Teutoni*, a German people.  
 Thales, is, m., *Thales*, a Grecian philosopher.  
 Theba, àrum, f., *Thebes*, a Grecian city.  
 Themistocles, is, m., *Themistocles*, an Athenian general.  
 Theocritus, i, m., *Theocritus*, a Sicilian poet.  
 Thermopýla, àrum, f. plur., *Thermopyla*.  
 Thesaurus, i, m., *a treasure; a treasury*.  
 Thessalonica, æ, f., *Thessalonica*.  
 Tiberias, àdis, f., *Tiberias*, a town of Galilee.  
 Tiberius, i, m., *Tiberius*, a Roman emperor.  
 Tibi, see *Tu*.  
 Timeo, ère, ui, a. & n., *to fear*: h.  
 Timidus, a, um, adj., *timid, timorous*.  
 Timoleon, tis, m., *Timoleon*, a Corinthian general.  
 Timor, òris, m., (*timeo*), *fear*.  
 Tingo, ère, xi, ctum, a., *to stain*.  
 Titus, i, m. p. n., *Title*.  
 Toga, ès, f., *a gown, robe*.  
 Tollo, ère, tolli, a., *to raise, lift up*.  
 Tondeo, ère, totundi, tonsum, a., *to shear*.  
 Torques, is, m. & f., *a chain*.  
 Torridus, a, um, adj., (*torreo, to roast*), *hot, sultry*.  
 Tot, adj. plur. ind., *so many*: h.  
 Totidem, adj. plur. ind., *as many*.  
 Totus, a, um, Gen. totius, adj., *all, the whole, whole*.  
 Trado, ère, didi, ditum, a., (*transdo*), *to deliver, commi, consign*.  
 Traho, ère, xi, ctum, a., *to draw, drag; to detain*.  
 Tranquillè, adv., *quietly, tranquil*ly: fr.  
 Tranquillus, a, um, adj., *tranquil, quiet*.  
 Trans, prep. with acc., *over, beyond*.  
 Trans-curto, ère, i, n. & a., *to pass over*.  
 Trans-eo, ire, ii, itum, n. & a. irr., *to pass over*.  
 Trans-féro, ferre, tull, latum, a., *to transfer, transport, remove, carry*.  
 Trecenti, æ, a, num. adj., (*tres-centum*), *three hundred*.  
 Tredécim, num. adj. ind., (*tres-decem*), *thirteen*.  
 Tremo, ère, ui, n., *to shake, tremble*.  
 Trea, tria, num. adj., *three*.  
 Tribùnus, i, m., *a tribune*.  
 Triennium, i, n., (*tres-annum*), *three years*.  
 Triginta, num. adj. ind., *thirty*.  
 Triticum, i, n., *wheat*.  
 Tristis, e, adj., ior, issimus, *sad, melancholy*.  
 Triumphus, i, m., *a triumph*.



- Vénio, ire, vénī, ventum, n., *to come*. *Venio* sometimes takes both the dative and the accusative with *in*; *venit mihi in mentem*, *it came into my mind*. Less. 112, 3, N.
- Ventúrus, a, um, part., *about to come*.
- Ventus, i, m., *the wind*.
- Ver, veris, n., *the spring*.
- Verbum, i, n., *a word*: in verba alicuius jurare, *to swear according to the words of any one, to take the oath prescribed by him*.
- Verē, adv., (*verus*), *truly*.
- Vereor, ēri, veritus sum, dep., *to fear, be afraid*.
- Veritas, ātis, f., (*verus*), *truth*.
- Verd, conj., (*verus*), *but*.
- Versicōlor, ūris, adj., (*verso-color*), *of diverse colors*.
- Versificātor, ūris, m., (*versus-facio*), *a versifier*.
- Versus, ūs, m., *a verse*.
- Verūn, conj., *but*; fr.
- Verus, a, um, adj., *true, real*: verum, i, n., *truth*.
- Vescor, i, dep., *to eat, subsist upon*.
- Vesper, ēris, m., *the evening*: abl. *vesp̄e or vesp̄eri*, *at evening*.
- Vesp̄era, ūs, f., *evening*.
- Vespertillo, ūnis, m., (*vesper*), *a bat*.
- Vestális, e, adj., (*Vesta*), *vestal, pertaining to the goddess Vesta*.
- Vester, tra, trum, poss. adj. pron., (*vos*), *your*.
- Vestigium, i, n., *a footprint, track*.
- Vestio, ire, īvi, itum, a., *to clothe, array*: fr.
- Vestis, i, f., *a garment, robe, clothes*.
- Vetus, ēris, adj., *old*.
- Via, ūs, f., *a way, road*.
- Vlātor, ūris, m., (*vlo, to go, fr. via*), *a traveler*.
- Vici, &c., see *Vinco*.
- Vicinūs, a, um, adj., *near*.
- Victoria, ūs, f., (*vinco*), *victory*.
- Victūrus, a, um, part., (*vivo*).
- Victus, ūs, m., (*id.*), *food, sustenance*.
- Victus, a, um, part., (*vinco*), *conquered, overcome*: victi, sc. homines, *the conquered*.
- Video, ēre, vidi, visum, a., *to see*.
- Videor, ēri, visus sum, pass., *to be seen*; *to seem, appear*.
- Viginti, num. adj. ind., *twenty*.
- Vilis, e, comp. ior, adj., *cheap, of low price*.
- Villa, ūs, f., *a farm-house*.
- Vinco, ēre, vici, victim, a., *to conquer, overcome*.
- Vinea, ūs, f., *a vineyard*: fr.
- Vinum, i, n., *wine*.
- Vir, viri, m., *a man, a husband*.
- Viree, see *Vis*.
- Virga, ūs, f., *a twig*.
- Virgo, inis, f., *a virgin, maid*.
- Viridia, e, adj., *green, verdant*.
- Virtus, ūtis, f., (*vir*), *virtue, valor, bravery*.
- Virus, i, n., *poison, venom*. N. & Ac., virus, Gen. viri, D. & Ab., viro.
- Via, ūs, f., Less. 21, *force, power, strength, quantity*. So in plur., *strength, power, force, vigor*.
- Via, see *Volo, velle*.
- Viso, ūre, si, sum, a., (*video*), *to see; visi*.
- Visus, a, um, part., (*video*).
- Vita, ūs, f., (*vivo*), *life*.
- Vitis, is, f., *a vine*.
- Vitium, i, n., *a fault, vice*.
- Vitreus, a, um, adj., *of glass*.
- Vivo, ēre, vixi, victim, n., *to live; to live or feed upon*.
- Vivus, a, um, adj., *alive, living*.
- Vix, adv., *scarcely*.
- Vixi, &c., see *Vivo*.
- Vocātus, a, um, part.: fr.
- Voco, āre, āvi, ātum, a., (*vox*), *to call, name; invite*.
- Volātus, ūs, m., *a flight*: fr.
- Volo, āre, āvi, ātum, n., *to fly*.
- Volo, velle, volui, a. irr., *to wish, be willing*: h.
- Volubilis, e, adj., (*volvo, to roll*) *rolling; changeable, fickle*.
- Voluntas, ātis, f., *will, wish*.
- Voluptas, ātis, f., *pleasure*.
- Vos, see *Tu*.
- Vox, vocis, f., *a voice*.
- Vulcānus, i, m., *Vulcan*.

Vulgāris, a, adj., *common* : fr.

Vulgus, i, n. & m., *the common people*.

Vulnēro, ēre, ēvi, ētum, a., (*vulnus*, a wound), *to wound, hurt*.

Vulpecūla, m, f., dim., *a little fox, a fox* : fr.

Vulpea, is, f., *a fox*.  
sit, &c., see Volo.

## X.

Xerxes, is, m., *Xerxes*, a king of Persia.

## Z.

Zeno, önis, m., *Zeno*, a Grecian philosopher.

## COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE CONJUGATIONS.

### ACTIVE VOICE.

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| <i>Pres. Ind.</i> | <i>Pres. Inf.</i> | <i>Perf. Ind.</i> | <i>Supine.</i> |              |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. A'-mo,         | a-mă'-re,         | a-mă'-vi;         | a-mă'-tum,     | (to love).   |
| 2. Mo'-ne-o,      | mo-nă'-re,        | mon'-u-i,         | mon'-i-tum,    | (to advise). |
| 3. Re'-go,        | reg'-s-re,        | rex'-i,           | rec'-tum,      | (to rule).   |
| 4. Au'-di-o,      | au-di'-re,        | au-di'-vi,        | au-di'-tum,    | (to hear).   |

### INDICATIVE MOOD—FIRST ROOT.

**Present, love, do love, am loving.**

*I love,*      *Thou lovest,*      *He loves;*

|              |          |          |
|--------------|----------|----------|
| S. 1. A'-mo, | a'-mas,  | a'-mat;  |
| 2. Mo'-ne-o, | mo'-nes, | mo'-net; |
| 3. Re'-go,   | re'-gis, | re'-git; |
| 4. Au'-di-o, | au'-dis, | au'-dit; |

*We love,*      *Ye or you love,*      *They love.*

|                  |             |             |
|------------------|-------------|-------------|
| P. 1. a-mă'-mus, | a-mă'-tis,  | a'-mant.    |
| 2. mo-nă'-mus,   | mo-nă'-tis, | mo'-nent.   |
| 3. reg'-l-mus,   | reg'-l-tis, | re'-gunt.   |
| 4. au-di'-tus,   | au-di'-tis, | au'-di-unt. |

**Imperfect, was loving, loved, did love.**

*I was loving,*      *Thou wast loving,*      *He was loving;*

|                  |             |             |
|------------------|-------------|-------------|
| S. 1. a-mă'-bam, | a-mă'-bas,  | a-mă'-bat;  |
| 2. mo-nă'-bam,   | mo-nă'-bas, | mo-nă'-bat; |
| 3. re-gé'-bam,   | re-gé'-bas, | re-gé'-bat; |
| 4. au-di'-bam,   | au-di'-bas, | au-di'-bat, |

*We were loving,*

|                     |                  |               |
|---------------------|------------------|---------------|
| P. 1. am-a-bă'-mus, | am-a-bă'-tis,    | a-mă'-bant.   |
| 2. mon-e-bă'-mus,   | mon-e-bă'-tis,   | mo-nă'-bant.  |
| 3. reg-e-bă'-mus,   | reg-e-bă'-tis,   | re-gé'-bant.  |
| 4. au-di-e-bă'-mus, | au-di-e-bă'-tis, | au-di-e'-bant |

**Future, shall or will.**

*I shall love,*      *Thou will love,*      *He will love;*

|                 |             |             |
|-----------------|-------------|-------------|
| S. 1. a-mă'-bo, | a-mă'-bis,  | a-mă'-bit;  |
| 2. mo-né'-bo,   | mo-né'-bis, | mo-né'-bit; |
| 3. re'-gam,     | re'-ges,    | re'-get;    |
| 4. au'-di-am,   | au'-di-es,  | au'-di-et;  |

*We shall love,*

|                     |                |              |
|---------------------|----------------|--------------|
| P. 1. a-mab'-l-mus, | a-mab'-l-tis,  | a-mă'-bunt.  |
| 2. mo-nab'-l-mus,   | mo-nab'-l-tis, | mo-nă'-bunt. |
| 3. re-gé'-mus,      | re-gé'-tis,    | re-gé'-gent. |
| 4. au-di-e'-mus,    | au-di-e'-tis,  | au'-di-ent.  |

## ACTIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

## SECOND ROOT.

**Perfect (definite), have loved; (indefinite), loved.**

*I have loved,*      *Thou hast loved,*      *He has loved;*

|                 |                |             |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------|
| S. 1. a-má'-vá; | am-a-vi's-ti;  | a-má'-vít;  |
| 2. mon'-u-i;    | mon-u-is'-ti;  | mon'-u-it;  |
| 3. rex'-i;      | rex-is'-ti;    | rex'-it;    |
| 4. au-di'-vá;   | au-di-vi's-ti; | au-di'-vit; |

*We have loved,*      *Ye have loved,*      *They have loved.*

|                     |                 |                         |
|---------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| P. 1. a-mav'-i-mus, | am-a-vi's-tia;  | am-a-vé'-runi, or -re.  |
| 2. mo-nu'-i-mus,    | mon-u-is'-tia;  | mon-u-d'-runi, or -ra.  |
| 3. rex'-i-mus,      | rex-is'-tia;    | rex-d'-runi, or -ra.    |
| 4. au-di'-i-mus,    | au-di-vi's-tia; | au-di-vé'-runi, or -ra. |

**Pluperfect, had.**

*I had loved,*      *Thou hadst loved,*      *He had loved;*

|                     |                |                |
|---------------------|----------------|----------------|
| S. 1. a-mav'-é-ram, | a-mav'-é-ras,  | a-mav'-é-rat;  |
| 2. mo-nu'-é-ram,    | mo-nu'-é-ras,  | mo-nu'-é-rat;  |
| 3. rex'-é-ram,      | rex'-é-ras,    | rex'-é-rat;    |
| 4. au-div'-é-ram,   | au-div'-é-ras, | au-div'-é-rat; |

*We had loved,*      *Ye had loved,*      *They had loved.*

|                        |                   |                 |
|------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| P. 1. am-a-ve-rd'-mus, | am-a-ve-rd'-tia,  | a-mav'-é-rant.  |
| 2. mon-u-e-rd'-mus,    | mon-u-e-rd'-tia,  | mo-nu'-é-rant.  |
| 3. rex-e-rd'-mus,      | rex-e-rd'-tia,    | rex'-é-rant.    |
| 4. au-di-ve-rd'-mus,   | au-di-ve-rd'-tia, | au-div'-é-rant. |

**Future-Perfect, shall or will have.**

*I shall have loved,*      *Thou wilt have loved,*      *He will have loved;*

|                    |               |                |
|--------------------|---------------|----------------|
| S. 1. a-mav'-é-ro, | a-mav'-é-ri,  | a-mav'-é-rit;  |
| 2. mo-nu'-é-ro,    | mo-nu'-é-ri,  | mo-nu'-é-rit;  |
| 3. rex'-é-ro,      | rex'-é-ri,    | rex'-é-rit;    |
| 4. au-div'-é-ro,   | au-div'-é-ri, | au-div'-é-rit; |

*We shall have loved,*      *Ye will have loved,*      *They will have loved.*

|                        |                  |                 |
|------------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| P. 1. am-a-ver'-i-mus, | am-a-ver'-i-tia, | a-mav'-é-rint.  |
| 2. mon-u-er'-i-mus,    | mon-u-er'-i-tia, | mo-nu'-é-rint.  |
| 3. rex-er'-i-mus,      | rex-er'-i-tia,   | rex'-é-rint.    |
| 4. au-di-ver'-i-mus,   | au-di-er'-i-tia, | au-div'-é-rint. |

## ACTIVE VOICE—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## FIRST ROOT.

*Present, may or can.*

| <i>I may love,</i>  | <i>Thou mayst love,</i> | <i>He may love;</i>  |
|---------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| S. 1. a'-mem,       | a'-mes,                 | a'-met;              |
| 2. mo-ne-am,        | mo'-ne-as,              | mo'-ne-at;           |
| 3. re'-gam,         | re'-gas,                | re'-gat;             |
| 4. au'-di-am,       | au'-di-as,              | au'-di-at;           |
| <i>We may love,</i> | <i>Ye may love,</i>     | <i>They may love</i> |
| P. 1. a-mē'-mus,    | a-mē'-tis,              | a'-ment.             |
| 2. mo-ne-d'-mus,    | mo-ne-d'-tis,           | mo'-ne-ant.          |
| 3. re-gā'-mus,      | re-gā'-tis,             | re'-gant.            |
| 4. au-di-d'-mus,    | au-di-d'-tis,           | au'-di-ant.          |

| <i>I would love,</i>  | <i>Thou wouldest love,</i> | <i>He would love;</i>   |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| S. 1. a-mē'-rem,      | a-mē'-res,                 | a-mē'-ret;              |
| 2. mo-nē'-rem,        | mo-nē'-res,                | mo-nē'-ret;             |
| 3. reg'-ē'-rem,       | reg'-ē'-res,               | reg'-ē'-ret;            |
| 4. au-di'-rem,        | au-di'-res,                | au-di'-ret;             |
| <i>We would love,</i> | <i>Ye would love,</i>      | <i>They would love.</i> |
| P. 1. am-a-rē'-mus,   | am-a-rē'-tis,              | a-mē'-rent.             |
| 2. mon-e-rē'-mus,     | mon-e-rē'-tis,             | mo-nē'-rent.            |
| 3. reg-e-rē'-mus,     | reg-e-rē'-tis,             | reg'-ē'-rent.           |
| 5. au-di-rē'-mus,     | au-di-rē'-tis,             | au-di'-rent.            |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## SECOND ROOT.

*Perfect, may have.*

| <i>I may have loved,</i>   | <i>Thou mayst have loved,</i> | <i>He may have loved;</i>   |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| S. 1. a-mav'-ē'-rim,       | a-mav'-ē'-ris,                | a-mav'-ē'-rit;              |
| 2. mo-nu'-ē'-rim,          | mo-nu'-ē'-ris,                | mo-nu'-ē'-rit;              |
| 3. rex'-ē'-rim,            | rex'-ē'-ris,                  | rex'-ē'-rit;                |
| 4. au-div'-ē'-rim,         | au-div'-ē'-ris,               | au-div'-ē'-rit;             |
| <i>We may have lov-ed,</i> | <i>Ye may have loved,</i>     | <i>They may have lived.</i> |
| P. 1. am-a-ver'-ē'-mus,    | am-a-ver'-ē'-tis,             | a-mav'-ē'-rint.             |
| 2. mon-u-er'-ē'-mus,       | mon-u-er'-ē'-tis,             | mo-nu'-ē'-rint.             |
| 3. rex-er'-ē'-mus.         | rex-e'-ē'-tis,                | rex'-ē'-rint.               |
| 4. au-di-ver'-ē'-mus,      | au-di-ver'-ē'-tis,            | au-div'-ē'-rint.            |

**Pluperfect, might, could, would, or should have.***I would have loved, Thou wouldest have loved, He would have loved*

|           |                                                                                 |                                                                     |                                                                     |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> | 1. am-a-vis'-sem,<br>2. mon-u-is'-sem,<br>3. rex-is'-sem,<br>4. au-di-vis'-sem, | am-a-vis'-ses,<br>mon-u-is'-ses,<br>rex-is'-ses,<br>au-di-vis'-ses, | am-a-vis'-est;<br>mon-u-is'-est;<br>rex-is'-est;<br>au-di-vis'-est; |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|

*We would have loved, Ye would have loved, They would have loved*

|           |                                                                                                 |                                                                                 |                                                                         |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>P.</i> | 1. am-a-vis-es'-muss,<br>2. mon-u-is-es'-muss,<br>3. rex-is-es'-muss,<br>4. au-di-vis-es'-muss, | am-a-vis-es'-tis,<br>mon-u-is-es'-tis,<br>rex-is-es'-tis,<br>au-di-vis-es'-tis, | am-a-vis'-sent.<br>mon-u-is'-sent.<br>rex-is'-sent.<br>au-di-vis'-sent. |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**ACTIVE VOICE—IMPERATIVE MOOD.***Love or love thou,**Let him love;*

|           |                                                                                                        |                                                     |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> | 1. a'-ma or a-md'-to,<br>2. mo'-ne or mo-né'-to,<br>3. re'-ge or reg'-i-to,<br>4. au'-di or au-dí'-to, | a-md'-to;<br>mo-né'-to;<br>reg'-i-to;<br>au-dí'-to; |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|

*Love or love ye,**Let them love.*

|           |                                                                                                                                |                                                           |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>P.</i> | 1. a-md'-te or am-a-tó'-te,<br>2. mo-né'-te or mon-e-tó'-te,<br>3. reg'-i-te or reg-i-tó'-te,<br>4. au-dí'-te or au-di-tó'-te, | a-man'-to.<br>mo-nen'-to.<br>re-gum'-to.<br>au-di-un'-to. |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|

**INFINITIVE MOOD.****Present.****Perfect.****Future.***To love or to be loving, To have loved, To be about or going to love.*

|                                                                 |                                                                 |                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. a-md'-re,<br>2. mo-né'-re,<br>3. reg'-e-re,<br>4. au-dí'-re, | am-a-vis'-se,<br>mon-u-is'-se,<br>rex-is'-se,<br>au-di-vis'-se, | am-a-tú'-rus es'-se.<br>mon-i-tú'-rus es'-se.<br>rec-tú'-rus es'-se.<br>au-di-tú'-rus es'-se. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**PARTICIPLES.****Present.****Future.****SUPINE.****Former.***Loving, About or going to love.*

|                                                               |                                                                               |                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. a'-mans,<br>2. mo'-nens,<br>3. re'-gens,<br>4. au'-di-ens, | 1. am-a-tú'-rus.<br>2. mon-i-tú'-rus.<br>3. rec-tú'-rus.<br>4. au-di-tú'-rus. | 1. a-má'-turn, to love.<br>2. mon'-i-turn, to advise.<br>3. rec'-turn, to rule.<br>4. au-di'-turn, to hear. |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**GERUNDS.***Gen. of loving, Dat. to or for loving, Acc. loving, Abl. by loving*

|                                                                       |                                                           |                                                               |                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. a-man'-di,<br>2. mo-nen'-di,<br>3. re-gen'-di,<br>4. au-di-en'-di, | a-man'-do,<br>mo-nen'-do,<br>re-gen'-do,<br>au-di-en'-do, | a-man'-dum,<br>mo-nen'-dum,<br>re-gen'-dum,<br>au-di-en'-dum, | a-man'-do.<br>mo-nen'-do.<br>re-gen'-do.<br>au-di-en'-do. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| <i>Pres. Ind.</i> | <i>Pres. Inf.</i> | <i>Perf. Part.</i> |                  |
|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| A'-mor,           | a-md'-ri;         | a-mä'-tus,         | (to be loved.)   |
| Mo'-ne-or,        | mo-né'-ri;        | mon'-i-tus,        | (to be advised.) |
| Re'-gor,          | re'-gi;           | rec'-tus,          | (to be ruled.)   |
| Au'-di-or,        | au-di'-ri;        | au-di'-tus,        | (to be heard.)   |

## INDICATIVE MOOD—FIRST ROOT.

Present, *am*.

| <i>I am loved,</i>   | <i>Thou art loved,</i> | <i>He is loved ;</i>   |
|----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| S. 1. a'-mor,        | a-md'-ris or -re,      | a-mä'-tur ;            |
| 2. mo'-ne-or,        | mo-né'-ris or -re,     | mo-né'-tur ;           |
| 3. re'-gor,          | reg'-z-ri or -re,      | reg'-i-tur ;           |
| 4. au'-di-or,        | au-di'-ris or -re,     | au-di'-tur ;           |
| <i>We are loved,</i> | <i>Ye are loved,</i>   | <i>They are loved.</i> |
| P. 1. a-md'-mur,     | a-mam'-i-ni,           | a-man'-tur.            |
| 2. mo-né'-mur,       | mo-nem'-i-ni,          | mo-nen'-tur.           |
| 3. reg'-i-mur,       | re-gim'-i-ni,          | re-gu-n'-tur.          |
| 4. au-di'-mur,       | a-dim'-i-ni,           | au-di-un'-tur.         |

Imperfect, *was*.

| <i>I was loved,</i>   | <i>Thou wast loved,</i> | <i>He was loved ;</i>   |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| S. 1. a-mä'-bar,      | am-a-bä'-ris or -re,    | am-a-bä'-tur ;          |
| 2. mo-né'-bar,        | mon-e-bä'-ris or -re,   | mon-e-bä'-tur ;         |
| 3. re-gé'-bar,        | reg-e-bä'-ris or -re,   | reg-e-bä'-tur ;         |
| 4. au-di'-bar,        | au-di-e-bä'-ris or -re, | au-di-e-bä'-tur ;       |
| <i>We were loved,</i> | <i>Ye were loved,</i>   | <i>They were loved.</i> |
| P. 1. am-a-bä'-mur,   | am-a-bam'-i-ni,         | am-a-ban'-tur.          |
| 2. mon-e-bä'-mur,     | mon-e-bam'-i-ni,        | mon-e-ban'-tur.         |
| 3. reg-e-bä'-mur,     | reg-e-bam'-i-ni,        | reg-e-ban'-tur,         |
| 4. au-di-e-bä'-mur,   | au-di-e-bam'-i-ni,      | au-di-e-ban'-tur.       |

Future, *shall* or *will* *be*.

| <i>I shall be loved,</i>  | <i>Thou will be loved,</i> | <i>He will be loved ;</i>  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| S. 1. a-mä'-bor,          | a-mab'-i-ri or -re,        | a-mab'-i-tur ;             |
| 2. mo-né'-bor,            | mo-néb'-i-ri or -re,       | mo-néb'-i-tur ;            |
| 3. re-gé'-bor,            | re-gé'-ri or -re,          | re-gé'-tur ;               |
| 4. au'-di-ar,             | au-di'-ri or -re,          | au-di'-tur ;               |
| <i>We shall be loved,</i> | <i>Ye will be loved,</i>   | <i>They will be loved.</i> |
| P. 1. a-mab'-i-mur,       | am-a-bim'-i-ni,            | am-a-bun'-tur.             |
| 2. mo-néb'-i-mur,         | mon-e-bim'-i-ni,           | mon-e-bun'-tur.            |
| 3. re-gé'-mур,            | re-gem'-i-ni,              | re-gen'-tur.               |
| 4. au-di'-mур,            | au-di-em'-i-ni,            | au-di-en'-tur.             |

## PASSIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

## THIRD ROOT.

**Perfect (definite), have been ; (indefinite), was.**

| <i>I have been loved,</i> | <i>Thou hast been loved,</i> | <i>He has been loved ;</i> |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. a-mä'-tus,             | a-mä'-tus,                   | a-mä'-tus,                 |
| 2. mon'-i-tus, } sum or   | mon'-i-tus, }                | mon'-i-tus, }              |
| 3. rec'-tus, } fu'-i,     | rec'-tus, }                  | rec'-tus, }                |
| 4. au-di'-tus, }          | au-di'-tus, }                | au-di'-tus, }              |

| <i>We have been loved,</i> | <i>Ye have been loved,</i> | <i>They have been loved.</i> |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| P. a-mä'-ti,               | a-mä'-tus,                 | a-mä'-ti,                    |
| 2. mon'-i-ti, } su'-mus or | mon'-i-ti, }               | mon'-i-ti, }                 |
| 3. rec'-ti, } fu'-s-mus,   | rec'-ti, }                 | rec'-ti, }                   |
| 4. au-di'-ti,              | au-di'-ti,                 | au-di'-ti,                   |

**Pluperfect, had been.**

| <i>I had been loved,</i>   | <i>Thou hadst been loved,</i> | <i>He had been loved ;</i> |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| S. a-mä'-tus,              | a-mä'-tus,                    | a-mä'-tus,                 |
| 2. mon'-i-tus, } e'-ram or | mon'-i-tus, }                 | mon'-i-tus, }              |
| 3. rec'-tus, } fu'-s-ram,  | rec'-tus, }                   | rec'-tus, }                |
| 4. au-di'-tus, }           | au-di'-tus, }                 | au-di'-tus, }              |

| <i>We had been loved,</i>  | <i>Ye had been loved,</i> | <i>They had been loved.</i> |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| P. a-mä'-ti,               | a-mä'-tus,                | a-mä'-ti,                   |
| 2. mon'-i-ti, } e'-rä'-mus | mon'-i-ti, }              | mon'-i-ti, }                |
| 3. rec'-ti, } or fu-e-rä'- | rec'-tus, }               | or fu-e-                    |
| 4. au-di'-ti, } mus,       | au-di'-ti,                | rä'-tis,                    |

**Future-Perfect, shall or will have been.**

| <i>I shall have been loved, Thou will have been, &amp;c., He will have been, &amp;c.;</i> | <i>Thou hast been loved,</i> | <i>He has been loved ;</i> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| S. a-mä'-tus,                                                                             | a-mä'-tus,                   | a-mä'-tus,                 |
| 2. mon'-i-tus, } e'-ro or                                                                 | mon'-i-tus, }                | mon'-i-tus, }              |
| 3. rec'-tus, } fu'-s-ro,                                                                  | rec'-tus, }                  | e'-rit or                  |
| 4. au-di'-tus, }                                                                          | au-di'-tus, }                | fu'-s-rit ;                |

| <i>We shall have been loved, Ye will have been, &amp;c., They will have been, &amp;c.;</i> | <i>Thou hast been loved,</i> | <i>He has been loved ;</i> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| P. a-mä'-ti,                                                                               | a-mä'-tus,                   | a-mä'-ti,                  |
| 2. mon'-i-ti, } or                                                                         | mon'-i-ti, }                 | mon'-i-ti, }               |
| 3. rec'-ti, } fu-er'-i-                                                                    | rec'-tus, }                  | e' runt or                 |
| 4. au-di'-ti, } mus,                                                                       | au-di'-ti,                   | fu'-s-rint.                |

## PASSIVE VOICE—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## FIRST ROOT.

Present, *may* or *can be*.

| <i>I may be loved,</i> | <i>Thou mayest be loved,</i> | <i>He may be loved;</i> |
|------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| S. 1. a'-mer,          | a-mé'-ris or -re,            | amé'-tur;               |
| 2. mo'-ne-ar,          | mo-ne-á'-ris or -re,         | mo-ne-á'-tur;           |
| 3. re'-gar,            | re-gá'-ris or -re,           | re-gá'-tur;             |
| 4. au'-di-ar,          | au-di-á'-ris or -re,         | au-di-á'-tur;           |

| <i>We may be loved,</i> | <i>Ye may be loved,</i> | <i>They may be loved.</i> |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| P. 1. a-mé'-mur,        | a-men'-i-ni,            | a-men'-tur.               |
| 2. mo-ne-á'-mur,        | mo-ne-am'-i-ni,         | mo-ne-an'-tur.            |
| 3. re-gá'-mur,          | re-gam'-i-ni,           | re-gan'-tur.              |
| 4. au-di-á'-mur,        | au-di-am'-i-ni,         | au-di-an'-tur.            |

Imperfect, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should be*.

| <i>I would be loved,</i> | <i>Thou wouldest be loved,</i> | <i>He would be loved,</i> |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| S. 1. a-má'-rer,         | am-a-ré'-ris or -re,           | am-a-ré'-tur;             |
| 2. mo-né'-rer,           | mon-e-ré'-ris or -re,          | mon-e-ré'-tur;            |
| 3. reg'-é-rer,           | reg-e-ré'-ris or -re,          | reg-e-ré'-tur;            |
| 4. au-di-ré'-rer,        | au-di-ré'-ris or -re,          | au-di-ré'-tur;            |

| <i>We would be loved,</i> | <i>Ye would be loved,</i> | <i>They would be loved.</i> |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| P. 1. am-a-ré'-mur,       | am-a-ren'-i-ni,           | am-a-ren'-tur.              |
| 2. mon-e-ré'-mur,         | mon-e-ren'-i-ni,          | mon-e-ren'-tur.             |
| 3. reg-e-ré'-mur,         | reg-e-ren'-i-ni,          | reg-e-ren'-tur.             |
| 4. au-di-ré'-mur,         | au-di-ren'-i-ni,          | au-di-ren'-tur.             |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## THIRD ROOT.

Perfect, *may have been*.

*I may have been loved, Thou mayest have been &c., He may have been, &c.:*

|                |             |             |             |
|----------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| S. am-á'-tus,  | am-á'-tus,  | a-má'-tus,  | sit or      |
| 2. mon'-i-tus, | sim or      | mon'-i-tus, | mon'-i-tus, |
| 3. rec'-tus,   | fu'-érim,   | rec'-tus,   | rec'-tus,   |
| 4. au-di'-tus, | au-di'-tus, | au-di'-tus, | rit;        |

*We may have been, &c., Ye may have been, &c., They may have been, &c.*

|               |            |            |            |
|---------------|------------|------------|------------|
| P. a-má'-ti,  | a-má'-ti,  | a-má'-ti,  | sint or    |
| 2. mon'-i-ti, | or fu-er'- | mon'-i-ti, | mon'-i-ti, |
| 3. rec'-ti,   | i-mus,     | rec'-ti,   | rec'-ti,   |
| 4. au-di'-ti, | au-di'-ti, | au-di'-ti, | rit;       |

*Pluperfect, might, could, would, or should have been.*

*I would have been loved, Thou wouldest have, &c., He would have, &c.,*

|                                                                    |                                             |                        |            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|------------------------|------------|
| S. a-mä'-tus,                                                      | a-mä'-tus,                                  | a-mä'-tus,             | a-mä'-tus, |
| 2. mon'-i-tus, } es'-sem or mon'-i-tus, } es'-ses or fu-           | mon'-i-tus, } or fu-                        | mon'-i-tus, } es'-set  |            |
| 3. rec'-tus, } fu-is'-sem, rec'-tus, } is'-ses, rec'-tus, } or fu- | rec'-tus, } is'-ses, au-di'-tus, } is'-set; | au-di'-tus, } is'-set; |            |
| 4. au-di'-tus, }                                                   |                                             |                        |            |

*We would have been, &c., Ye would have been, &c., They would have, &c.*

|                                             |                                   |                      |              |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------|--------------|
| P. a-mä'-ti,                                | a-mä'-ti,                         | a-mä'-ti,            | a-mä'-ti,    |
| 2. mon'-i-ti, } es-së'-mus or fu-is-        | mon'-i-ti, } es-së'-mus or fu-is- | mon'-i-ti, } es-sent |              |
| 3. rec'-ti, } së'-mus, rec'-ti, } or fu-is- | rec'-ti, } or fu-is-              | rec'-ti, } or fu-    |              |
| 4. au-di'-ti, }                             | au-di'-ti, }                      | au-di'-ti, }         | au-di'-ti, } |

#### PASSIVE VOICE—IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Be thou loved, Let him be loved, Be ye loved, Let them be loved.*

|                             |             |               |                |
|-----------------------------|-------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. a-mä'-re or a-mä'-tor,   | a-mä'-tor;  | a-mam'-i-ni,  | a-man'-tor.    |
| 2. mo-në'-re or mo-në'-tor, | mo-në'-tor; | mo-nem'-i-ni, | mo-nen'-tor.   |
| 3. reg'-ë-re or reg'-i-tor, | reg'-i-tor; | regim'-i-ni,  | re-gun'-tor.   |
| 4. au-di'-re or au-di'-tor, | au-di'-tor; | au-dim'-i-ni, | au-di-un'-tor. |

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

##### Present.

*To be loved,*

1. a-mä'-ri,
2. mo-në'-ri,
3. re-gi,
4. au-di'-ri,

##### Perfect.

*To have been loved,*

- |                |                        |
|----------------|------------------------|
| 1. a-mä'-tus,  | a-mä'-tus,             |
| 2. mon'-i-tus, | mon'-i-tus, } es-se or |
| 3. rec'-tus,   | rec'-tus, } fu-is'-se. |
| 4. au-di'-tus, | au-di'-tus,            |

##### Future.

*To be about to be loved.*

- |                |                     |
|----------------|---------------------|
| 1. a-mä'-tum,  | a-mä'-tum,          |
| 2. mon'-i-tum, | mon'-i-tum, } i-ri. |
| 3. rec'-tum,   | au-di'-tum,         |

#### PARTICIPLES.

##### Perfect.

*Loved or having been loved.*

- |                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| M a-mä'-tus, a, um.  | a-man'-dus, a, um.    |
| M mon'-i-tus, a, um. | mo-nem'-dus, a, um.   |
| M rec'-tus, a, um.   | re-gen'-dus, a, um.   |
| M au-di'-tus, a, um. | au-di-en'-dus, a, um. |

##### Future.

*To be loved.*

- |                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| M a-mä'-tus, a, um.  | a-man'-dus, a, um.    |
| M mon'-i-tus, a, um. | mo-nem'-dus, a, um.   |
| M rec'-tus, a, um.   | re-gen'-dus, a, um.   |
| M au-di'-tus, a, um. | au-di-en'-dus, a, um. |

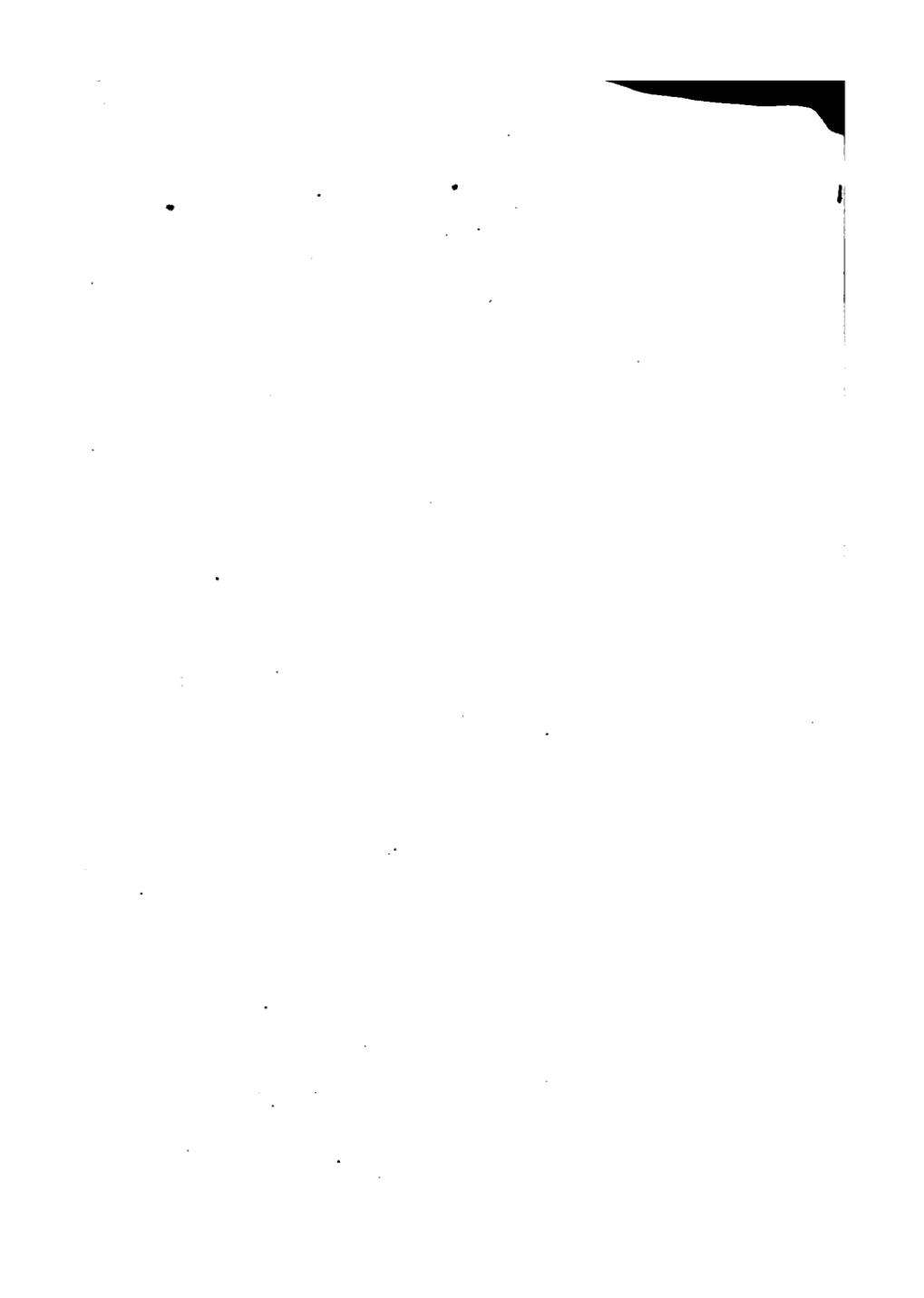
#### SUPINE.

##### Latter.

*To be loved.*

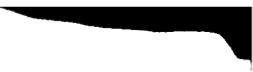
- |              |            |
|--------------|------------|
| M a-mä'-tu.  | a-mä'-tu.  |
| M mon'-i-tu. | mon'-i-tu. |
| M rec'-tu.   | rec'-tu.   |
| M au-di'-tu. | au-di'-tu. |

**REMARKS.**—The Comparative Views of the Latin Declensions and Conjugations are designed to give the student a connected view of those inflections, with which, in detail, he is supposed to be already well acquainted. A thorough acquaintance with the Views of the Declensions, pp. 44 and 45, will constitute the best preparation for the succeeding lessons on adjectives and pronouns. The Comparative View of the conjugations, in the active voice, will be advantageously studied after the 61st Lesson, and the remaining part after the 74th. For greater convenience in occasional reference, the Comparative View of the Verbs has been placed at the end of the volume.





-----



C. G. S. Al. N.

G. G. S. 322. Al. N. Alas  
13 in

~~1st~~  
705

150

20

100  
100  
100  
100

W

E

W



7 - 1

7 - 1

200  
mm

